NYC

Mayor's Office for
People with Disabilities

Inclusive Design Guidelines

City of New York
Office of the Mayor
Michael R. Bloomberg
Mayor

Matthew P. Sapolin
Commissioner

Mayor's Office for People with Disabilities

Inclusive Design Guidelines

New York City

Robert Piccolo, AIA Editor in Chief

New York City

ICC
INTERNATIONAL
CODE COUNCIL®

Inclusive Design Guidelines
New York City

City of New York
Mayor's Office for People with Disabilities
100 Gold Street, 2nd Floor
New York, New York 10038

www.nyc.gov/mopd

Inclusive Design Guidelines, New York City

First Printing: August 2010

First Published: August 2010

ISBN 0-00000-000-0
ISBN 0-00000-000-0

Copies may be purchased through the ICC online bookstore: www.iccsafe.org/store
Updates and addenda to the book will be posted on the MOPD website: www.nyc.gov/mopd

PRINTED IN THE U.S.A.

THE CITY OF NEW YORK
OFFICE OF THE MAYOR
NEW YORK, NY 10007

June 2010

Dear Friends:

In New York City, we're committed to ensuring that all our residents have access to everything that the five boroughs have to offer. The Mayor's Office for People with Disabilities (MOPD) is an essential part of this effort, as it works hand-in-hand with other City agencies to expand opportunities for New Yorkers with disabilities and to make sure that our policies and programs address their specific needs.

With *Inclusive Design Guidelines New York City*, MOPD is taking its mission one step further to make New York City more accessible for every resident and visitor. The book—which is the result of a collaboration between MOPD, the International Code Council, Steven Winter Associates, and an outstanding group of contributors—serves as a useful tool for architects, city and municipality planners, educators, and professionals in the construction industry who want to go beyond code requirements to create more user-friendly buildings and landscapes. As a result, it will help to improve the quality of life for everyone, especially children, seniors, and people with disabilities.

Many of the ideas put forth in *Inclusive Design Guidelines New York City* are unconventional, exploring new possibilities and challenging us to develop creative ways of building more inclusive cities. New York is ready to take up this challenge, and I invite you to use this book to join us in creating a city that is welcoming for everyone.

Sincerely,

Michael R. Bloomberg
Mayor

The City of New York
Office of the Mayor

Michael R. Bloomberg
Mayor

Carol A. Robles-Román
Deputy Mayor for Legal Affairs
Counsel to the Mayor

Matthew P. Sapolin
Commissioner
Mayor's Office for People with Disabilities

Robert Piccolo, AIA
Deputy Commissioner
Mayor's Office for People with Disabilities

Jason R. Mischel, Esq.
General Counsel
Mayor's Office for People with Disabilities

Inclusive Design Guidelines
New York City

Robert Piccolo, AIA

Editor in Chief

Mayor's Office for People with Disabilities

Nicholas A. Kaminski, Assoc. AIA

Christian Valle

Jason R. Mischel, Esq.

Steven Winter Associates, Inc.

Steven Winter, FAIA, President

Peter A. Stratton, Senior Associate

Harold Bravo, Associate

Jeffrey Heitert, Associate

Denee Hayes, Associate

Mark Jackson, Associate

Mary Jo Peterson, Inc.

Mary Jo Peterson, CKD, CBD, President

Contributors

Thank You

Fatma Amer, P.E., First Deputy Commissioner	NYC Department of Buildings
Andrew Appell, M.Arch.	Pratt Institute
Frederic Bell, FAIA, Executive Director	AIA New York Chapter
Michael E. Bean, AIA, CSI, CCS, Senior Architect	AECOM, USA
Douglas W. Boydston, President	Handi-Lift, Inc.
Merrilie Camhe, Principal	Epigraph Studios Inc.
Orna Eran, Ph.D.	Accessible Hearing Care
Sarah Gluck, Director of Movement and Health	INFORMDesign
Karen Gourgey, Ed.D, Director	Baruch College
Stephen Johnson, City Planner	NYC Department of City Planning
Robyne Kassen, Assoc. AIA, Design Director	Pedestrian Studio
Steven Landau, Director of Research	Touch Graphics
Ronny A. Livian, P.E., President	A.E.C.
Maria Lynch Dumoulin, Vice President	Kenneth Lynch & Sons
Bill Main, President	Landscape Forms, Inc.
Herbert L. Mandel, AIA, Partner	MHG Architects
Dominic Marinelli, VP, Accessibility Services	United Spinal Association
Monty Mitchell, AIA, Principal	Monty Mitchell Architect
Nelson Monteleone	Designs for Mobility for the Physically Challenged
Nurit Neustadt-Noy, Ph.D.	Access Vision Care
Margaret Newman, AIA, Chief of Staff	NYC Department Of Transportation
Dino Y.P. Ng, P.E., Assistant Commissioner	NYC Department of Design and Construction
Jeanette Phillipps, RA, Partner	Phillipps Architects
Peter H.G. Phillipps, RA, Partner	Phillipps Architects
Zoe Piccolo	Cornell University
Matthew Puvogel, Office Assistant	NYC Mayor’s Office for People with Disabilities
Marty Rebholz, Director, F.I.D.	NYC School Construction Authority
Sally J. Renfro, First Deputy Commissioner	NYC Department for the Aging
Roger A. Rowe, Founder, Partner	City24/7
Charles Rudesill, RLA, Deputy Director	NYC Department of Parks and Recreation
Mary Burgoyne Snyder	Designs for Mobility for the Physically Challenged
William Stein, FAIA, Partner	Dattner Architects
Kenneth L. Stewart, President	Metropolitan Council of Low Vision Individuals
Tom Touchet, CEO, President	City24/7
Angel Valle	Personal Assistant
Linda Volpe, Compliance Specialist	United Spinal Association
Harry Vyas, Director, Elevators	NYC Department of Buildings
Keith Wen, RA, Director, Code Development	NYC Department of Buildings
Suzanne Wertz, AIA, Partner	Grunig, Wertz and Associates

FOREWORD

As Commissioner of the New York City Mayor's Office for People with Disabilities (MOPD), I would like to thank you for using the *Inclusive Design Guidelines, New York City (IDG)*. I would first like to acknowledge my staff, as it is through their dedication and consistent hard work that my office has been able to achieve real positive improvements to the City. This project is another confirmation of their commitment to the mission of the office. I would also like to thank the International Code Council, who granted us permission to use their copyrighted material; our partner Steven Winter Associates; and our diverse team of contributors, including prominent professionals, advocates and people with disabilities.

The *IDG* is not law. Rather, the book contains recommendations to assist designers to produce environments that are usable by everyone. It is critical for these guidelines to be viable while not falling below, or conflicting with, legal requirements. This was a significant effort that required extensive working knowledge of federal, state and local building codes, and, in some instances, interpretations of "grey areas" and subtleties within existing laws. We strongly believe that our ideas, which utilize available technology, are realistic and will significantly increase the usability of the built environment.

We believe the *IDG* is an important document because it consolidates in one source, explicitly detailed design guidance that covers a substantial range of material. It is our hope that in the future, inclusive compliance levels may be measured with a system based on the *IDG* (that should include factors for new construction, rehabilitations, additions and landmarks) and that projects may be evaluated and rated by professionals who have been trained and certified based upon the content contained herein.

This book presents some unconventional ideas, but they should be seriously considered, as we believe they will generate interest and address some persistent challenges. It is anticipated that the *IDG* will be a living document, and, as such, will evolve and become more refined through future updates that will reflect receipt of feedback, new technology and additional research. We hope that society will become more inclusive as a result of the *IDG's* publication.

Matthew Sapolin
Commissioner
Mayor's Office for People with Disabilities

PREFACE

The *IDG* is voluntary, prescriptive, technical guidance that helps designers produce multisensory enhanced environments accommodating a wide range of physical and mental abilities for people of all ages.

Although accessibility codes are written specifically for people with disabilities, some of the content is beneficial to society as a whole. One such code that exhibits this inclusiveness is *ICC/ANSI A117.1-2003*, the accessibility code approved by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) and published by the International Code Council (ICC). It is for this reason, as well as its structure, numbering system, harmonization with relevant codes and the fact that it is a *2008 New York City Building Code* reference standard, we have chosen to utilize it throughout this book.

The *IDG* is a companion document to the *2008 New York City Building Code*, yet it also functions as a stand-alone publication. In harmonizing the *IDG* with both the city's building code and *ICC/ANSI A117.1-2003*, we have made it easy to find and compare corresponding legal requirements.

You will notice that chapters 3 through 10 contain an introduction and advisories. We suggest that you initially read the introductions to gain a quick overview of the book and a sense of the amount of detail that it contains. This will also help focus your searches later. Advisories supplement sections with interpretations, identify some concerns and include additional relevant information. Supplemental and alternate subsections expand the range and number of options associated with our recommendations. In total, the index comprises 1,400 listings to help navigate the book.

We understand that full application of our recommendations may not be feasible for some projects due to a number of reasons (i.e., existing conditions and budgetary constraints). However, even a partial application of the provisions set forth in the *IDG* will help to create a more usable environment.

Robert Piccolo, AIA
Editor in Chief

Contents

Chapter 6. Plumbing Elements and Facilities

Chapter 7. Communication Elements & Features

Chapter 8. Selected Spaces

Chapter 9. Furnishings and Equipment

Chapter 10. Dwelling and Sleeping Units

List of Figures

Chapter 5. General Site and Building Elements

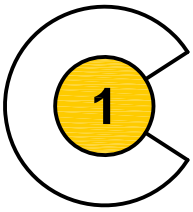
Chapter 6. Plumbing Elements and Facilities

Chapter 7. Communication Elements and Features

Chapter 8. Selected Spaces

Chapter 9. Furnishings and Equipment

Chapter 10. Dwelling and Sleeping Units



Application and Administration

101 Purpose. The criteria in Chapters 3 through 10 of these guidelines should help make sites, facilities, buildings and elements inclusive. These guidelines are recommendations, intended to be used by professionals for projects in New York City. They are not part of the NYC laws. The *IDG* is a tool for the design and construction industries to help them accommodate the entire population to the greatest extent possible, to help make the City more user friendly for people who work and live here and a more accommodating destination for visitors.

101.1 Applicability. Sites, facilities, buildings, and elements should comply with the applicable provisions of Chapters 3 through 10 for new construction. In existing facilities, due to physical and legal constraints, full compliance may not be feasible.

102 Anthropometric Provisions. The technical criteria in this book include adult and children's dimensions and anthropometries as applicable.

103 Compliance Alternatives. Nothing in this book is intended to prevent the use of designs, products, or technologies as alternatives to those recommended or suggested, provided they result in equivalent or greater inclusiveness, and such equivalency is approved by the administrative authority adopting these guidelines.

104 Conventions

104.1 General. Where specific criteria of these guidelines differ from the general criteria, the specific criteria should apply.

104.2 Dimensions. Dimensions include maximum and minimum ranges. All dimensions are subject to conventional industry tolerances. Dimensions are typically anthropocentric.

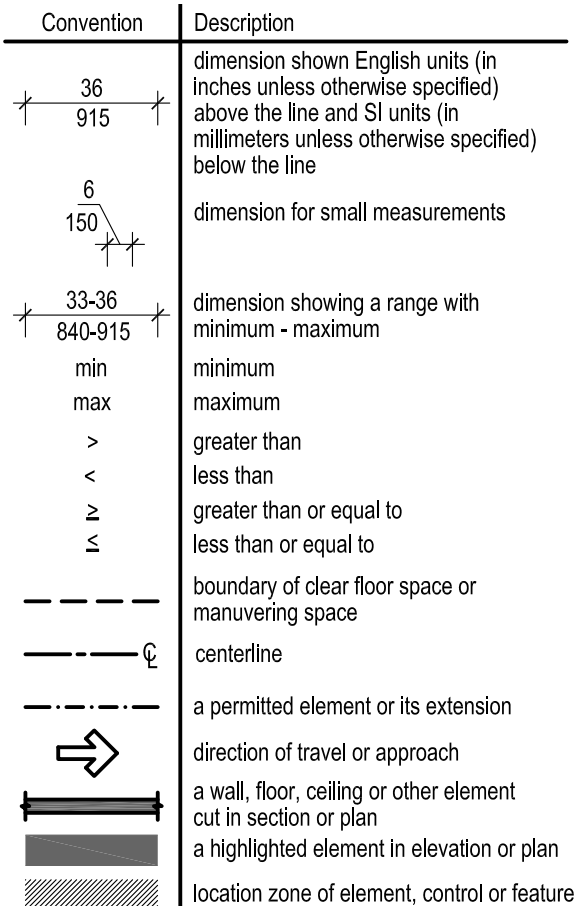


Fig. 104.2
Graphic Convention for Figures

104.3 Figures. Unless specifically stated, figures included herein are provided for informational purposes only. In some instances graphics were intentionally excluded to avoid narrow interpretations or a figure becoming a standard; and unintentionally restricting the designer and limiting creativity.

104.4 Floor or Floor Surface. The terms floor or floor surface refer to the finish floor surface or ground surface, as applicable. In some instances the "above finished floor" (aff) is used to avoid confusion with "grade."

104.5 Referenced Sections. Unless specifically stated otherwise, a reference to another section or subsection within these guidelines may include all subsections of the referenced section or subsection.

105 Referenced Standards and Resources

105.1 General. The standards listed in Section 105.2 should be considered part of the IDG to the prescribed extent of each such reference. Where criteria in the IDG differ from those of these referenced standards, the criteria of the standard should apply.

105.2 Standards

105.2.1 Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices. *MUTCD - 2000* (The Federal Highway Administration, Office of Transportation Operations, Room 3408, 400 7th Street, S.W., Washington, DC 20590)

105.2.2 National Fire Alarm Code: *NFPA 72-2002* (National Fire Protection Association, 1 Battery march Park, Quincy, MA 02269-9101)

105.2.3 Power Assist and Low Energy Power Operated Doors: *ANSI/BHMA A156.19-1997* (Builders Hardware Manufacturers' Association, 355 Lexington Avenue, 17th Floor, New York, NY 10017)

105.2.4 Power Operated Pedestrian Doors: *ANSI/BHMA A156.10-1999* (Builders Hardware Manufacturers' Association, 355 Lexington Avenue, 17th Floor, New York, NY 10017)

105.2.5 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators: *ASME/ANSI A17.1-2000 and Addenda A17.1a-2002* (American Society of Mechanical Engineers International, Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990)

105.2.6 Safety Standard for Platform Lifts and Stairway Chairlifts: *ASME/ANSI A18.1-1999, with Addenda A18.1a-2001 and A18.1 b - 2001* (American Society of Mechanical Engineers International, Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990)

105.2.7 NYC Accessibility Standard: *ICC/ANSI A117.1-2003.* (International Code Council, Chicago District Office, 4051 W. Flossmoor Road, Country Club Hills, IL 60478-5795)

105.2.8 Federal Accessibility Standard: *American with Disabilities Act and Architectural Barriers Act Accessibility Guidelines, July 23, 2004.* (United States Access Board, 1331 F Street, NW, Suite 1000,Washington,DC 20004)

105.3 Resources

Accredited Standards Committee A117, American National Standards institute (1986), *American National Standard for Buildings and Facilities, Providing Accessibility and Usability for Physically Handicapped People, ANSI A117.1-1986.* New York: American National Standards Institute, Appendices 4.4, 4.6

ADAAG Review Advisory Committee (2004). *American with Disabilities Act and Architectural Barriers Act Accessibility Guidelines, July 23, 2004.* http://www.access-board.gov/ada-aba/final.htm Advisories 308.1, 604.9

ADAAG Review Advisory Committee (2002). *American with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines.* http://www.access-board.gov/adaag/html/adaag.htm# §A4.29.2, §A 4.29.2.

Arditi, Aries (2009). *Effective Color Contrast, Designing for People with Partial Sight and Color Deficiencies.* New York: Lighthouse International. http://www.lighthouse.org/accessibility/effective-color-contrast/ pp.1-6

Arditi, Aries (2009). *Making Text Legible Designing for People with Partial Sight.* New York: Lighthouse International. http://www.lighthouse.org/print_leg.htm pp.1-6

Graphic Artist Guild (1995-2002) *Disability Access Symbols.* http://www.gag.org/resources/das.php pp. 1-5

Hoke, John Ray, Jr., editor. (1994) *Architectural Graphic Standards, 9th ed.* New York: John Wiley & Sons, pp.2-5, 159-167

Lampert, C.M. (1995) *Chromogenic Switchable Glazing: Towards the Development of the Smart Window.* Berkeley, CA: Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory, University of California. http://gaia.lbl.gov/btech/papers/37766.pdf pp.1-23

Merseytravel and the Five Merseyside Metropolitan Councils of Knowsley, Liverpool, St. Helens, Sefton and Wurral (2006). *Code of Practice on Access and Mobility.* http://www.accesscode.info/ §4.1, 5.6

New York City, Department of Buildings, (2003). *Building Code of the City of New York.* New York: City of New York, §27-531

Pressman, Andrew, editor. (2007) *Architectural Graphic Standards, 11th ed*. New York: John Wiley & Sons, p.348, Table 13.103

Provenzano, Avella, Comrie Jr. Fidler, Koppel, Gennaro, and Oddo (2004). *Local Laws of the City of New York for the Year 2004, No. 26.* http://www.nyc.gov/html/dob/downloads/pdf/locallaw26of04.pdf §15, §27-383

Public Rights-of-Way Access Advisory Committee, (2007). *Special Report: Accessible Public Rights-of-Way Planning and Design Alterations.* http://www.access-board.gov/prowac/alterations/guide.htm pp.41, 55, 56

Queen's University at Kingston, (1997). *Accessibility Guidelines.*http://www.queensu.ca/camplan/reports/aguide/index.html pp.5.2, 5.3, 5.4

U.S Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board (1998). *ADAAG Manual, A Guide to the American with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines.* US Government Printing Office, pp.33-34

US Department of Justice (1994). *ADA Standards for Accessible Design* (28 CFR Part 36, revised July 1, 1994) §A.4.30.5

105.3.1 Other Publications

Accredited Standards Committee A117, American National Standards Institute, Inc. (2004). *American National Standard, Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities, ICC/ANSI A117.1-2003.* Illinois: International Codes Council. Inc.

Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board (2007). *Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines for Outdoor Developed Areas.* http://www.access-board.gov/outdoor/nprm/

Courthouse Access Advisory Committee (2006). *Justice for All: Designing Accessible Courthouses.* Washington, DC: U.S. Access Board. http://www.access-board.gov/caac/report.htm

Dobkin, I, and Peterson, M (1999). *Universal Interiors by Design: Gracious Spaces.* New York: McGraw Hill.

Garvey, Philip M. (2002). *Synthesis on the Legibility of Variable Message Signing (VMS) for Readers with Vision Loss,* http://www.access-board.gov/research/VMS/finalreport.htm

Levine, Danise, ed. (2003). *Universal Design New York 2.* Buffalo, NY: IDEA Center, University at Buffalo. New York: NYC Department of Design and Construction, NYC Mayor's Office for People with Disabilities.

National Cooperative Highway Research Program (2007) *Accessible Pedestrian Signals: A Guide to Best Practices.* http://www.walkinginfo.org/aps/

New York City, Department of Building, (2008). *2008 New York City Building Code.* New York: City of New York

New York City, City Planning Commission, Department of City Planning (1961). *Zoning Resolution* (Rev. ed.). New York: City of New York

New York City, Department of City Planning and Department of Transportation (1997). *New York City Bicycle Master Plan.* New York: City of New York

New York City, Department of Design and Construction (2009). *Active Design Guidelines: Promoting Physical Activity and Health in Design.* New York: City of New York.

New York City, Department of Transportation, (2009). *Street Design Manual.* New York: City of New York. www.nyc.gov/streetdesignmanual

Peterson, M, (1998). *Universal Kitchen and Bathroom Planning, Designs that Adapt to People.* Hackettstown, NJ: National Kitchen and Bath Association.

Steinfeld, Edward; Maisel, Jordana; Feathers, Dave; (2005). *Standards and Anthropometry for Wheeled Mobility.* Buffalo, NY: IDEA Center, University at Buffalo.http://www.ap.buffalo.edu/idea/Anthro/FinalAccessReport.pdf

U.S. Consumer Products Safety Commission. *Childproofing Your Home, 12 Safety Devices to Protect Your Children.* http://www.cpsc.gov/cpscpub/pubs/252.pdf or http://www.cpsc.gov/

106 Definitions

106.1 General. For the purpose of this book, the terms listed in Section 106.5 have the indicated meaning.

106.2 Terms Defined in Resources. Terms specifically defined in a resource, and not defined in this section, shall have the specified meaning from the resource.

106.3 Undefined Terms. The meaning of terms not specifically defined in this book or in a resource shall be as defined by collegiate dictionaries in the sense that the context implies.

106.4 Interchangeability. Words, terms, and phrases used in the singular include the plural, and those used in the plural include the singular.

106.5 Defined Terms.

Administrative authority: A jurisdictional body that adopts or enforces regulations and standards for the design, construction, or operation of buildings and facilities.

Ambulatory: A person that is not bedridden and can walk or move from place to place.

Anthropometric: The study of human body measurements

Amenity: Something that contributes to physical or material comfort.

Braille: A system devised by Louis Braille in 1821 comprised of characters or cells made up of six dot positions within a rectangle. Grade 2 Braille referenced in this book, uses contractions to reduce space and increase reading speed.

Characters: Letters, numbers, punctuation marks, and typographic symbols.

Children's use: Spaces and elements specifically designed for use primarily by people 12 years old and younger.

Circulation path: An exterior or interior way of passage from one place to another for pedestrians.

Counter slope: Any slope opposing the running slope of a curb ramp.

Cross slope: The slope that is perpendicular to the direction of travel (see running slope).

Curb ramp: A short ramp cutting through a curb or built up to it.

Destination-oriented elevator system: An elevator system that provides lobby controls for the selection of destination floors, lobby indicators designating which elevator to board, and a car indicator designating the floors at which the car will stop.

Detectable warning: A standardized surface feature built in or applied to floor surfaces to warn of hazards on a circulation path.

Dwelling unit: A single unit providing complete, independent living facilities for one or more persons including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation. A dwelling unit may be an apartment within a two family or multifamily building or a one family house. The dwelling unit may occupy one or more stories.

Element: An architectural or mechanical component of a building, facility, space, or site.

Elevator car call sequential step scanning:
A technology used to enter a car call by means of an up or down floor selection button.

Emergency assistance alarm: Strategically placed electronic devices to be used in case of a life threatening situation or accident requiring assistance, comprised of an upper and lower button, two-way communications, with visual and tactile identification.

Facility: All or any portion of a building, structure, or area, including the site on which such building, structure, or area is located, wherein specific services are provided or activities are performed.

Fully manual lockset: A lockset that does not contain an automatic spring loaded handle return.

IDG: Inclusive Design Guidelines, New York also referred to as "the book" or "the guidelines."

Inclusive: broad in orientation or scope, addressing the entire population regardless of age, size, physical or mental abilities without segregating or stigmatizing any group of people.

Inclusive environment: a multisensory enhanced environment that accommodates a wide range of physical and mental abilities for people of all ages.

Information transaction machine (ITM): Any interactive terminal in which the primary purpose is to accept input from a user, display information, and or dispense media. Such machines include automatic teller machines (ATM) or cash machines, postage stamp dispensers, fare machines, automated airport check-in machines, and information kiosks.

Key surface: The surface or plane of any key or button that must be touched to activate or deactivate an operable part or a machine function or enter data.

Marked crossing: A crosswalk or other identified path intended for pedestrian use in crossing a vehicular way.

Operable part: A component of an element used to insert or withdraw objects, or to activate, deactivate, or adjust the element.

PDA: Personal digital assistant. An electronic device that can include the features of a computer, cell phone, music player, camera, global positioning system (GPS) and other functions with a wide variety of software applications, that accommodates the user's needs and preferences in visual, auditory and tactile formats.

Photo luminescent material: A substance that absorbs light energy from a light source and glows when the source is removed. The material should be washable, non-toxic, non-radioactive and if subjected to fire must be self extinguishing when the fire is removed.

Pictogram: A pictorial symbol that represents activities, facilities, or concepts.

Ramp: A walking surface that has a running slope steeper than 1:20.

Ramp assembly: Complete set of components of a ramp that may include: entry landing, intermediate landing(s), ramp run(s), rest area(s), exit landing, handrails, edge protection, weather protection, illumination, graphics, communications, etc.

Ramp run: A single length of ramp between landings.

Running slope: The slope that is parallel to the direction of travel (see cross slope).

Sign: An architectural element composed of displayed textual, symbolic, tactile, or pictorial information.

Site: A parcel of land bounded by a property line or a designated portion of a public right-of-way.

Sleeping unit: A room or space in which people sleep that can also include permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, and either sanitation or kitchen facilities but not both. Such rooms and spaces that are also part of a dwelling unit are not sleeping units.

Tactile: Describes an object that can be perceived using the sense of touch.

TDD: Telecommunication device for the deaf. See TTY below.

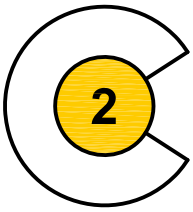
TTY: An abbreviation for teletypewriter. Equipment that employs interactive, text-based communications through the transmission of coded signals across the standard telephone network. The term TTY also refers to devices known as text telephones and TDDs.

Variable height: Includes a range of usable heights and also referred to as adjustable height.

Variable Message Signs (VMS): Variable message signs, also known as dynamic or changeable message signs, are signs capable of displaying more than one message that can be modified manually or automatically.

Vehicular way: A route provided for vehicular traffic.

Walk: An exterior pathway with a prepared surface for pedestrian use.

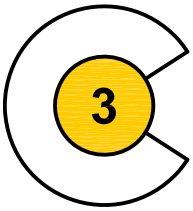


Scoping

201 General. *Inclusive Design Guidelines, New York City*, comprises recommendations for making sites, facilities, buildings, and elements inclusive. The administrative authority may consider providing scoping provisions to specify the extent to which the technical criteria may apply to each classification and building type, new construction, existing buildings, additions, temporary facilities, specific site and building elements; and to multiple elements or spaces within a site or building.

202 Dwelling and Sleeping Units. Chapter 10 of these guidelines, as well as cross-referenced sections throughout the *IDG* contain criteria to make dwelling units and sleeping units inclusive. The administrative authority may consider specifying in separate scoping provisions the extent to which the technical criteria may apply. These scoping provisions may define the type and number of units to comply.

203 Administration/Disclaimer. All content in this publication is intended to meet or exceed law. The administrative authority should provide an appropriate review and approval process to ensure that application of these guidelines meets all applicable local, state, and federal codes, rules and regulations. The City of New York, the International Code Council, Inc. and the American National Standards Institute, Inc., are not responsible for the application of the contents of this book and if applied, is at the discretion of the user and at their own risk.



Building Blocks

300 Introduction. Chapter 3 includes: floor surfaces, changes in level, turning space, clear floor space, knee and toe clearances, protruding objects, reach ranges, operable parts and eye levels.

Floor surfaces should be non-slip without obstructions or hazards, should not contain unintentional irregularities or overly aggressive textures and where applicable, should prevent water accumulation. Materials, sensory characteristics, detectable surfaces, detectable warnings, lippage and surface distortion, edges, visual contrast, color, and drainage are discussed. Edge treatment is multisensory that provides boundary, increases safety and enhances wayfinding. Tactile, auditory and visual characteristics help define and differentiate parts of a facility.

Changes in level for floor surfaces are defined. Guard height and opening limitations are provided, as well as sight obstructions and their relationship to eye levels.

Turning space, clear floor space, knee and toe clearances and reach ranges, establish a realistic three dimensional space envelope that applies systemically to the guidelines. This should accommodate a wide range of occupant configurations, body sizes, posture, clearance for hand/arm/foot movement, and manual or automatic devices. Adult standing reach ranges are provided. The recommended route width is part of a modular concept. Odd restricted conditions created by reducing maneuvering spaces down to rock bottom code minimums are avoided.

Operable parts also apply systemically to the guidelines affecting: doors, elevators, windows, drinking fountains, toilet and bathing rooms, appliances, alarms, signage, two-way communications and many dwelling unit components (e.g., entrances, controls, kitchen cabinetry, landscape elements, and communication elements). Multisensory components and operation comprise visual, tactile and auditory characteristics. Within reach ranges are standing and seated comfort zones that enhance usability. Standard and alternate actuation and operation cover a wide range of user needs and preferences that go way beyond typical hand operation. Automatic operation should be provided with manual back-up in case of power failure. Operable parts intended for young children should be scaled appropriately and simplified. **"**Any safety device should be strong enough to prevent injury to young children, yet easy for adults to use," according to the U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission. Childproofing, identifies twelve safety device examples. Multisensory alarms are also included because they are important for a wide range of safety applications.

Eye levels are provided for standing/sitting positions for adults, children and those who use a mobility device. Dimensions for adults range from the lowest female height to the maximum male height for standing and sitting positions. Dimensions for children, range in age from 5 to 12 years. A number of factors may affect sitting position eye levels, such as seat height and posture. Care should be taken regarding visual obstructions, sight lines and field of view. A sitting position is a requirement that is not limited to people with disabilities; it is a necessity for many with diminished dexterity and stamina and others that need a place to rest.

301 General

301.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 3 should apply where recommended by the scoping provisions adopted by the administrative authority.

302 Floor Surfaces

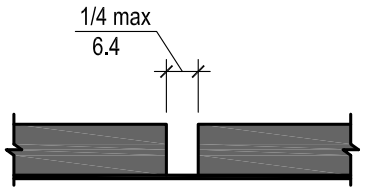
302.1 General. Floor surfaces should comply with Section 302.

302.1.1 Surfaces. Surfaces should be safe and usable by everyone. They should not contain irregularities, excessively aggressive textures and should be consistent. Surfaces consist of non-compressible and compressible materials that include the following: openings complying with Section 302.3, joints complying with Section 302.4, exterior surfaces complying with Section 302.5, tactile and auditory characteristics complying with Section 302.6, detectable surfaces and warnings complying with Section 302.7, lippage and surface distortion complying with Section 302.8, edges complying with Section 302.9, visual contrast complying with Section 302.10 and color complying with Section 302.11. Also, refer to Section 403 for walking surfaces.

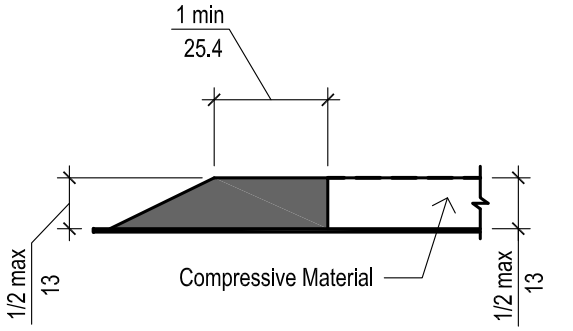
302.1.1 Advisory. Natural surfaces, including soft, irregular conditions found on natural paths, present challenges for some. Refer to 302.5 Advisory for additional information.

302.2 Materials. Surfaces consist of non-compressible and compressible materials. Transition between materials may be problematic, especially due to the differences in elevation resulting from material compression.

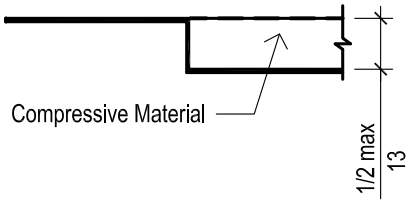
302.2.1 Non-Compressible Material. Non-compressible materials should be stable, firm, and slip resistant. Slip resistance is always a concern, especially for unprotected exterior locations and interior areas subject to water exposure. Traction should be increased where safety is critical with the use of an appropriate finish (e.g., thermal and matt surfaces). Non-compressible materials should comply with all the provisions of Section 302.3 through Section 302.11 and changes in level complying with Section 303.



(a)
Open Joint Non-Compressible Materials



(b)
Beveled and/or Sloped w/Compressible Material



(c)
Recessed with Compressible Material

Fig.302.2
Examples of Material Transitions

302.2.2 Compressible Materials. Compressible materials (e.g., rubber and vinyl) should be securely anchored and slip resistant. Maximum compression is critical for ease of mobility and transition to other materials. Compression should not exceed 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) below adjacent surfaces. Materials under compression should comply with applicable provisions of Sections 302 and Section 303.

302.2.2.1 Carpet. Carpet or carpet tile should be securely attached and should not have a cushion or pad. Carpet or carpet tile should have a loop, textured loop, level cut pile, or level cut/uncut pile texture. The pile should be 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum height. Exposed edges of carpet should be fastened to the floor and should have trim along the entire length of the exposed edge. Carpet edge trim should comply with Section 303. Carpet recessed into the floor surface should be flush with the adjacent floor or 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) maximum above the adjacent floor.

302.2.2.1 Advisory. Avoid carpet and underlayment combinations that are susceptible to blocking. They can cause tripping and impede the use of mobility devices.

302.3 Openings. Openings in floor surfaces should be of a size that does not permit the passage of a 1/2 inch (13 mm) diameter sphere, except as allowed in Sections 407.4.3, 408.4.3, 409.4.3, 410.4 and Section 805.10. Elongated openings should be placed so that the long dimension is perpendicular to the dominant direction of travel. Openings running parallel with the direction of travel should be 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) maximum. Whenever possible leave grates out of the path of travel.

302.4 Joints. Joints are recommended to be a maximum of 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) in width. Expansion joints are recommended to be a maximum of 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) in width. Joints should run perpendicular to the direction of travel to the maximum extent possible. Compressible joint filler should not exceed 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) above or below the mean surface plane of the adjacent material. Any joints wider than 3/8 should contain filler that does not exceed 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) maximum above or below the mean surface plane of the adjacent material. Regardless of the size and quantity of joints, the overall floor surface should comply with Section 302.8 for lippage and surface distortion

302.5 Exterior Surfaces. Exterior surfaces should comply with Section 302 and Section 303. Exterior surfaces may be weather protected. Provide proper drainage to avoid water accumulation and potential freezing. Consider an ice melt system at critical points to reduce hazards and to make usage easier (e.g. path to entry, landings, shelters, etc). Natural exterior surfaces that include walks, paths, trails, sections and areas, should comply to the maximum extent possible.

302.5 Advisory. Changes and irregularities in walking surfaces are unsafe for many people traveling by foot or with mobility devices. Irregular surfaces, such as rough paving blocks and large or uneven joints may be problematic, especially with smaller units since this may increase the number of joints. Properly designed subsurfaces reduce uneven settlement and surface distortion. Natural paths and areas such as park trails and beaches should be experienced by all to the maximum extent possible. Some environments and conditions will obviously present a difficult design challenge. The USDA's *Forest Service Outdoor Recreation Accessibility Guidelines (FSORAG)* and the USDA's *Forest Service Trail Accessibility Guidelines (FSTAG)* provide many solutions. Difficult situations, such as access to water over sand, may be resolved with geotextile path or bonded materials (e.g., sand mixed with adhesives). See the proposed Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) *Accessibility Guidelines for Outdoor Developed Areas*. This document can be accessed through the Access Board's website: http://www.access-board.gov/ Textures and firmness help to establish edges to guide people across undefined open areas. Redundant multiple solutions may be necessary to address the widest range of users. Provide path or route information regarding general difficulty, type of surface, slope, length etc. so that visitors may determine if they can and want to take a particular route. Consider a route and trail rating system based on the Universal Trail Assessment Program provided by American Trails at: http://www.americantrails.org/ It is a comprehensive source for planning, building, designing, funding, managing, enhancing and supporting trails and greenways. See also Section 402.4.3. Recreational Routes and the 402.4.3 Advisory.

302.6 Sensory Characteristics. Sensory characteristics comprising tactile, auditory and visual attributes should be intentionally and carefully composed to help produce a multisensory enhanced environment. Sensory characteristics applied to exterior and interior floor surfaces identify and differentiate routes, levels, rooms, spaces and indicate transition, directionality and hierarchy. They are important for effective wayfinding complying with Section 714.

302.6.1 Tactile Characteristics. Tactile characteristics comprise material properties, texture, pattern, finish and other features that are perceptible underfoot. Tactile characteristics can be a composition of strips, shapes, designated

areas or entire surfaces. Tactile contrast (e.g., rough vs. smooth) helps emphasize the difference between surfaces, similar to visual contrast. Surfaces comprising material units and joints should be carefully designed because they can create another layer of patterns and textures.

302.6.2 Auditory Characteristics. Auditory characteristics comprise acoustic properties (e.g., sound level and reverberation) that are important, especially for people with sight disabilities. Sound helps to establish location and direction. As a person's sight diminishes this becomes more critical.

302.6.3 Visual Characteristics. Visual characteristics should include but are not limited to contrast complying with Section 302.10, color complying with Section 302.11, texture, pattern, finish and material properties.

302.7 Detectable Warning and Surfaces. Detectable surfaces can be used for sections, strips, areas or entire floor surfaces and should comply with Section 302.6 and Section 705.

302.8 Lippage and Surface Distortion. The lippage or difference in surface elevation between adjacent tiles, bricks and other units and pavers should be a maximum of 1/8 inch (3.2 mm). Surface distortion in any unit of material should not exceed 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) maximum above or below the mean surface plane of the material.

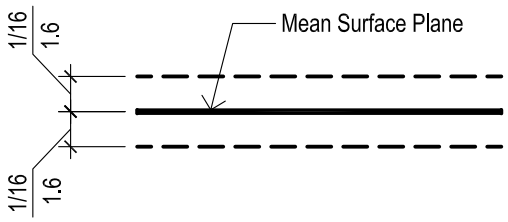
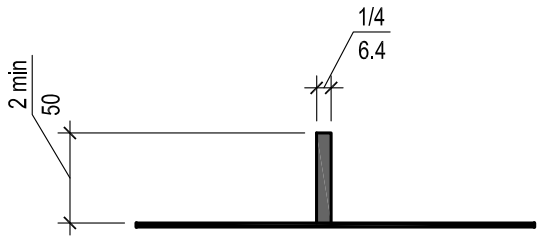


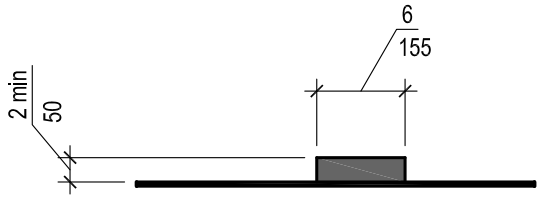
Fig. 302.8
Surface Distortion

302.9 Edges. Edges should be visual, tactile and auditory. Edges define boundaries, provide wayfinding (refer to Section 714), and increase safety. Edges may be continuous, intermittent, raised, flush, and dropped. They may be as narrow as 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for steel angles or 6 inches (155 mm) or wider. Wider edges should be provided with a top surface that is sloped 1:6 minimum or differentiated from a stair tread if it is low. Low edge height should be a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) high. Please note that 4 inches (102 mm) is required for ramps and landings as per 2008 NYCBC, Section 1010.9. Even a small drop-off of an inch can be a tripping or flipping hazard. It is recommended to provide edge protection complying with Section 302.9 where there is a drop-off of 6-inches or less (this relates to ramp handrail requirement for a rise greater than 6 inches) Drop-offs greater than 6 inches should be provided with a guard complying with Section 303.8. Edges may also be defined with texture, change in material, contrast and color. Edges may be defined with full or partial height walls, guards, parapets, railings or other architectural elements (refer to Section 714.4), outdoor furniture and natural landscape elements (refer to Section 714.3.) Edges may also be defined by sound as the result of material selected or by natural sounds such as moving water, wind, leaf/branch movement. (refer to Section 714.2.3) Consider enhancing edges with photoluminescent material, lighting, tactile strip, tactile warning, and electronic means such as an information/navigation reference point system complying with Section 708.7. Vibration tactile indication of spacial limits and dangerous conditions, should be provided for people with low vision or those who are blind. Emergency egress routes should provide multiple overlapping elements for tactile, visual and auditory edging. Edges may also be defined with the use of a low rail, rope, cable or other similar means, but should be substantial enough to stand out from the surrounding surfaces.

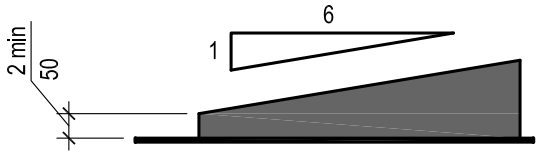
302.9 Advisory. Edges are a key component of an inclusive environment that help provide a multisensory means to establish the path width, direction, and spacial boundaries. Edges alone provide a strong element but when enhanced with visual, tactile, and auditory characteristics, their effectiveness is substantially increased. Drop-offs are not recommended and limited to Section 303 changes in level and 303.8 Guards. Flush edges adjacent to natural surfaces such as soil, organic ground cover, sand, etc. may be desirable but problematic due to the compressible characteristics of the material. The edge may be detectable by the transition from a solid stable surface to a natural compressible material, but other means should also be employed to enhance the edge.



(a)
Narrow Edge



(b)
Wide Edge



(c)
Edges Greater Than 6 Inches Wide

Fig. 302.9
Edges

302.10 Visual Contrast. Surfaces and edges may contrast visually, either light-on-dark or dark-on-light. Contrast should be at least 70% based on contrast calculation below, to provide the greatest level of effectiveness. Less contrast will be of limited use since it may not provide enough of a visual difference for people with diminished sight.

Contrast = [(B1 — B2)/B1] x 100

Where B1 = Light reflectance value (LRV) of the lighter area and B2 = Light reflectance value (LRV) of the darker area. Note that in any application both white and black are never absolute; thus, B1, never equals 100 and B2 is always greater than 0.

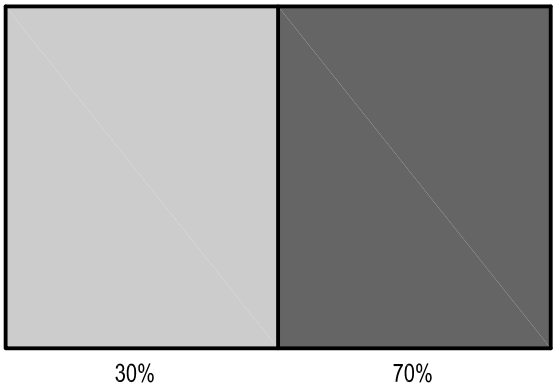


Fig. 302.10
Visual Contrast

302.11 Color. Color consists of three perceptual attributes: hue, lightness and saturation. Refer to the Lighthouse International's *Designing for People with Partial Sight and Color Deficiencies* by Aries Arditi, PhD. The greater the color contrast, the more effectively it can be used to differentiate a path, surface area, and to enhance wayfinding. The contrast of the colors may be more effective than the colors themselves.

303 Changes in Level

303.1 General. Changes in level for floor surfaces should comply with Section 303.

303.1 Advisory. Use of different methods to signal a level change will address a greater variety of users (i.e. changes in texture, color, light, and audible warning).

303.2 Vertical. Changes in level of ¼ inch (6.4 mm) maximum in height should be permitted to be vertical. Vertical changes should be avoided wherever possible.

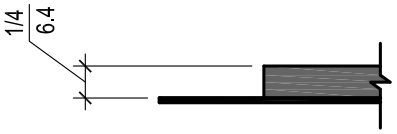
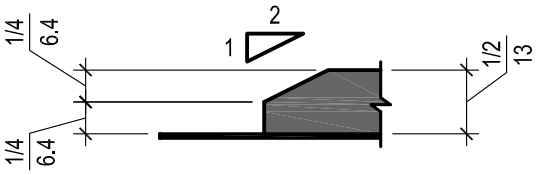
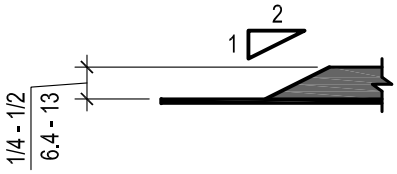


Fig. 303.2
Vertical Changes in Level

303.3 Beveled. Changes in level greater than ¼ inch (6.4 mm) in height and not more than ½ inch (13 mm) maximum in height should be beveled with a slope not steeper than 1:2.



(a)
Vertical / Beveled



(b)
Beveled

Fig. 303.3
Beveled Changes in Level

303.4 Ramped. Changes in level greater than ½ inch (13 mm) in height should be ramped and should comply with Section 405 and 406.

303.5 Detectable Warning. Provide detectable warnings complying with Section 705 where level changes require such warnings.

303.6 Natural Surfaces. Level changes addressed by this section may not apply to some outdoor environments such as loose sand or soil, and irregular surfaces such as rough paving blocks. This may require providing an inclusive route through a portion of a larger area.

303.7 Multiple Changes in Level. Multiple changes in level should provide a 72 inch (1830 mm) minimum landing between each change in level.

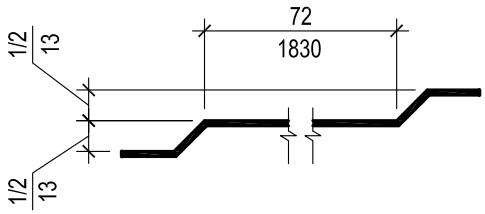


Fig. 303.7
Multiple Changes in Level

303.8 Guards. Guards should be located along open sided walking surfaces which are more than 6 inches (150 mm) above the floor or grade.

303.8 Advisory. Guards are part of the *2008 NYC Building Code*, Section BC 1012. The code requirement addresses drop-offs of 30 inches or more with exceptions, but even a small drop-off of an inch can be a tripping or device flipping hazard. It is recommended to provide edge protections complying with Section 302.9 where there is a drop-off of 6-inches or less. Drop-offs greater than 6-inches should be provided with a guard. Guards consist of a wide variety of configurations and material with and without openings that have restrictions.

303.8.1 Height. Guards should form a protective barrier not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) high.

303.8.2 Opening Limitations. Open guards should not allow the passage of a 4 inch diameter (102 mm) sphere up to a height of 34 inches (864 mm) and should not allow the passage of an 8 inch diameter (203 mm) sphere from a height of 34 inches (864 mm) to 42 inches (1067 mm).

303.8.3 Sight Obstructions. Eye levels complying with Section 310 should not be obstructed. Provide the widest feasible field of view, unless the field is purposely limited to frame and focus the view.

304 Turning Space

304.1 General. A turning space should comply with Section 304.

304.1 Advisory. The turning space and other building blocks, including clear floor space, knee and toe clearance and reach ranges, establish a realistic and very usable third dimensional space envelop that applies systemically to the guidelines. This accommodates various occupants size and posture, positions, movement of body parts especially the arms, hands and feet; and mobility devices. This directly affects routes, doors and doorways, ramps, elevators, parking, toilet and bathing rooms, assembly areas, kitchens, transportation facilities, detention facilities, courtrooms, dwelling units.

304.2 Floor Surface. Floor surface of a turning space should be an unobstructed plane with a slope not steeper than 1:48 and should comply with Section 302.

304.2 Advisory. Floor surface recommendations contained in Section 302 apply to clear floor spaces including materials, opening, slip resistance, tactile surface characteristics, lippage and surface distortion. They may be used as part of the wayfinding system complying with Section 714. The clear floor space should contain a single plane without tripping or tipping hazards.

304.3 Size. The turning space should be a clear circular space with a 72-inch (1800 mm) diameter. The turning space should be permitted to include knee and toe clearance.

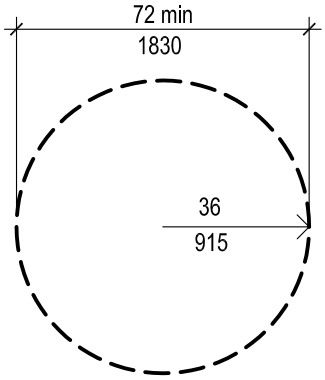


Fig. 304.3
Size of Turning Space

304.3 Advisory. The 72 inch minimum diameter should accommodate a range of body positions, various user configurations and many of the common mobility devices. Not all body positions are addressed with this minimum (e.g. some people need to fully extend their legs) and may require a larger turning circle. There are also practical limits of turning space size due to the effect it has on other components and space configurations.

304.4 Door Swing. Unless otherwise specified, doors should not be permitted to swing into turning spaces.

305 Clear Floor Space

305.1 General. A clear floor space should comply with Section 305.

305.1 Advisory. The 30 x 48 code space is often incorrectly used as a standard, rather than a minimum space. The recommended 36 x 60 space addresses a wide variety of user configurations and accommodates most mobility devices. In some instances, a user configuration will require less, but this allows slightly more maneuvering clearance to be able to enter and exit the space. The clear floor space should not be thought of as how tightly a human being can be packed like freight, rather it should be a space usable by everyone.

305.2 Floor Surface. Floor surface of a clear floor space should be an unobstructed plane with a slope not steeper than 1:48 and should comply with Section 302.

305.2 Advisory. Floor surface recommendations contained in Section 302 apply to clear floor spaces including materials, opening, tactile surface characteristics, lippage and surface distortion. They may be used as part of the wayfinding system complying with Section 714. The clear floor space should contain a single plane without tripping or tipping hazards.

305.3 Size. The clear floor space should be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width.

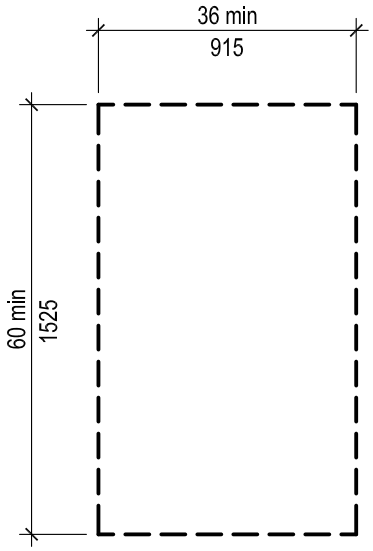
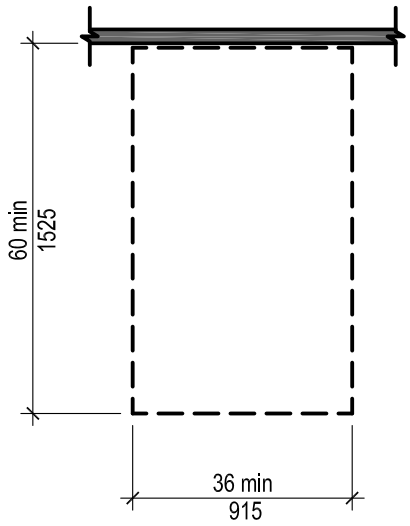


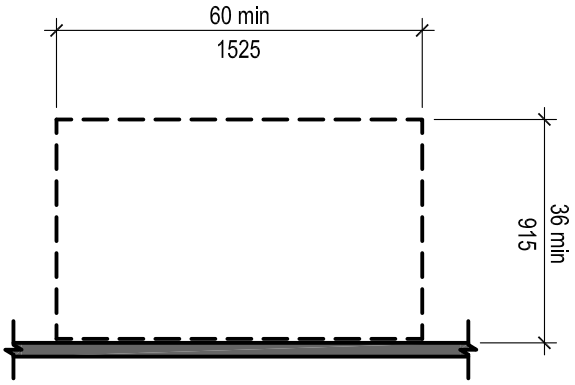
Fig. 305.3
Size of Clear Floor Space

305.4 Knee and Toe Clearance. Unless otherwise specified, clear floor space should be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306.

305.5 Position. Unless otherwise specified, the clear floor space should be positioned for either forward or parallel approach to an element.



(a)
Forward

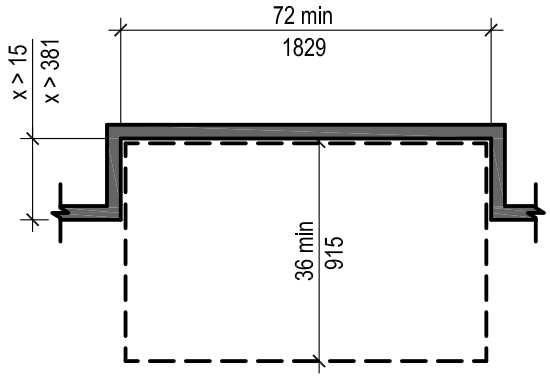


(b)
Parallel

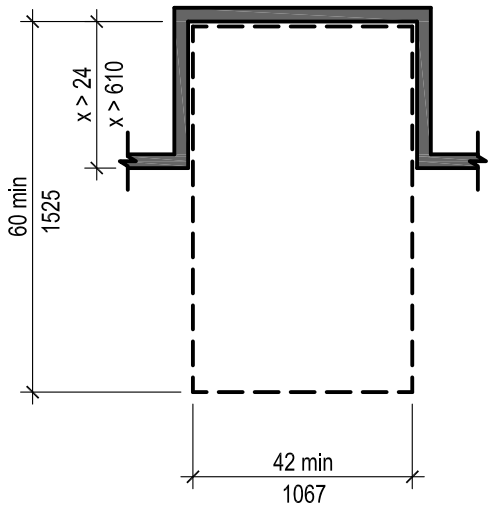
Fig. 305.5
Position of Clear Floor Space

305.6. Approach. One full, unobstructed side of the clear floor space should adjoin a route or another clear floor space.

305.7 Alcoves. If a clear floor space is in an alcove or otherwise confined on all or part of three sides, additional maneuvering clearances complying with Sections 305.7.1 and 305.7.2 should be provided, as applicable.



(a)
Parallel Approach



(b)
Forward Approach

Fig. 305.7
Maneuvering Clearance in an Alcove

305.7.1 Parallel Approach. Where the clear floor space is positioned for a parallel approach, the alcove should be 72 inches (1830 mm) in width where the depth exceeds 15 inches (380 mm).

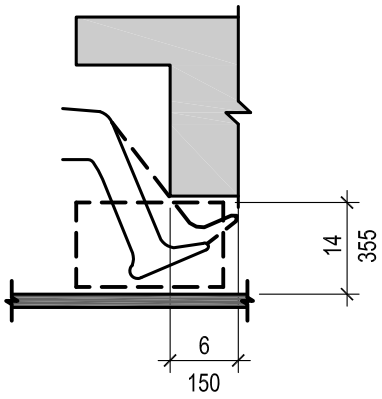
305.7.2 Forward Approach. Where the clear floor space is positioned for a forward approach, the alcove should be 42 inches(1067 mm) in width where the depth exceeds 24 inches (610 mm).

306 Knee and Toe Clearances

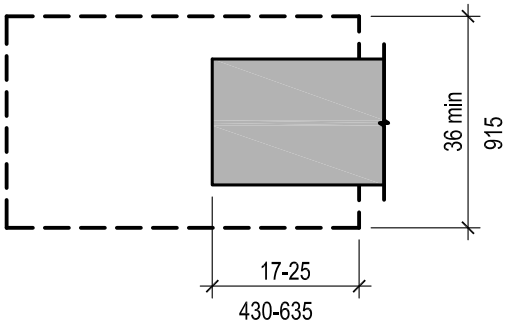
306.1 General. Where space beneath an element is included as part of clear floor space at an element, or turning space, the space should comply with Section 306. Additional space beyond knee and toe clearances should be permitted beneath elements.

306.1 Advisory. Toe heights have been increased above the minimum legal requirement. Although this addresses people who use mobility devices, the increased toe clearance applies to others that either require or prefer to slightly elevate their feet.

306.2 Toe Clearance



(a)
Elevation



(b)
Plan

Fig. 306.2
Toe Clearances

306.2.1 General. Space beneath an element between the floor and 14 inches (355 mm) above the floor should be considered toe clearance and should comply with Section 306.2.

306.2.2 Maximum Depth. Toe clearance should be permitted to extend 25 inches (635 mm) maximum under an element.

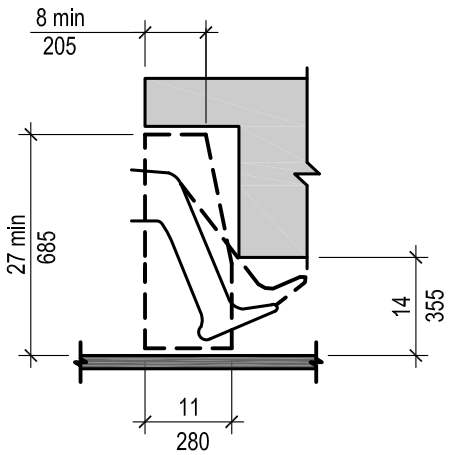
306.2.3 Minimum Depth. Where toe clearance is required at an element as part of a clear floor space, the toe clearance should extend 17 inches (430 mm) minimum beneath the element.

306.2.4 Additional Clearance. Space extending greater than 6 inches (150 mm) beyond the available knee clearance at 14 inches (355 mm) above the floor should not be considered toe clearance

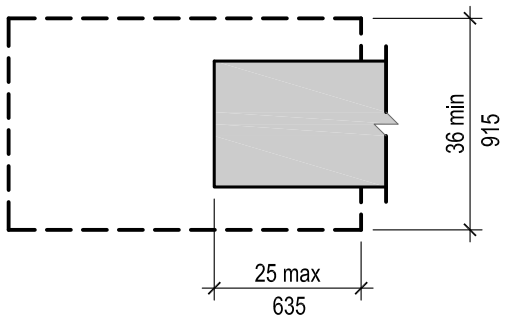
306.2.5 Width. Toe clearance should be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width.

306.2.6 Supplemental Children's Toe Clearance. Components meant for children ages 6 to 12 should provide a toe clearance of 9 inches (230 mm) above the floor.

306.3 Knee Clearance.



(a)
Elevation



(b)
Plan

Fig. 306.3
Knee Clearances

306.3.1 General. Space beneath an element between 14 inches (355 mm) and 27 inches (685 mm) above the floor should be considered knee clearance and should comply with Section 306.3. The minimum knee clearance height is 27 inches (685 mm) aff to the underside of the element.

306.3.2 Maximum Depth. Knee clearance should be permitted to extend 25 inches (635 mm) maximum under an element at 14 inches (350 mm) above the floor.

306.3.3 Minimum Depth. Where knee clearance is required beneath an element as part of a clear floor space, the knee clearance should be 11 inches (280 mm) minimum in depth at 14 inches (350 mm) above the floor, and 8 inches (205 mm) minimum in depth at 27 inches (685 mm) above the floor.

306.3.4 Clearance Reduction. Between 14 inches (350 mm) and 27 inches (685 mm) above the floor, the knee clearance should be permitted to be reduced at a rate of 1 inch (25 mm) in depth for each 6 inches (150 mm) in height.

306.3.5 Width. Knee clearance should be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width.

306.3.6 Supplemental Children's Knee Clearance. Components meant for children ages 6 to 12 should provide a knee clearance of 24 inches (610 mm) above the floor.

307 Protruding Objects

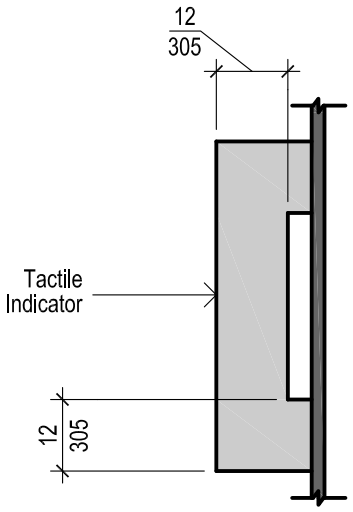
307.1 General. Protruding objects on circulation paths should comply with Section 307.

307.1 Advisory. Protruding objects are potentially a serious hazard to people with diminished vision. Potentially hazardous objects are noticed only if they fall within the detection range. Those people walking toward an object can detect an overhang if its lowest surface is no higher than 27 inches (685 mm). A 12 inch wide detectable warning strip on floor surface provides early warning. When walking alongside projecting objects, some people cannot detect overhangs. Since proper cane and guide dog techniques keep people away from the edge of a path or from walls, a slight overhang of no more than 4 inches (100 mm) is not considered a hazard.

307.2 Protrusion Limits. Objects with leading edges more than 27 inches (685 mm) and not more than 80 inches (2030 mm) above the floor should protrude 4 inches (100 mm) maximum horizontally into the circulation path.

EXCEPTIONS:

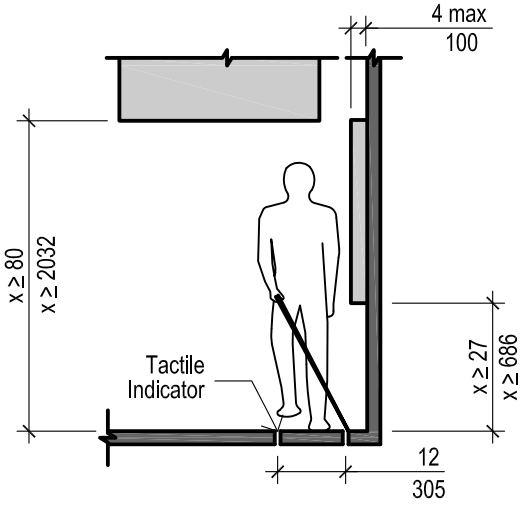
1. Handrails should be permitted to protrude 4 ½ inches (115 mm) maximum.
2. Door closers and doorstops should be permitted to be 78 inches (1980 mm) minimum above the floor.



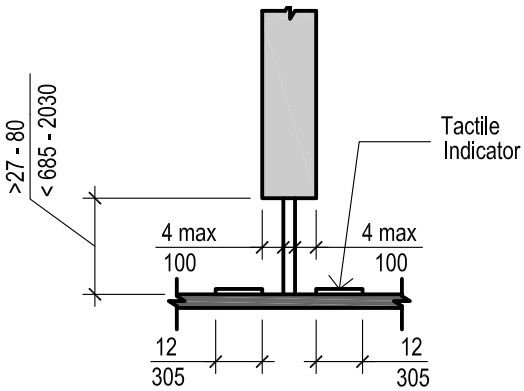
(b)
Plan

Fig. 307.2
Limits of Protruding Objects

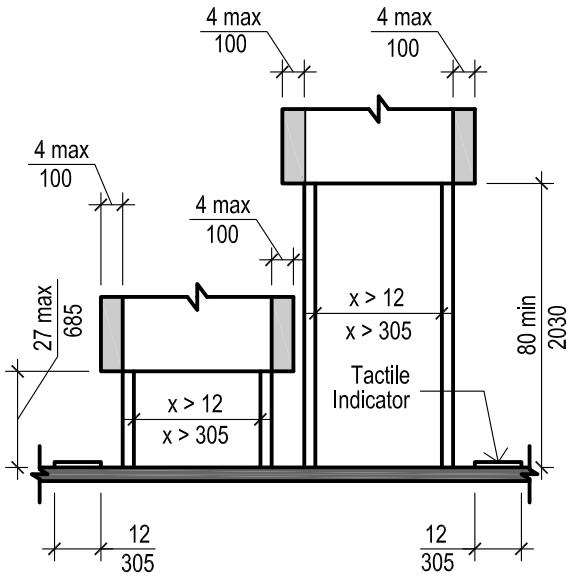
307.3 Post Mounted Objects. Objects on posts or pylons should be permitted to overhang 4 inches (100 mm) maximum where more than 27 inches (685 mm) and not more than 80 inches (2030 mm) above the floor. Objects on multiple posts or pylons where the clear distance between the posts and pylons is greater than 12 inches (305 mm) should have the lowest edge of such object either 27 inches (685 mm) maximum or 80 inches (2030 mm) minimum above the floor.



(a)
Elevation



(a)



(b)

Fig. 307.3
Post-Mounted Protruding Objects

307.4 Reduced Vertical Clearance. Guardrails or other barriers should be provided where object protrusion is beyond the limits allowed by Section 307.2 and 307.3, and where the vertical clearance is less than 80 inches (2030 mm) above the floor. The leading edge of such guardrail or barrier should be 27 inches (685 mm) maximum above the floor.

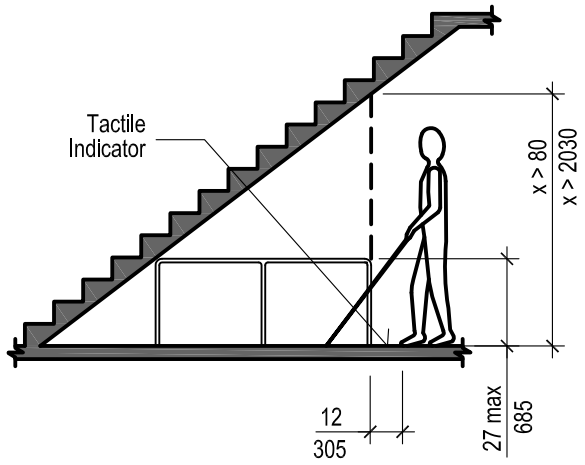


Fig. 307.4
Reduced Vertical Clearance

307.5 Required Clear Width. Protruding objects should not reduce the clear width required for routes.

307.6 Tactile Indicators. Tactile indicators should be provided on the floor complying with Section 302.6 or 302.7, and should run parallel to the leading edge of the protrusion and extending 12 inches (305 mm) outward from the protrusion. Post mounted objects should be provided with a tactile indicator that rings the object starting parallel to the leading edge of the protrusion and extending 12 inches (305 mm) outward from the protrusion.

307.6 Advisory. Detectable surfaces complying with Section 302.7 may raise concerns regarding materials. Introduction of a strip (e.g. plastic) in a carpeted floor may not be aesthetically desirable and may be a maintenance problem. Perhaps insertion of the same carpet but with a built-in texture should be considered. Other flooring (e.g., hardwood, vinyl, tile, concrete), detectable surface strips can be attached directly to the floor, but then too it may be desirable to integrate the texture into the material.

308 Reach Ranges

308.1 General. Reach ranges should comply with Section 308.

308.2 Forward Reach

308.2.1 Unobstructed. Where a forward reach is unobstructed, the high forward reach should be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum and the low forward reach should be 18.6 inches (472 mm) minimum above the floor.

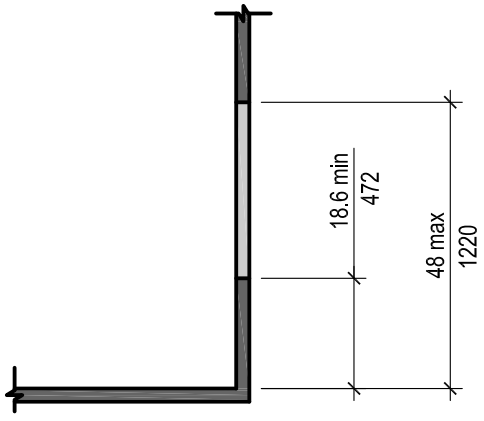
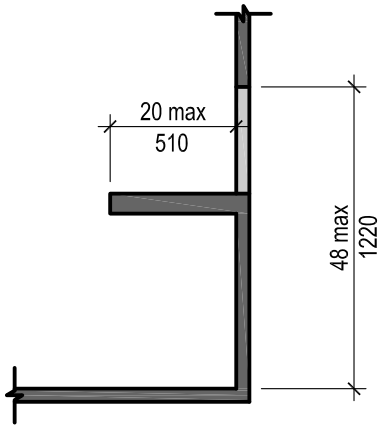
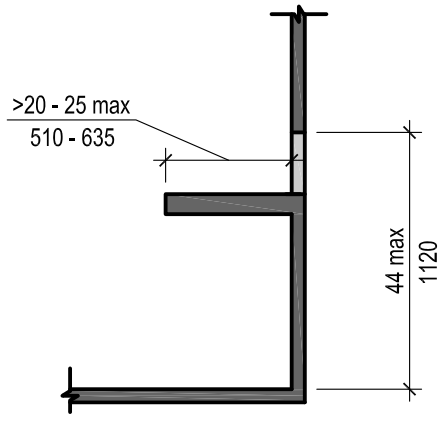


Fig. 308.2.1
Unobstructed Forward Reach

308.2.2 Obstructed High Reach. Where a high forward reach is over an obstruction, the clear floor space should extend beneath the element for a distance not less than the required reach depth over the obstruction. The high forward reach should be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum where the reach depth is 20 inches 9510 mm) maximum. Where the reach depth exceeds 20 inches (510 mm), the high forward reach should be 44 inches (1120 mm) maximum, and the reach depth should be 25 inches (635 mm) maximum.



(a)



(b)

Fig. 308.2.2
Obstructed High Forward Reach

308.3 Side Reach

308.3.1 Unobstructed. Where a clear floor space allows a parallel approach to an element and the side reach is unobstructed, the high side reach should be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum and the low side reach should be 19.5 inches (495 mm) minimum above the floor

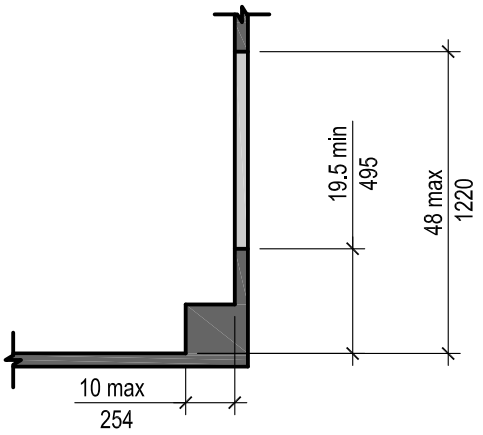
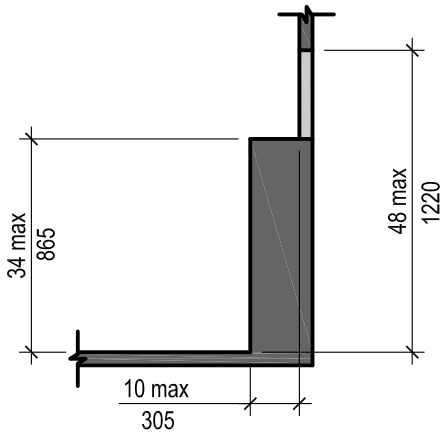
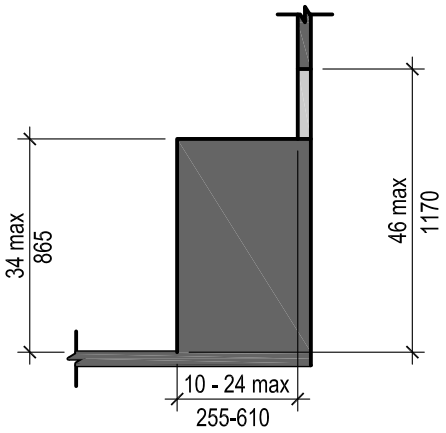


Fig. 308.3.1
Unobstructed Side Reach

308.3.2 Obstructed High Reach. Where a clear floor space allows a parallel approach to an object and the high side reach is over an obstruction, the height of the obstruction should be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum and the depth of the obstruction should be 24 inches (610 mm) maximum. The high side reach should be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum for a reach depth of 10 inches (255 mm) maximum. Where the reach depth exceeds 10 inches (255 mm), the high side reach should be 46 inches (1170 mm) maximum for a reach depth of 25 inches (635 mm) maximum.



(a)



(b)

Fig. 308.3.2
Obstructed High Side Reach

308.4 Children's Reach Ranges. Projects designed for children's use should follow the chart below, from *ADA Accessibility Guidelines for Building Elements Designed for Children's Use* (1998). Percentage of the project dedicated to children and percentage of age group to be determined by designer.

Table 308.4 Children's Reach Ranges

Forward or Side Reach	Ages 3 and 4	Ages 5 through 8	Ages 9 through 12
High (max)	36 inches (915mm)	40 inches (1015mm)	44 inches (1120mm)
Low (min)	20 inches (510mm)	18 inches (455mm)	16 inches (405mm)

308.5 Supplemental Adult Standing Reach Range. Supplemental adult standing reach ranges for both forward and side approach may be provided in addition to the other reach ranges in Section 308. The reach range should be 72 inches (1830 mm) maximum and the low reach range should be 30 inches (765 mm) minimum above the finished floor. Refer to Section 309.3.2 for supplemental standing reach range comfort zone for adults.

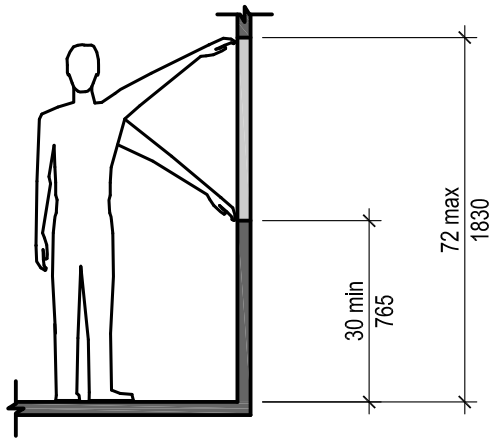


Fig. 308.5
Supplemental Adult Standing Reach Range

308.5 Advisory. These reach ranges were determined using anthropometric data from *Architectural Graphic Standards*. Male and female high forward reach heights at a 40 degree angle where averaged. The reach range is supplemental to provide additional preferences that exceed the code requirements. This may require dual controls or other elements since the code requirements must be maintained.

309 Operable Parts

309.1 General. Operable parts should comply with Section 309.

309.1 Advisory. Operable parts is a very important section since it applies systemically to the guidelines. It affects doors, elevators, windows, drinking fountains, toilet and bathing rooms, appliances, alarms, signage, telephones, two-way communications, and many dwelling unit components including entrances, controls, kitchen cabinetry, landscape elements, communication elements, etc. Visual, tactile and audible characteristics are basic design considerations that should be well thought out. Visual characteristics include contrast, color and illumination. Tactile characteristics include, shape, surface texture and vibration. Auditory characteristics include sounds and pre-recorded messages. There are many people with reduced vision, dexterity, hearing and mental abilities that need to be considered in the design of operable parts, especially for safety reasons.

309.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305 should be provided.

309.3 Height. Operable parts should be placed within one or more of the reach ranges specified in Section 308.

309.3.1 Comfort Seated Reach Zone. It is recommended to locate operable parts, especially controls within the most generally comfortable obstructed/unobstructed reach zone between 24 inches (610 mm) and 44-48 inches (1118-1220 mm) above the finished floor.

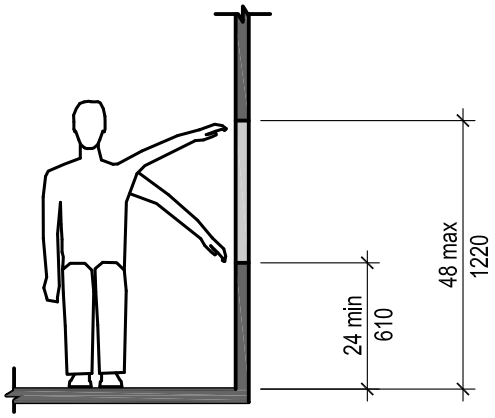


Fig. 309.3.1
Comfort Seated Reach Zone

309.3.2 Standing Comfort Reach Zone. A standing comfort reach zone may be provided to locate operable parts, especially controls within the most generally comfortable standing reach zone between 42 inches (1070 mm) and 60 inches (1525 mm) above the finished floor.

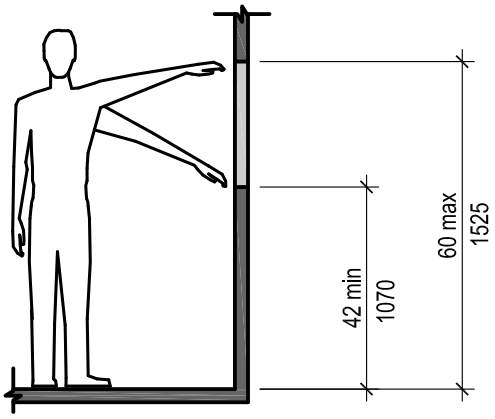


Fig. 309.3.2
Standing Comfort Reach Zone

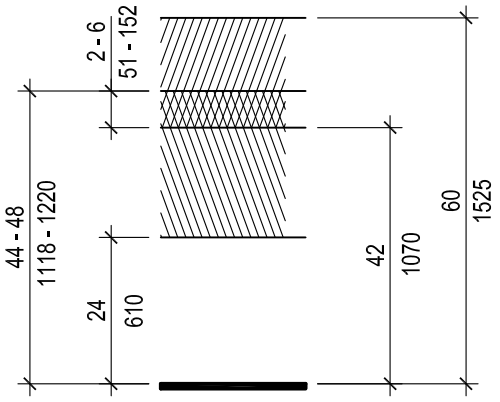


Fig. 309.3.3
Standing/Seated
Comfort Zones Overlap.

309.3.2 Advisory. These reach ranges were determined using anthropometric data from *Architectural Graphic Standards*. Male and female high forward for optimal control reach heights where averaged. The reach range is supplemental to provide additional preferences that exceed the code requirements. This may require dual controls or other elements since the code requirements must be maintained.

309.3.3 Comfort Zones Overlap. The overlap of zones complying with Section 309.3.1 and Section 309.3.2 results in a zone that provides comfortable reach for both seated and standing positions ranging from 42 inches (1066 mm) to 44-48 inches (1118-1220 mm) aff. The overlap band is 2-6 inches (51-152 mm) wide. Eye levels complying with Section 310 should be considered for visual operation.

309.4 Standard Operation. Operable parts should be multisensory and as simple and intuitive as possible to use. This is not only to avoid a learning curve, but to prevent incorrect operation, unintentional actuation through lockout devices or simple multiple step actuation, where appropriate to avoid fire, electrical and other potential hazards. Both right and left hand users and a range of hand sizes should be accommodated. Children's components should be properly scaled. Controls should be ergonomically designed to increase usability, safety, comfort and usable duration while reducing fatigue. Automatic operation should be provided with manual back-up. Operable parts should be operable with one hand and should not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate operable parts should be 5.0 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.

309.4 Advisory. If possible, simplify an operation by breaking down the sequence into distinct non-overlapping steps to avoid concurrent multiple tasks. This requires less dexterity and avoids a learning curve which is important for many people especially the elderly and people with reduced dexterity and learning disabilities.

309.4.1 Alternate Operation. Actuation and operation can be accomplished for some with the use of their hands but for others this is not viable or preferred. Consider alternate means: elbow, arm, shoulder, thigh, knee, foot, voice/sound, motion, or even body temperature and weight. Actuator/controls may be a button, pad, foot pedal, designated wall or floor surface area, motion detector, weight trigger, remote control/actuator (see Section 708.7), automatic remote (continuous signal transmitter), card readers, PDA's and other means. Intuitive automatic operation resolves many operational concerns (e.g., sizing for both adult and children, sanitation and improper usage). Automatic operation should be provided with manual back-up. Standard and alternate operations should be redundant to provide a variety of options, preferences and address changing needs.

309.4.1 Advisory. A variety of choices should be provided for the user depending on their needs and preferences that may change, even on a day to day basis. Sanitary, safety and even security concerns may be different for each user. A person may not want to risk contaminating their hands and prefer to activate a device with their elbow or other means. Buttons should be sized accordingly for the way they are activated. (e.g., 3-inch or larger, round, square or rectangular button, for elbow or knee activation). In some instances, physical activation may be accomplished by walking on a surface, sitting on a device, closing a door, links to other controls, etc. Motion detectors are not viable for all applications and may not provide the level of control needed (e.g. faucet controls may turn water on and off but may not allow flow and temperature adjustment). In many situations computers can be used in very sophisticated ways, programmed for general usage or modified for individual use. They may be linked electronically to pre-programmed transmitters that activate personalized programming. This can be accomplished with a personalized coded tagging device. A version of this type of device is commonly available in the automotive industry for unlocking and activating preset preferences.

309.4.2 Children's Operation. Operation and parts intended for children should be scaled appropriately and simplified further to accommodate the age group. Reach ranges should comply with Table 308.4.

309.5 Childproofing. "Any safety device should be strong enough to prevent injury to young children, yet easy for adults to use," according to the U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission. They identify twelve safety devices that can prevent injuries and save the lives of young children: safety latches and locks; safety gates; door knob covers and door locks; anti-scald devices; smoke detectors; window guards and safety netting; corner and edge bumpers; outlet covers and outlet plates; carbon monoxide (CO^2) alarms; tassel on each separate window blind cord and inner cord stops on blinds (consider cordless blinds); anchors to avoid furniture and appliance tip-overs; and layers of protection for pools and spas.

309.5 Advisory. Refer to the U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission's *Childproofing Your Home, 12 Safety Devices to Protect Your Children.* Additional important safety information is contained in this booklet. Other publications can be obtained from: http://www.cpsc.gov/

309.6 Visual Characteristics. Consider visual characteristics that addresses contrast, color and illumination. High visual contrast should be provided to distinguish the operable parts from the background (e.g. switches, handles, cooking controls). Eye levels are important and should comply with Section 302.10. Consider large type for both printed and digital readouts. Color should also be carefully considered to avoid confusion with the background and distinguish sub-components. Illumination includes task lighting or increased light levels at controls. Consider complying with Section 302.11. Operable parts may be internally lit or backlit (e.g. lighted control knob on an electronic device). Visual characteristics are important for people with vision and hearing disabilities to locate components and to determine actuation and operation.

309.7 Tactile Characteristics. Consider tactile characteristics including symmetrical/asymmetrical shapes, compressible/non-compressible material, texture and vibration. Shape enhances operation with one hand, increasing ease & comfort. Texture contrast helps distinguish components and texture enhances grasping. Vibration is extremely useful for people with visual or hearing disabilities to locate components & determine actuation and operation.

309.8 Auditory Characteristics. Consider operable parts with auditory characteristics that include sounds and pre-recorded messages. Sounds are important for people with visual disabilities to help locate, actuation and operate components. Pre-recorded messages can identify components and provide operational instructions for function, actuation, shut-off and warnings. Consider utilizing T-coil to receive auditory information for people who use hearing aids.

309.9 Multisensory Alarms. Alarms recommended throughout the book, should be visual, auditory and tactile, complying with Section 309.6, Section 309.7 and Section 309.8. Where appropriate, connect to a central system or automated system (local or web based) to notify user and relevant responder. Alarms are important, even critical, for a wide range of applications: fire, smoke, carbon monoxide, gas, power outage, appliance overheating, water leakage, water temperature, personal emergency, entrapment, motion detection, security, appliance timers, open appliance, continuous water flow, HVAC equipment failure, protrusion, obstacle, drop-off, door swing, etc. Alarms are especially important in dwelling units: kitchens (e.g. appliance malfunction, open appliance, cooking accidents, water and gas leakage); bathrooms (e.g., water leakage, high water temperature, continuous wc water flow, and accidents caused by slippage); laundry rooms and utility equipment rooms. Where safety is critical, provide stepped up alarms and automatic shutoffs.

310 Eye Levels. Eye levels should comply with Section 310.

310 Advisory. Eye levels are based on the *Architectural Graphic Standards* anthropometric data (see Section 105.3). Eye levels are critical for some applications (e.g. instructions, warning labels, emergency signage, and controls). Dimensions range from the lowest female dimension to the maximum male dimensions for standing and sitting positions. A number of factors may affect the sitting position eye levels, especially seat height, body size and posture. This is true of people who use mobility devices. Other sight factors are not addressed here such as range of viewing angles and lines of sight (see Section 802.9). Many sections in the *IDG* are effected by eye levels: 506, 703, 709, 714, 802, 902 and 905.3. Care should be taken regarding visual obstructions, viewing positions and the field of view. A sitting position is a requirement that is not limited to people with a disability, but a necessity for many with diminished mobility and stamina.

310.1 Adult Standing. Eye levels for an adult standing should be 56.6 inches (1440 mm) minimum and 70.3 inches (1785 mm) maximum above the finished floor.

310.2 Adult Sitting. Eye levels for an adult sitting should be 41.5 inches (minimum) and 52.1 maximum above the finished floor.

310.3 Child Standing, Ages 5 to 12. Eye levels for a child standing, ages 5 to 12 should be 35 inches (890 mm) minimum and 60 inches (1525 mm) maximum.

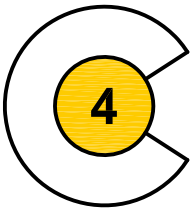
310.4 Child Sitting, Ages 5 to 12. Eye levels for a child sitting, ages 5 to 12 should be 28.4 inches (720 mm) minimum and 43.3 inches (1100 mm) maximum.

310.5 Sitting Mobility Devices for Adults. Eye levels for a person that uses a sitting mobility devices should be 43 inches (1090 mm) minimum and 51 inches (1295 mm) maximum above the finished floor.

310.5.1 Horizontal Eye Position. Eye position for a parallel approach is the centerline of the clear floor space complying with Section 305.3 or 18 inches (460 mm) from the side of the space. Eye position for a perpendicular approach is 36 inches (915 mm) from the front edge of the clear floor space complying with Section 305.3.

311 Lighting.

311 Advisory. Lighting is included in many sections of the *IDG*, but detailed lighting guidelines are beyond the technical scope of this book. It is recommended to visit the Illuminating Engineering Society of North America's website: http://www.ies.org/ The site contains extensive material including: lighting handbooks; educational material; recommended practices and ANSI standards; lighting energy management; design guidelines; measurement testing and calculation guides; technical memoranda, lighting publication packages, other IESNA publications, *LD+A* the magazine of the Illuminating Engineering Society of North America and other lighting books. One of their strategic goals directly affects inclusive design by promoting the dynamic development of innovative lighting research and the rapid translation of discoveries to improve the lighted environment. See also Section 1027 Lighting for dwelling units.



Routes

400 Introduction. Chapter 4 includes: interior, exterior, and route hierarchy; walking surfaces, doors and doorways, ramps, curb ramps, elevators, limited-use/limited-application elevators (LULA's), private residency elevators, platform lifts and moving walkways.

Routes should be intuitive, directing people with the least amount of confusion. They should accommodate all ages, abilities and mobility devices. Recreational routes should be provided with separate bicycle and pedestrian lanes. Relevant information sources are provided. All primary pedestrian access points and the primary exterior route(s) should be inclusive. Exterior routes should link all facilities and features to at least one single continuous path and provide wayfinding complying with Section 714. Seating, weather protection (e.g. shelters, awnings and overhangs) and amenities should be provided for projects containing long routes. This includes where possible, at least one continuous path that can be navigated without the use of stairs or mechanical vertical circulation. Consider a difficulty rating system, especially for large sites (e.g., campuses and parks) Walking surfaces should comply with Section 302 and Section 303. Slope should not be excessive, but, where this is not possible, choices should be provided. The recommended route width is part of a modular concept. It permits two-way pedestrian traffic and adequate maneuvering clearance for all door approaches. Moving walkways are also included.

Entrances and doorways should be reached by an inclusive route. Doors should be easy to use, large enough to accommodate the range of users with sufficient space on each side of the door to maneuver, reduce congestion and increase safety. Door and doorways include: entrances, types, configurations, maneuvering clearances, thresholds and hardware. Consider 2-way swinging doors and fully automatic doors to reduce or eliminate operating hardware and allow alternate operation (see Section 309.4.1). Consider fully automatic sliding doors to avoid the conflict with the swing arc. The building entrance section covers door size, weather protection, vestibules, lobbies, communications, seating, and signage.

Exterior and interior ramp provisions address slope, surfaces, rise, landings, change in direction, rest areas, doorways and temporary/portable installations. The recommended clear width relates to and is affected by the NYCBC egress route requirements. Curb ramps are discussed. Full detectable warning is recommended for the entire ramp surface. To increase safety on narrow sidewalks and to properly accommodate curb ramp slope, it may be necessary to extend the sidewalks at corners and other key points. Recommended reading is the Public Rights-of-Way Access Advisory Committee's report (see Section 105.3). Example solutions address a wide range of site conditions. Sensory pedestrian signals (SPS) should be provided in visual, auditory and tactile/vibration overlapping formats. Citywide consistency is encouraged to provide standardized familiar operation throughout the system.

All levels and spaces should be linked to the primary route(s) at key points and with stairs and amenities. Elements should be consistent, convenient and act as reference points for wayfinding. Mechanical vertical circulation choices are discussed: standard elevators, LULA's, residential elevators, unenclosed and enclosed vertical platform lifts, inclined platform lifts, stairlifts, portable platform lifts, and moving walkways. A minimum of two elevators is strongly recommended to maintain continuous service during a breakdown and to allow phasing for routine maintenance, repairs and upgrades. Ramps and other vertical circulation should not conflict with primary entrances. Do not create congestion, choke points, nor disrupt intuitive circulation patterns. Reduce confusion and disorientation. Lobbies should be properly integrated, enhance the circulation system and sized for peak occupancy.

401 General

401.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 4 should apply where recommended by the scoping provisions adopted by the administrative authority.

402 Routes

402.1 General. Routes should comply with 402.

402.2 Components. Routes should consist of one or more of the following components: walking surfaces with a slope not steeper than 1:20, doors and doorways, ramps, curb ramps excluding the flared sides, elevators, and limited applications for lifts. All components of a route should comply with the applicable portions of these guidelines.

402.3 Revolving Doors, Revolving Gates, and Turnstiles. Revolving doors and gates, and turnstiles are not recommended for inclusive routes.

402.4 Exterior Routes

402.4.1 Configuration. Route configuration should be intuitive, consistent and not circuitous. Routes should direct people with the least amount of effort and confusion. Provide at least one primary meeting space to act as a reference point.

402.4.2 Route Hierarchy. Hierarchy may consist of primary, secondary, tertiary routes and general space circulation. Differentiate each to enhance wayfinding. A direct route should be provided to the building entrance(s) and important site features. Exterior routes may be defined by many elements. A route is more than just a walkway, it is a three dimensional environment. Landscape and fabricated elements should enhance wayfinding (see Sections 714.3 and 714.4).

402.4.3. Recreational Routes. Recreational routes should provide separate bicycle and pedestrian lanes. The *NYC Bicycle Master Plan,* provides comprehensive guidance for recreational routes: on-street network, bridges, greenway system, access to mass transit (e.g., subways, commuter rail, ferries, buses, and bicycle parking locations), comprehensive bicycle program (e.g., engineering, enforcement, education), design guidelines, stress level methodology, implementation, policy, storage racks, in-line skating, and pedestrian safety. Lane widths and intersection designs are based on *AASHTO* guidelines. Bicycle parking should comply with Section 502.3. Consider a difficulty stress level rating system. Recreational lane surface should be differentiated from vehicle lanes (e.g., graphics, materials, tactile characteristics, visual contrast and color). Provide multisensory traffic signals for recreational routes at vehicle intersections complying with Section 406.16. Where bicycle/pedestrian lanes overlap (e.g., narrow bridge), provide “No Bike Riding” signage.

402.4.3 Advisory. Visit the DOT website for updates, additional information and publications, specifically the *New York City Bicycle Master Plan* (NYCBMP) at this address: www.nyc.gov/dot The design guidelines include: lane widths; signage, pavement markings; intersections; drainage grates (openings running perpendicular to travel direction); multiple paths (one and two-directional); buffers; vertical clearance; alignment; grades; pavement materials; vehicle access control; bridge structures; maintenance and traffic protection; pigmented lanes; center median; share bus-bike and contra-flow lanes [two-way recreational lane adjacent to one way vehicle lane); signals; raised or separated lanes; traffic calming [e.g., speed bumps, traffic circles, chicanes (staggered curb extensions or serpentine roadway)]; bicycle blvd., slow street and other content.

See the NYC Department of Transportation’s *Street Design Manual* (2009), a comprehensive resource promoting higher quality street designs and efficient project implementation. It covers process & affected agencies; geometry (e.g., roadways, lanes, sidewalks, medians, traffic calming, trees & plantings); materials (e.g., roadways, crosswalks, sidewalks, furnishing zones, curbs and plazas); lighting (e.g., street, pedestrian, & traffic signal poles); and furniture (e.g., bike racks, bus & bike shelters, newsstands, automatic public toilets, benches & waste receptacles). Also, see Section 714.10.

See the Department of Design and Construction’s *Active Design Guidelines: Promoting Physical Activity and Health in Design* (2009). This publication seeks to educate designers about opportunities to increase daily physical activity, through measures such as making stairs more convenient and visible to increase usage and providing inviting streetscapes for pedestrians and bicyclists.

Consider a difficulty rating system based on the Universal Trail Assessment Program by American Trails at: http://www.americantrails.org/.

402.4.3.1 Exercise Stations. Consider fitness equipment placed at locations (e.g., single or grouped stations) to encourage usage to help address sedentary lifestyles. Everyone can benefit because it will increase strength, dexterity and stamina.

402.4.4 Amenities. Provide amenities along route. Routes that are relatively level should contain a rest area with seating complying with Section 903, not to exceed intervals of 200 feet (60 m). Routes with elevation changes 1:20 or greater should contain a rest area with seating (provide 50% of seating with armrests to increase usability, see Section 903.6.1) not to exceed intervals of 100 feet (30 m). Provide drinking fountains complying with Section 602. Provide trash receptacle complying with Section 906. Consider shelters at key locations. Consider public pay toilets.

402.4.5 Signage/Wayfinding. Signage/ Wayfinding should comply with relevant sections of Chapter 7 including: emergency assistance, signs, detectable warnings and surfaces, assistive listening systems, two-way communications, signage system, public information display types, and emergency signage system(s), Wayfinding should comply with Section 714. Maps should identify routes, features (e.g., transit stops, parking and landmarks), amenities, distances, travel times, difficulty levels. Provide emergency communications/ information and consider two-way communications complying with Section 708. Pedestrian signals should comply with Sections 406.16 and Section 703.8. See also Section 714.10.

402.4.5.1 Emergency Communications. Emergency communications may include but not limited to the following: alarms complying with Section 702, visual two-way communication complying with Section 708.5, information/navigation/alert reference point system complying with Section 708.7, information / emergency virtual terminal complying with Section 708.8, and multisensory information/emergency kiosks complying with Section 710.4.

402.4.6 Bicycle/Scooter/Tricycle Parking. Bicycle/scooter/tricycle parking should comply with Section 502.3 and provided at key locations (e.g. multiple dwelling, commercial areas, public facilities, bus and subway stations).

402.4.7 Carriage, Stroller and Cart Storage. Carriage, stroller and cart storage should comply with Section 502.4.

402.4.8 Conflicts/Obstructions. Any conflicts and obstructions (e.g., stairs, ramps, doors, lifts, trash receptacles and drinking fountains) should be kept out of the path of travel. Consider detectable warnings and surfaces complying with Section 705, and multisensory signage system. Refer to Section 714 Wayfinding for additional information. Avoid conflicts with pedestrian recreational and vehicle lanes by using physical barriers where feasible and separate street crossings for pedestrian and recreational lanes. Care should be taken to avoid conflicts with natural landscape elements near routes where potential obstructions may occur. Growth patterns from initial installation to maturity should be taken into account. Ramps and stairs should run in the predominant direction of travel.

402.4.9 Shelters and Weather Protection. Provide shelters complying with Section 402.6 and Section 903.16 for shade and weather protection. Consider partial or continuous cover (e.g., roof, awning, overhangs) along short primary routes where appropriate. Also consider the use of an ice melt system along the primary route or area surrounding entrances that are prone to snow and ice accumulation.

402.5 Interior Routes

402.5.1 Configuration. Route configuration should be intuitive, consistent and not circuitous. Routes should direct people with the least amount of effort and confusion. Provide at least one primary meeting space to act as a reference point.

402.5.2 Route Hierarchy. Hierarchy may consist of primary, secondary, tertiary routes and general space circulation. Differentiate each to enhance wayfinding (e.g. width, height, shape, ceiling design, color, lighting, decorative elements, acoustics, etc). A direct route should be provided from the building entrance(s) to important building features. Interior routes may be defined by many elements. A route is more than just a walkway, it is a three dimensional environment. Elements should enhance wayfinding (see Section 714.3 and Section 714.4).

402.5.2.1 Entrance. Upon entering a building the route should be obvious and continuous from the exterior. Consider the lobby as a primary reference point.

402.5.2.2 Primary Route. A primary interior route should be a well thought out three dimensional circulation system with direct links link provided to the building entrance(s) vertical circulation system & amenities.

402.5.2.2.1 Reference Points. Reference points along the route include primary or main lobby, intersections, branching, open spaces, waiting areas, rest areas, floor lobbies, elevator lobbies, restrooms, drinking fountains, telephones, etc. Amenities should be stacked in multistory building for efficiency and to provide consistent reference points from floor to floor. Ramps and stairs should run in the predominant direction of travel.

402.5.3 Amenities. Provide amenities along route and group consistently from floor to floor to act as reference points for wayfinding. Provide rest area with seating complying with Section 903, with intervals that do not to exceed 100 feet (30 m) of travel. Provide drinking fountains complying with Section 602. Provide toilet facilities complying with Chapter 6. Provide trash receptacle complying with Section 906. Provide telephones complying with Section 704.

402.5.4 Signage/Wayfinding. Signage/ Wayfinding should comply with relevant sections of Chapter 7 including: emergency assistance, signs, detectable warnings and surfaces, assistive listening systems, two-way communications, signage system, public information display types, directories, room identification system & emergency signage system(s), Wayfinding should comply with Section 714.

402.5.4.1 Emergency Communications. Emergency communications may include but not limited to the following: alarms complying with Section 702, visual two-way communication complying with Section 708.5, information/navigation/alert reference point system complying with Section 708.7, information / emergency virtual terminal complying with Section 708.8, and multisensory information/emergency kiosks complying with Section 710.4.

402.5.5 Bicycle/Scooter/Tricycle Parking. Bicycle/scooter/tricycle parking should comply with Section 502.3 and provided at convenient locations.

402.5.6 Carriage, Stroller and Cart Storage. Carriage, stroller and cart storage should comply with Section 502.4.

402.5.7 Conflicts/Obstructions. Any conflicts and obstructions (e.g., stairs, ramps, doors, lifts, trash receptacles, and drinking fountains), should be kept out of the path of travel. Consider detectable warnings and surfaces complying with Section 705, and multisensory signage system. Refer to Section 714 Wayfinding for additional information.

402.6 Exterior Shelters.

402.6.1 General. Exterior shelters should be provided at rest areas, transportation stops, reference points, places of interest and other locations along exterior routes.

402.6.2 Sidewalk. Provide an obstructed route around the shelter complying with Section 403.

402.6.3 Entry. Entering and exiting should comply with Section 404.

402.6.4 Seating. Seating should comply with Section 903.

402.6.5 Signage. Signage should comply with Section 710 and should be multisensory. Provide schedule, routes, time and weather for transportation shelters. Where practical, provide directions to closest toilet facilities.

402.6.6 Amenities. Amenities may include newspaper machines, two-way communications, ITM's (e.g. MetroCard), water fountain, waste receptacles, etc., complying with Sections 602, 707, 708, and 906.

403 Walking Surfaces

403.1 General. Walking surfaces should comply with Section 403.

403.2 Floor Surfaces. Floor surfaces should comply with Section 302.

403.2 Advisory. Exterior routes are also addressed under Section 302. Only resort to the code minimums where feasibility is questionable. Avoid irregular textures, ridges, rough or uneven traveling surfaces where possible, and those that have large or protruding joints.

403.2.1 Exterior Walking Surfaces. Walking surfaces should comply with Section 302.5, be well lit with even, firm; and well drained non-slip surface for wet conditions. Joints should be closed and flush for mobility aids. Avoid highly reflective surfaces.

403.3 Slope. The running slope of walking surfaces should not be steeper than 1:20. The cross slope should not be steeper than 1:48.

403.3 Advisory. Exterior walkways and nature trails often contain slopes that exceed the recommended pitch. Provide information to let users know of conditions that they will encounter along challenging paths, so they can decide for themselves whether they want to traverse them. Consider a difficulty rating system such as those used for hiking and skiing tails. Consider short cuts with steps for people who can walk stairs.

403.4 Changes in Level. Changes in level should comply with Section 303.

403.5 Width. Route widths should comply with Section 403.5.

403.5.1 Primary Route Width. Width of the primary route should be a minimum of 72 inches (1830 mm). Protruding objects should comply with Section 307. Width of the path should accommodate expected volume and 2-way pedestrian traffic. Sidewalks, as per DOT, should be 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum.

403.5.1.1 Passing Space. Where it is not possible to provide a route with a continuous 72-inch (1830 mm) width, provide passing spaces at intervals of 100 feet (30m) maximum. Passing space should be 72 inches (1830 mm) clear in width.

403.5.2 Secondary and Tertiary Routes. In some instances, a minimum of 72 inches (1830 mm) may not be possible for secondary and tertiary routes depending on the building classification, size, and configuration. It is recommended these routes should be a minimum of 48 inches (1220mm) in width where the code minimum egress width and door maneuvering clearances requirements do not dictate wider clearances.

403.5.3 General Room and Space Circulation. Unless specifically provided in other sections of the *IDG*, circulation within rooms and spaces should be provided with a 36 inch (915 mm) minimum circulation path. Primary circulation route in rooms and spaces larger than 300 square feet (27.9 m2) should comply with Section 403.5.1 or Section 403.5.2.

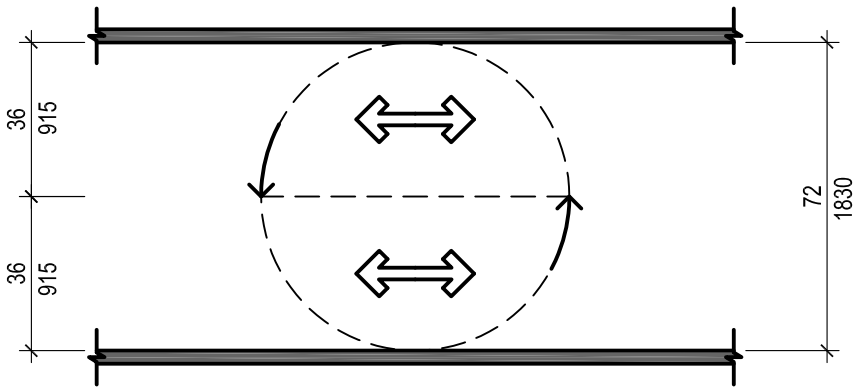


Fig. 403.5
Primary Route Width

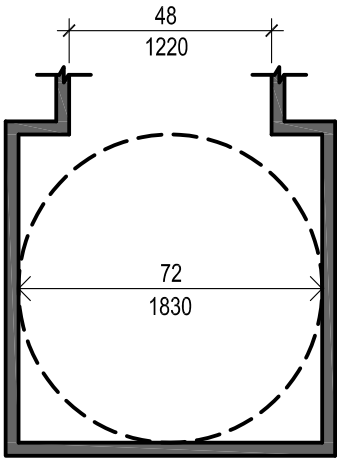


Fig. 403.5.3
Corridor Dead End Example

403.5.3 Advisory. Circulation within a room or space should provide a minimum of 36 inches clear and a turning circle complying with Section 304 at dead ends. It is recommended to provide wider circulation in larger rooms 48 inches or wider depending upon the type of space and function (e.g. 72 inches for the main aisle in a courtroom) occupancy load, and anticipated user traffic and other considerations. Refer to *2008 NYCBC,* Section 1104 regarding minimum route requirements for specific types of spaces (e.g., employee work areas, press boxes, multilevel buildings and facilities). In some specific spaces a minimum route is not required [e.g., common use circulation paths located within employee work areas less than 300 square feet (27.9 m2)].

403.5.3.1 Clear Width at Turn. Where a route makes a 180 degree turn around an object that is less than 48 inches (1220 mm) in width, clear widths should be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum approaching the turn, 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum during the turn and 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum leaving the turn.

EXCEPTION: Section 403.5.3.1 should not apply where the clear width at the turn is 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

403.5.4 Corridor Dead Ends. Provide a 72 inch (1830 mm) turning space complying with Section 304 for the termination point of a dead end corridor. Consider 2-way communication at isolated dead ends.

403.6 Handrails. Where handrails are provided at the sides of a corridor, they should comply with Sections 505.

403.6 Advisory. Corridors acting as ramps should be provided with handrails on both sides. Handrails also functions as wayfinding.

403.7 Illumination. Lighting along routes should be consistent and even without producing strong shadows, hot spots, or dark areas. Glare should be reduced to a minimum when possible by the use of materials and finishes. Where there are different lighting levels, provide a gradual transition.

403.8 Wayfinding. Wayfinding should comply with Section 714.

403.9 Signage. Signage should comply with Section 703.

403.10 Detectable warnings. Detectable warnings should comply with Section 705

403.11 Moving Walkways. Automatic walkways should comply with Section 403.11 and ASME A17.1-2000, Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators and Section 6.2 Moving Walks. When an automatic walkway is used, an adjacent route complying with Section 403 should be provided.

403.11 Advisory. Moving walkways are appropriate for large scale facilities such as airports, arenas, train stations and malls. They assist a wide range of users such as people who use mobility devices, parents with children, the elderly, people with baggage and packages, etc. They provide efficient ingress, egress and navigation through a facility, and function as wayfinding to direct visitors to primary spaces.

403.11.1 Angle of Inclination. The angle of inclination from the horizontal should not exceed (1:20) within 60 inches (1525 mm) of the entrance and egress ends. It should not exceed (1:8) at any point.

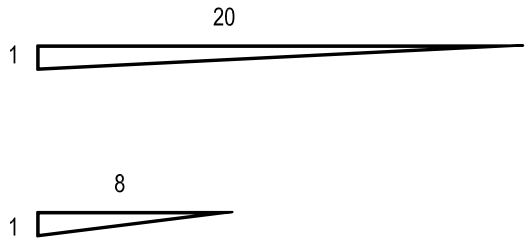


Fig. 403.11.1
Angle of Inclination
of Moving Walkways

404 Doors and Doorways

404.1 General. Doors and doorways should comply with Section 404.

404.1 Advisory. Automatic doors are recommended. At entrances they provide ease of access for everyone. Consider automatic sliding doors to eliminate conflict with arc of swinging doors. Refer to Section 404.3. Consider the use of designated entrance and exit doors to control the flow of pedestrian traffic especially for facilities that have a high occupancy load. All doors should provide emergency egress. If any doors are not inclusive, signage should be provided to the nearest inclusive doorways. Revolving door and revolving turnstiles should not be part of an inclusive route. Automatic doors make sense in high traffic facilities and buildings with strong maintenance programs (commercial, institutional, luxury residential buildings, etc.) There can be problems with sequencing of exterior and vestibule doors in cold weather (e.g. blasts of cold air when outside doors do not close before vestibule doors open). Aside from initial cost, automatic doors may not be appropriate for lower traffic situations and buildings where they cannot be readily maintained.

404.1.1 Building Entrances. Building entrances should comply with the following as applicable:

1. All entrances should be inclusive. Stairs are supplemental to the primary means to the entrance. Automatic doors complying with Section 404.3 are recommended.
2. Separate entry and exits for large facilities to control traffic flow are recommended.
3. Consider the use of large doors and large maneuvering clearances at primary entrances to large facilities that exceed the recommendations of Section 404.2.2.
4. Provide shade and weather protection at all entrances.
5. Regardless of required egress exits, all entrance doors should provide inclusive ingress and egress.
6. Provide a vestibule, space, lobby or other area on the interior side of primary entrance.
7. If any entrances are not inclusive provide directional signage to inclusive entrances.
8. In applicable building classifications such as institutional and mercantile, provide a help desk complying with Section 710.5, directories complying with Section 711.
9. Provide seating complying with Section 903 for adults and children.
10. Locate help desk, bathrooms, drinking fountains, telephones, trash receptacle, directories and seating area within close proximity of the primary entrance(s).
11. Provide two-way communications complying with Section 708.
12. Entrances for dwelling units should comply with Section 1002.
13. Shield direct view to light sources at entrances to reduce harshness .
14. Glass doors should be distinguished from adjacent glazing and markers and signage should contrast with background.

404.2 Manual Doors. Manual doors and doorways with manual gates, including ticket gates, should comply with the requirements of Section 404.2.

404.2.1 Double-Leaf Doors and Doorways. Where double leaf doors are provided, both leaves of doorways should comply with Sections 404.2.2 and 404.2.3.

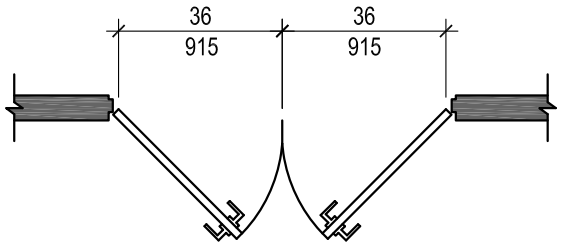
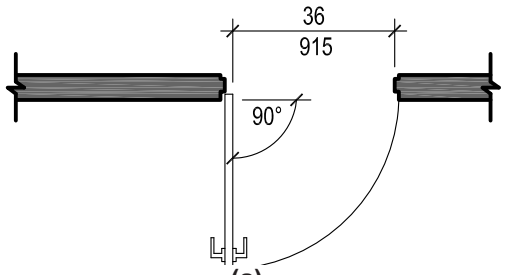


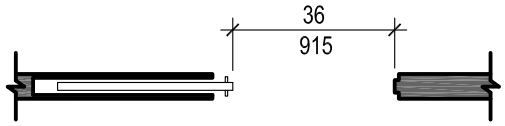
Fig. 404.2.1
Double-Leaf Doors and Doorways

404.2.2 Clear Width. Doorways should have a clear opening width of 36 inches (915 mm). Clear opening width of doorways with swinging doors should be measured between the face of the door and stop, with the door open 90 degrees. There should be no projections into the clear opening width.

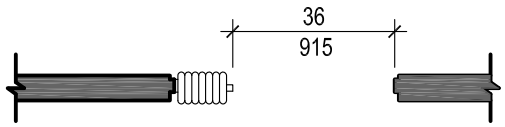
EXCEPTION: Door closers and doorstops should be permitted to be 78 inches (1980 mm) minimum above the floor.



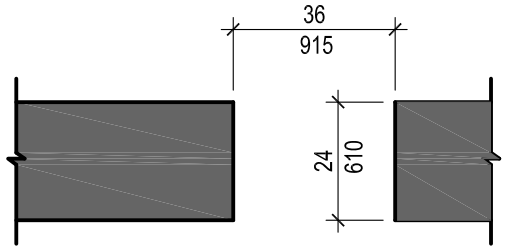
(a)
Hinged Door



(b)
Sliding Door



(c)
Folding Door



(d)
Doorways without Doors

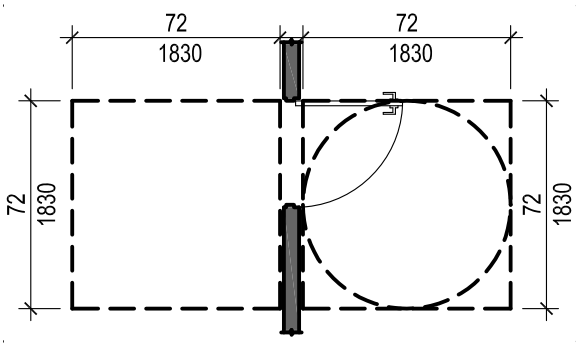
Fig. 404.2.2
Clear Width of Doorways

404.2.2 Advisory. While this provides more maneuvering room, a 36-inch clear opening essentially requires a minimum 38-inch wide door. This may cause problems where space is tight, such as apartment layouts in affordable housing. Note that the NYS Division of Housing and Community Renewal (DHCR) *Visitability Standards,* call for a 36-inch door, not opening. This produces an opening that provides more maneuvering clearance than the 32-inch clear code requirement. Also, hardware impacts should be considered for wider doors, especially those with closers, to determine if doors will be harder to open. Some facilities may require wider doors to accommodate equipment and devices (e.g., *2008 NYCBC*, Sect. 1008.1.1.1 Group I-2, for movement of beds).

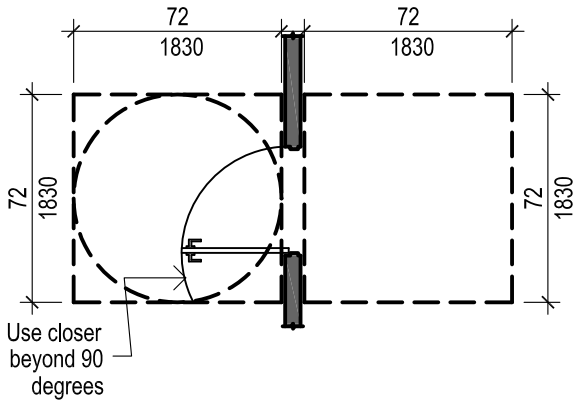
404.2.2.1 Door Swing Beyond 90 Degrees. Doors that are allowed to swing greater than 90 degrees should comply with Section 404.2.7 and 404.2.8.

404.2.2.1 Advisory. Doors are typically shown at 90 degrees as the standard position to measure legal clear opening width, but also allows the occupant to be able to close the door and to enter the room without excessive maneuvering. There are many situations where it is advantageous to swing the door beyond the 90 degrees especially to increase the maneuvering clearance. Tight clearances in some buildings may prevent overswing. Often the space behind doors is used inappropriately, defeating the purpose.

404.2.3 Maneuvering Clearances at Doors. Maneuvering clearances at doors should comply with Section 404.2.3 and should include the full clear opening width of the doorway. Maneuvering clearances should be provided on both sides of the door. This is especially important for a 2-way swinging door. Door may be centered on the maneuvering clearance.



(a)
Off Center



(b)
Centered
Fig. 404.2.3
Maneuvering Clearances at Doorways

404.2.3 Advisory. The maneuvering clearance allows enough space for motorized scooters, other mobility devices, and accommodates most configurations and variety of occupants. The 72-inch clearance may not be possible in some conditions and building types (e.g. apartment buildings with a 5'-0" wide corridor).

404.2.3.1 Door Type. Swing, sliding, folding doors and doorways without doors should have a maneuvering clearance 72 inches (1830 mm) wide and 72 inches (1830 mm) long.

404.2.3.2 Recessed Doors. Recessed doors should have a maneuvering clearance of 72 inches (1830 mm) wide and 72 inches (1830 mm) long from the face of the door.

404.2.3.3 Floor Surface. Floor surface within the maneuvering clearance should be an unobstructed plane with a slope not steeper than 1:48 and should comply with Section 302.

404.2.3.3 Advisory. Floor surface recommendations contained in Section 302 apply to maneuvering clearances including: materials, opening, slip resistance, tactile surface characteristics, lippage and surface distortion. They may be used as part of the wayfinding system complying with Section 714. The clear floor space should contain a single plane that posses no tripping or tipping hazards.

404.2.4 Thresholds. Thresholds should comply with Section 404.2.4.

404.2.4.1 Interior Doorway Thresholds. Interior doorways containing thresholds or any surface changes are not recommended.

404.2.4.2 Exterior Doorway Thresholds. Exterior doorways containing thresholds or any surface changes are not recommended. If a threshold is provided due to weather protection, it should comply with Section 303.

404.2.5 Two Doors in Series. Distance between two hinged or pivoted doors in series should be 72 inches (1830mm) plus the width of any door swinging into the space. The space between doors should provide a clear turning space complying with Section 304.

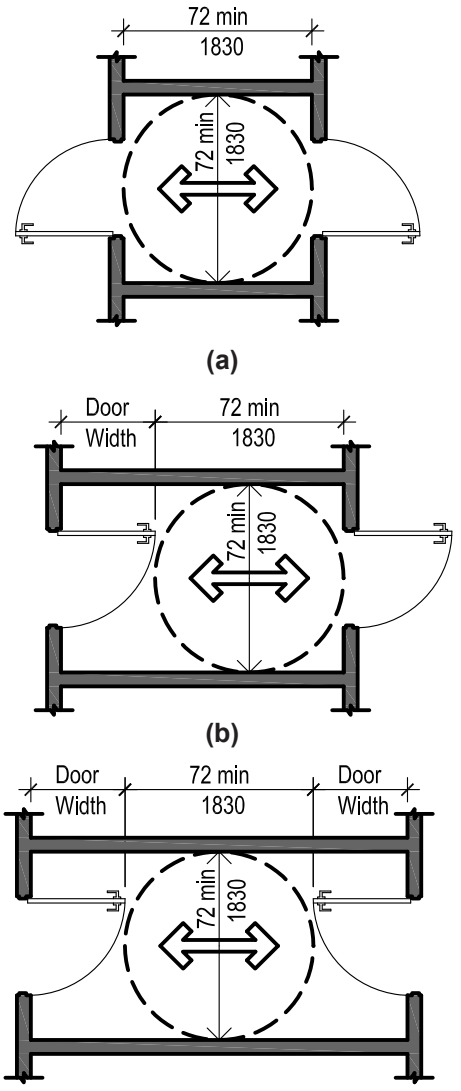


Fig. 404.2.5
Two Doors in a Series

404.2.6 Door Hardware. Handles, pulls, latches, locks, and other operable parts on doors should have a shape that is easy to grasp with one hand and does not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist to operate and complying with Section 309. Operable parts of such hardware should be 34 inches (865 mm) minimum and 38 inches (965 mm) maximum above the floor. Push plates for 1-way and 2-way swinging doors should be within and should extend beyond this range. Push plates require less dexterity and can be used for a variety of alternate operational scenarios complying with Section 309.4.1. Where sliding doors are in the fully open position, operating hardware should be exposed and usable from both sides.

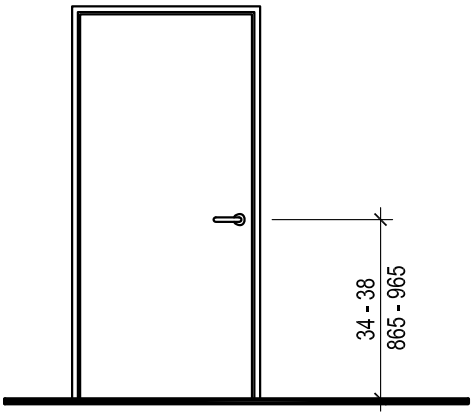


Fig. 404.2.6
Door Hardware

404.2.6 Advisory. Two peepholes in a door allow use from both a seated and standing positions complying with Section 1002. Glazing in doors allows users to see people approaching from the other side and should comply with Section 404.2.10.

404.2.6.1 Supplemental Fully Manual Locksets. Consider fully manual locksets without automatic spring loaded latching / handle return for institutional and other environments for people who use wheelchairs and others that have diminished hand and arm dexterity. This allows sequential operation.

404.2.6.1 Advisory. 1, Optional door hardware that includes fully manual locksets and semi-automatic door openers help people who use mobility devices and others who have diminished hand and arm dexterity. Fully manual locksets allow the user to avoid concurrent tasks. Semi-automatic door openers comprised of a spring loaded mechanism will also reduce the concurrent maneuvers by popping the door open just enough to allow the user to manually open it the rest of the way. 2, Always avoid concurrent tasks since sequential tasks are usually easier. 3, Operation should be as intuitive as possible. 4, Note that rated doors require automatic latching.

404.2.7 Non-Electric Door Closers and Openers. Should comply with Section 404.2.7.

404.2.7.1 Non-Electric Door Closers.

404.2.7.1.1 Closer Devices. Door closers should be adjusted so that from an open position of 90 degrees, the time required to move the door to an open position of 12 degrees should be 5 seconds.

404.2.7.1.2. Spring Hinges. Door spring hinges should be adjusted so that from the open position of 70 degrees, the door should move to the closed position in 1.5 seconds minimum. Due to short closing duration, spring hinges are not recommended.

404.2.7.2 Non-Electric Partial Door Opener. Door openers should open the door from a closed position to an open position of 12 degrees in 1.5 seconds. This device should not be used on fire doors, or where it conflicts with other life safety codes.

404.2.8 Manual Door-Opening Force. Fire doors should have the minimum opening force allowable by the appropriate administrative authority. The force for pushing or pulling open doors other than fire doors should be as follows:

1. Interior hinged door: 5.0 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.
2. Sliding or folding door: 5.0 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.

These forces do not apply to the force required to retract latch bolts or disengage other devices that hold the door in a closed position.

404.2.9 Door Surface. Door surfaces within 10 inches (255 mm) of the floor, measured vertically, should be a smooth surface on the push side extending the full width of the door. Parts creating horizontal or vertical joints in such surface should be within 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of the same plane as the other. Cavities created by added kick plates should be capped.

EXCEPTIONS:
1. Sliding doors.
2. Tempered glass doors without stiles and having a bottom rail or shoe with the top leading edge tapered at no less than 60 degrees from the horizontal should not be required to meet the 10 inch (255 mm) bottom rail height requirement.
3. Doors that do not extend to within 10 inches (255 mm) of the floor.

404.2.10 Vision Lites. Doors and sidelites adjacent to doors containing one or more glazing panels that permit viewing through the panels should have the bottom of at least one panel on either the door or an adjacent sidelite 43 inches (1090 mm) maximum above the floor. This bottom edge should be 28 inches (712 mm) maximum for children's facilities. Provide safety glazing.

EXCEPTIONS: Vision lites with the lowest part more than 66 inches (1675 mm) above the floor are not required to comply with Section 404.2.10. This exception does not apply to children's facilities.

404.2.10 Advisory. Vision lights either in or adjacent to the door are strongly recommended at primary entrances or for doors where there are potential pedestrian traffic conflicts. The vision lights help the occupants to see what is coming and to enhance their orientation. This is especially true for institutional facilities such as hospitals.

404.3 Automatic Doors. Automatic doors and automatic gates should comply with Section 404.3. Fully powered automatic doors should comply with *ANSI/BHMA A156.10-1999* listed in Section 105.2.4. Power-assisted and low-energy doors should comply with *ANSI/BHMA A156.19-1997* listed in Section 105.2.3.

EXCEPTION: Doors, doorways, and gates designed to be operated only by security personnel should not be required to comply with Section 404.3.5.

404.3 Advisory. An automatic door opener provides easiest access to the greatest number of people. Persons with diminished mobility have difficulty performing a series of overlapping maneuvers like pulling the door open while operating the hardware; avoiding the arc of the door swing and navigating through the opening while the door closes. It is a far better solution to use fully automatic doors and perhaps fully automatic sliding doors to eliminate swing arc conflicts. Automatic doors as per *ANSI/BHMA A156.10-1999* listed in Section 105.2.4, should have a fail safe in case of power failure so that the doors can operate in manual mode. Automatic doors should be provided for all important heavily used facilities.

404.3.1 Clear Opening Width. Doorways should have a clear opening width of 36 inches (900 mm) in power-on and power-off mode.

404.3.2 Maneuvering Clearances Maneuvering clearances at power-assisted doors should comply with 404.2.3.

404.3.3 Thresholds. Thresholds and changes in level at doorways should comply with Section 404.2.4.

404.3.4 Two Doors in Series. Doors in series should comply with Section 404.2.5.

404.3.5 Control Switches. Opening devices should include push button/plate, floor mat, motion sensor, and card readers. Time delay should be 10 seconds with an obstacle sensor that will delay door closing.

404.3.5.1 Wall Switch Control Location. Push button/plate and card readers should be 36 inches (915 mm) from the latch side of the door opening, 34 inches (865 mm) to 38 inches (965 mm) above the floor and horizontally centered on the door handle.

404.3.5.2 Floor Mat Location. Floor mat location should comply with *ANSI/BHMA 156.10* as per Section 105.2.4.

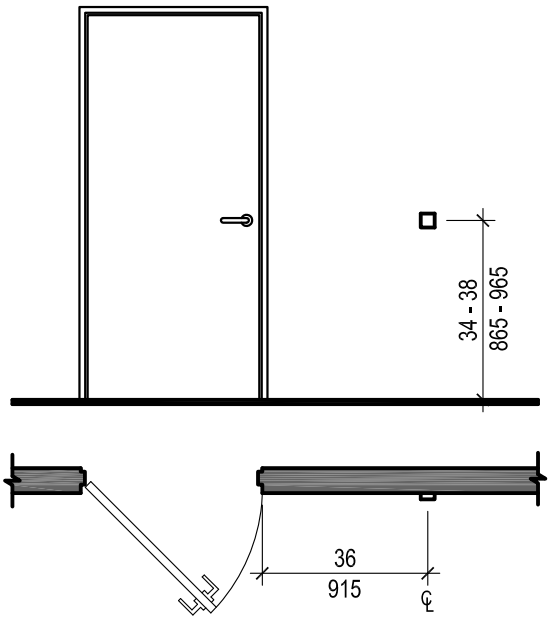


Fig. 404.3.5.1
Wall Switch Control Location

404.3.6 Manual override. Automatic doors should be provided with a manual override for manual operation of doors with door hardware per Section 404.2.6. Handles and pulls should be centered 34 inches (865 mm) to 38 inches (965 mm) above the floor. Where sliding doors are in the fully open position, operating hardware should be exposed and usable from both sides for manual operation. All automatic locks must contain a manual override to avoid entrapment (e.g., single occupant restrooms).

404.4 Signage. Signage and location should comply with Section 703. Tactile signage should comply with Section 703.3. Room identification system should comply with Section 712.

405 Ramps

405.1 General. Ramps should comply with Section 405.

405.2 Slope. Ramp runs should have a running slope from 1:16 to 1:20.

EXCEPTION: In existing building and facilities, where such slopes are not feasible, the grade change may be addressed by elevator or for very limited applications, a lift.

405.2 Advisory. When the slope of a ramp is steeper than 1:16, navigation becomes difficult for a person using a mobility device, and those with diminished mobility. Ramp slopes of 1:16 to 1:20 may be more usable, but many site and building conditions will not accommodate the longer ramps and landings.

405.3 Cross Slope. Cross-slope of the ramp runs should not be steeper than 1:48. Ramps subject to wet conditions should be provided with drainage.

405.4 Floor Surfaces. Floor surfaces of the ramp run should comply with Section 302.

405.5 Clear Width. The clear width of a ramp run should be 42-48 inches (1065 mm to 1220 mm) measured between handrails. Means of egress ramp width should be 44 inches (1118 mm) minimum and comply with requirements for corridors as per *NYCBC* Section 1010.5.1. High traffic two-way ramps should be 72 inches (1830 mm) minimum.

405.5 Advisory.
1. Ramps should be wide enough to accommodate the expected peak traffic flow and may exceed minimum required width.
2. In locations such as transportation hubs and sports complexes, with wide ramps, consider a 42-48 inch ramp within the wider ramp. For some people, navigating up or down a ramp requires the use of handrails on both sides.
3. The additional clearance above the 36-inch code minimum will be welcome for people that use mobility devices, people of larger stature, people that require an assistant and others that prefer the additional maneuvering clearance. A narrower ramp may be more accommodating to people of smaller stature and some children that use both handrails. The 42-inch width is more forgiving by providing a greater margin of maneuvering error resulting in a safer ramp. Two walking people passing each other on a ramp run is also more accommodating with the larger width.
4. The 72-inch two-way ramp is influenced by *NYCBC* Section 1016.2, but not including Group I-2.
5. Two-way traffic can typically be accommodated with rest areas and landings on narrower ramps.

405.6 Rise. The rise for any ramp or ramp segment should be 30 inches maximum.

405.7 Landings. Ramps should have entry landings at the bottom and top of the ramp assembly. Landings should comply with Section 405.7.1.

405.7.1 Slope. Landing should have a slope not steeper than 1:48 and should comply with Section 302.

405.7.2 Entry Landing Width. Landing should have a clear width of 72 inches (1830 mm).

405.7.3 Entry Landing Length. Landing should have a clear length of 72 inches (1830mm).

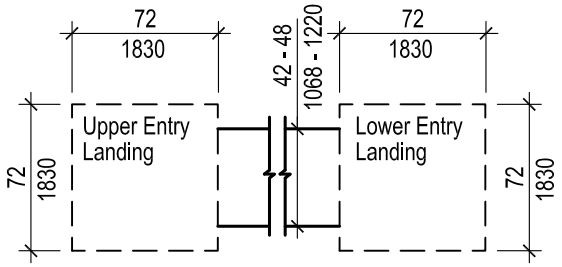


Fig. 405.7.3
Entry Landings

405.7.4 Change in Direction. Ramps that change direction at ramp landings should contain a landing sized to provide a turning space 72 inches (1830mm) in length and 72 inches (1830 mm) in width. Secondary ramps wider than 72 inches (1830 mm) that change direction at ramp landings should contain a landing at least as wide as the widest ramp run leading to the landing.

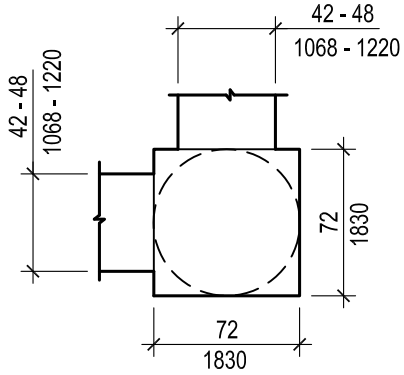


Fig. 405.7.4
Change in Direction

405.7.4.1 Intermediate Landing. An intermediate landing located between entry landings should be at least as wide as the widest ramp run leading to the landing with a length of 72 inches (1830 mm). Switch-back or u-shaped ramps should contain intermediate landings 72 inches (1830 mm) minimum in length and a minimum width equal to the combined widths of both ramp runs leading into the landing.

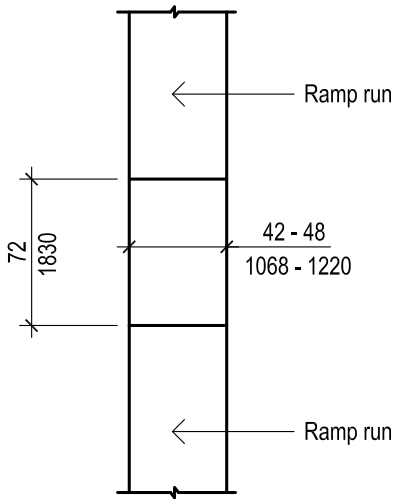


Fig. 405.7.4.1
Intermediate Landing

405.7.4.1.1 Intersecting routes. Any intersecting routes should be provided with a landing that allows unobstructed intersection and should comply with Section 304.

405.7.4.1.2 Adjacent Seating Access. Ramps that are used as a means of accessing designated seating or tiered levels should be provided with landing that allows unobstructed intersection and should comply with Section 304.

405.7.4.2 Rest Area Alcove. A rest area alcove should be provided for every 100 feet (30 m) of ramp run. The rest area should be adjacent and may overlap an intermediate landing closest to midpoint of overall length of ramp. The rest area should be a clear space 72 inches (1830mm) in length and 72 inches (1830mm) in width. If provided, a bench should be located adjacent to the length of the clear floor space.

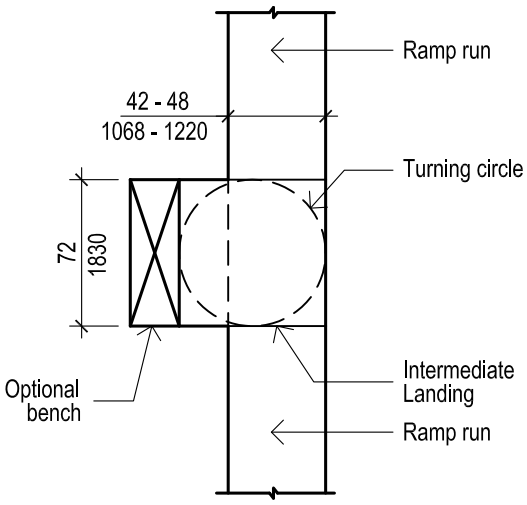


Fig. 405.7.4.2
Rest Area

405.7.4.2 Advisory. Consider a place to sit and a place to set packages in the rest areas. In some instances, security may need to be addressed (hidden corners, etc.)

405.7.5 Doorways. Where doorways are adjacent to a ramp landing, maneuvering clearances complying with Sections 404 should not overlap the landing area.

405.8 Handrails. Handrails should consist of dual height handrails running parallel and should comply with Section 505. Handrails are required for all ramp configurations.

405.8 Advisory. Ramps that are used to access tiered seating cannot be provided with handrails on both sides of the aisle because they will obstruct access to the seating. The recommended solution is to place a dual height handrail at the center of the aisle with breaks in the railing occurring at landing. Elimination of the handrail altogether to avoid sight obstruction should not be allowed.

405.9 Edge Protection. Edge protection complying with Section 405.9.1 or 405.9.2 should be provided on each side of ramp runs and at each side of ramp landings.

EXCEPTIONS:

1. Ramps are not required to have handrails with curb ramps flares.
2. Sides of ramp landings serving an adjoining ramp run or stairway.
3. Sides of ramp landings having a vertical drop-off of 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum within 10 inches (255 mm) horizontally of the landing area.

405.9.1 Extended Floor Surface. The floor surface of the ramp run or ramp landing may extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the inside face of the railing complying with Section 505. If curb or barrier is used complying with Section 405.9.2, the extension is not necessary.

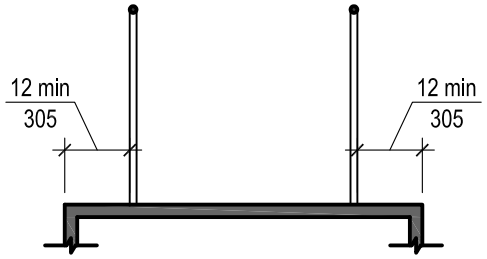


Fig. 405.9.1
Extended Floor Surface

405.9.2 Curb or Barrier. A curb or barrier should be provided to address a drop-off that prevents the passage of a 4-inch (100 mm) diameter sphere where any portion of the sphere is within 4 inches (100 mm) of the floor.

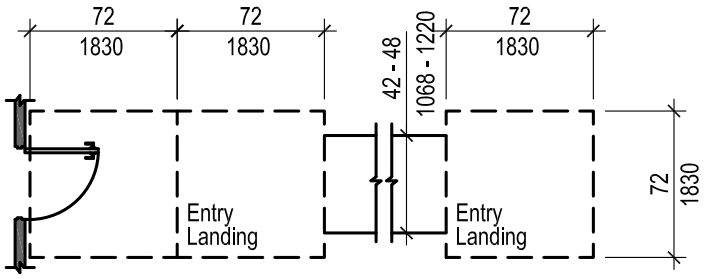


Fig. 405.7.5
Doorway Landing

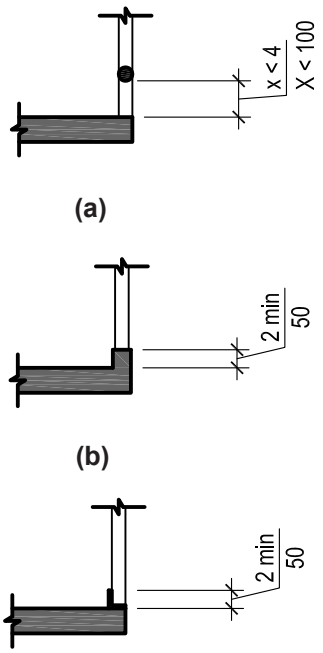


Fig. 405.9.2
Curb or Barrier Examples

405.10 Weather Protection. Landings subject to wet conditions should be designed to prevent the accumulation of water. Exterior ramps should be provided with a continuous cover, or a protected rest area. Where surfaces may freeze, consider an automatic ice melt system.

405.11 Illumination. Ramps and adjacent stairs should be lighted to a higher level than surrounding area and glare should be kept to a minimum.

405.11 Advisory. Lighting and contrast can be used in wayfinding to locate and use ramps, stairs, and rest areas. Lighting must be even to avoid strong shadows. Try to reduce glare.

405.12 Wayfinding. Wayfinding should comply with Chapter 714.

405.12 Advisory. Wayfinding should be enhanced by providing options to accommodate a variety of user abilities. Refer to Chapter 7.

405.13 Signage and Graphics. In addition to standard signage, integrate with handrails and ramp surfaces. Provide information kiosks.

405.13 Advisory. Multiple cuing, such as the use of an audio and visual notice of changes in a path, helps some user groups.

405.14 Tactile Indicators. Upper and lower entry landings should contain raised strip (corduroy) tactile indicators along the entire landing surface perpendicular to the direction of travel. Provide a truncated dome tactile strip immediately adjacent to the top and bottom of the ramp assembly that is the width of the ramp and 24 inches (610 mm) in depth. Tactile indicators should comply with Section 705.6.

405.15 Stairs. Stairs should be provided as an alternative separate approach in conjunction with ramps. Stairs should comply with Section 504 Stairways. Stair landings should not overlap ramp landings.

405.16 Advisory. Integrate the ramp with the interior as much as possible. Short ramp lengths navigating rises of 8” inches or less may replace or eliminate the need for stairs.

405.16 Internal Ramps. Compliance with Section 405.10 is not required.

405.17 Temporary and Portable Ramps. Temporary and portable ramps should comply with Section 405.

405.17 Advisory. In existing buildings and sites, temporary and portable ramps may be used for special events such as a temporary stage or during alterations of buildings.

406 Curb Ramps.

406.1 General. Curb ramps should comply with Section 406, Section 405.2, Section 405.3. They should be designed to prevent an accumulation of water and comply with the following:

1. A standardized set of curb ramp configurations that includes dual ramp corners, single ramp corners, corner ramps without flares, mid-block ramps, island ramps, passenger loading zones ramps, etc. Mid-block curb ramps are not recommended by DOT due to traffic conflicts.
2. Provide recreational lanes for bicycles and pedestrians that are separated from vehicles. Where possible provide a physical barrier between each. Refer to Sections 402.4.3, and 406.15.

3. Locate so that vehicles are visible from each direction. Do not locate where sight lines for approaching traffic are obstructed by building corners. This may require the use of a single diagonal curb ramp.
4. Avoid conflicts with vehicle stops, storm drains, fire hydrants, standpipes, street trees, street furniture, telephones, mail boxes, street lights, street signs, parking meters, utility access, etc.
5. Do not locate any obstruction immediately within the curb ramp approach. This may result in a use conflict with the flares. Consider a barrier such as a planter that is as deep as the ramp that will allow elimination of the side flares.
6. Curb ramps should not project into the roadway. If necessary, for narrow sidewalks that are not sufficiently wide enough to accommodate a curb ramp, consider a sidewalk extension as per Section 406.9 Sidewalk Extensions.
7. Provide the name of the street within the curb cut in addition to the standard street signage.
8. Provide pedestrian signals complying with Section 406.16

406.1 Advisory. The examples of curb ramps provided here address a very limited number of configurations and do not resolve the wide range of existing site conditions. Recommended reading is the Public Rights-of-Way Access Advisory Committee's *Special Report: Accessible Public Rights-of-Way Planning and Design Alterations* (2007). http://www.access-board.gov/prowac/alterations/guide.htm. See also, DOT's *Street Design Manual* (2009).

406.2 Counter Slope. Counter slopes of adjoining gutters and road surfaces immediately adjacent to the curb should not be steeper than 1:20. The adjacent surfaces at transitions at curb ramps to walks, gutters and streets should be at the same level.

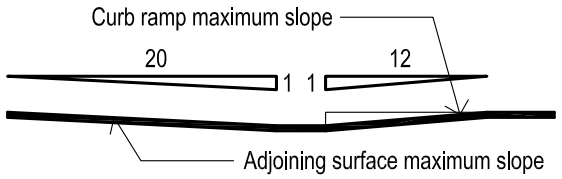
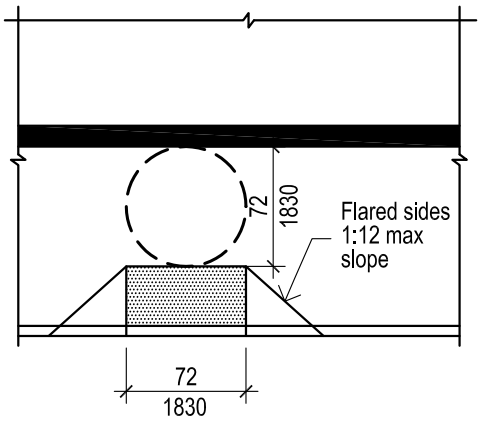
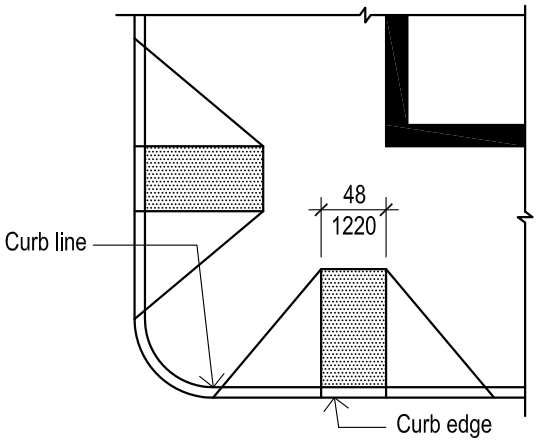


Fig. 406.2
Counter Slope of Surfaces Adjacent to Curb Ramps

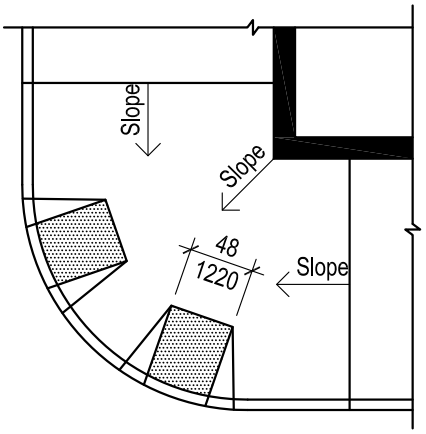
406.3 Sides of Curb Ramps. Where provided, curb ramp flares should not be steeper than 1:12.



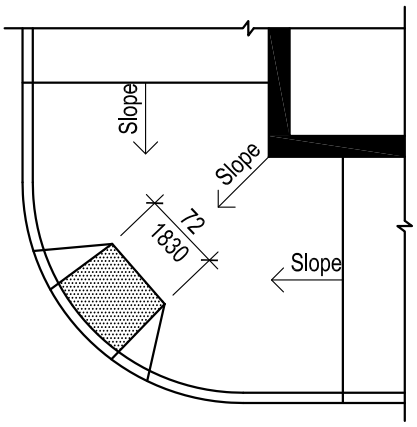
(a)
Mid Block



(b)
Corner



(c)
Dual Compound Corner



(d)
Single Compound Corner

Fig. 406.3
Sides of Curb Ramps

406.3.1 Compound Corners. Compound corners may be used to address corners with substantial elevation differences between the sidewalk grade and roadbed

406.3.1 Advisory. The NYC DOT standard for pedestrian ramps includes compound corners consisting of curb ramps contained within a sloped corner. This addresses very limited space and/or excessive difference between the sidewalk elevation and the roadbed elevation. Corner slope should not exceed 1:18, but some existing locations are extreme and may require, but should never exceed 1:12 slope Consider an indicator immediately adjacent to sloped corner. In some instances curb ramp flares are not necessary, such as when the sides of the curb ramp are blocked with a wall, railing or other obstruction. For more excessive existing conditions consider sidewalk slope beginning farther back from the corner.

406.4 Width. Curb ramps should be 48 inches (1220 mm) wide to 60 inches (1525 mm) wide for configurations that contain two ramps at a single location. Curb ramps should be 72 inches (1830 mm) wide for configurations that contain one ramp at a single location.

406.4 Advisory. It is recommended to increase the curb ramp width to 72 inches where only a single ramp can be accommodated at a single location. The 72 inches allows two-way pedestrian traffic and more room for error since the pedestrian traffic is not split between two ramps.

406.5 Floor Surface. Floor surfaces of curb ramps should be provided with detectable warning the entire length of the ramp run complying with Section 705.1 through 705.5. Other surfaces of the curb ramp should comply with Section 302.

406.5 Advisory. Cross walk marking should comply with DOT regulations. Markings are required to be permanent material such as thermoplastic reflective strips. Consider the use of different roadbed material in lieu of marking, such as pavers or texture (e.g. Section 302.6). Consider the use of color or contrast complying with Section 705.3. Historically, when different materials were used, matching the material for restoration or repairs has been difficult or impossible when they are not commonly available. This should not limit the surface to only asphalt, especially in landmark districts. Refer to Section 302.6 for sensory characteristics

406.6 Location. Curb ramps and the flared sides of curb ramps should be located so they do not project into vehicular traffic lanes, parking spaces, or parking access aisles. Curb ramps at marked crossings should be wholly contained within the markings, excluding any flared sides.

406.7 Landings. Landings should be provided at the tops of curb ramps. The clear length of the landing should be 72 inches (1829 mm) minimum. The clear width of the landing should be as wide as the curb ramp, excluding flared sides, leading to the landing.

406.8 Obstructions. Curb ramps should be located or protected to prevent their obstruction by parked vehicles.

406.8 Advisory. Provide a physical means of separating pedestrians from car, bicycle/pedestrian recreational lanes and traffic. This may be accomplished with a raised area or edge (with cuts or ramps as necessary to allow perpendicular crossing), bollards, railing, planters, landscape elements such as trees, and shrubs. See section 402.4.3 regarding recreational lanes.

406.8.1 Handrails. Handrails are an obstruction in curb ramps and should not be used.

406.9 Sidewalk Extensions. A sidewalk extension may be necessary to accommodate a curb ramp if the sidewalk is too narrow. The extension should not exceed the adjacent parking space width. Sidewalk extensions may be considered for both corners and mid-block crossings. They reduce pedestrian crossing distance in the roadbed and reduce exposure to moving vehicles.

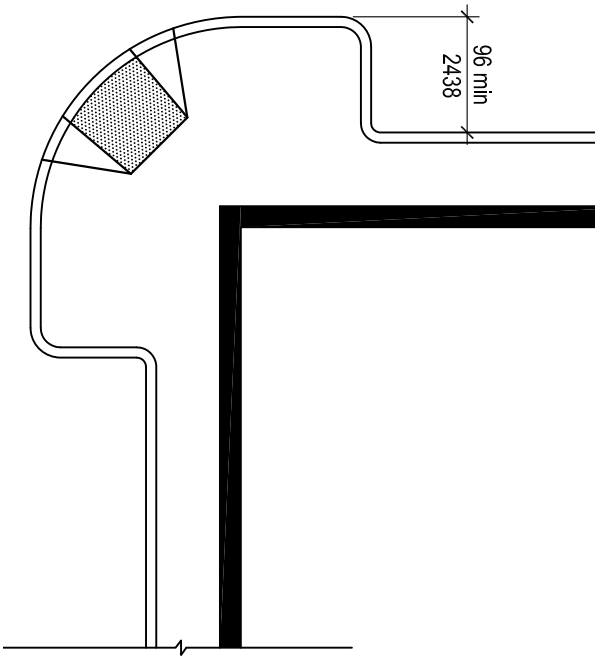


Fig. 406.9
Sidewalk Extension Example

406.9 Advisory. Sidewalk extensions are commonly referred to by DOT as neckdowns. The extensions increase the surface area necessary to install compliant ramps and increase safety. See DOT's *Street Design Manual*, Section 2.2.2 Curb Extensions, for additional information.

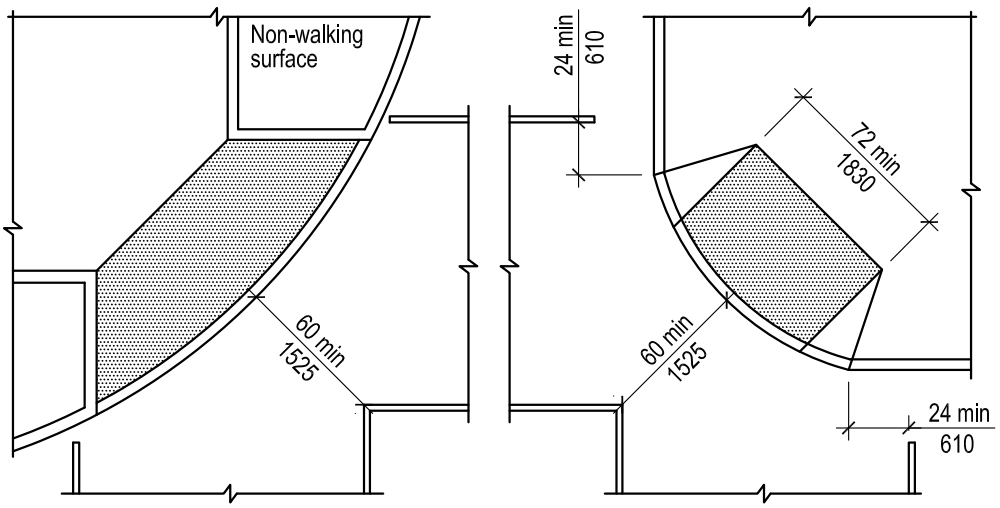
406.10 Diagonal Curb Ramps. Diagonal or corner curb ramps with returned curbs or other well-defined edges should have the edges parallel to the direction of pedestrian flow. The bottoms of diagonal curb ramps should have 24 inches (610 mm) minimum clear space outside active traffic lanes of the roadway. Diagonal curb ramps provided at marked crossings should provide the 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum clear space within the markings. Diagonal curb ramps with flared sides should have a segment of curb 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length on each side of the curb ramp and within the marked crossing (see Fig. 406.10).

406.10 Advisory. The diagonal ramp configuration should be considered if there is very limited space or obstructions in the sidewalk that prevent the installation of two ramps. Under some existing conditions, the entire corner may be sloped at small street corners that do not contain enough area for the use of a standard curb ramp. Another option is a compound ramp as per Section 406.3 advisory, using a single curb ramp.

406.11 Islands. Raised islands in crossings should contain a 72 inches (1830 mm) cut-through level with the street or have curb ramps at both sides. Each curb ramp should have a level area 72 inches (1830 mm) minimum in length and 72 inches (1830 mm) minimum in width at the top of the curb ramp in the part of the island intersected by the crossing. If a landing is reduced, always run the longer side of the landing in the direction of pedestrian traffic. The landings and an accessible route should be permitted to overlap

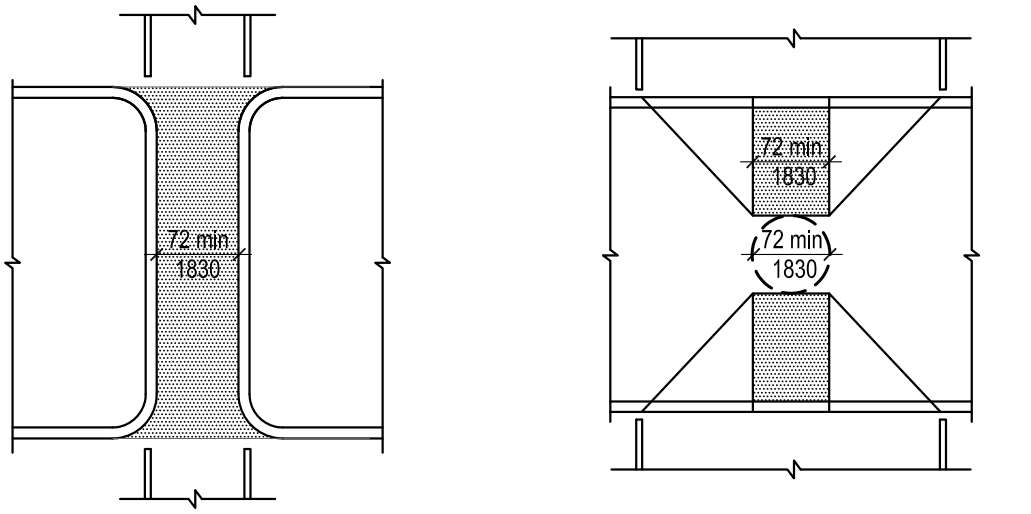
406.11 Advisory. The 72 inch ramp width allows two-way pedestrian traffic and more room for error since any congestion at the ramp may create a street crossing delay resulting in a serious safety condition. The 72 inch level landing may not be possible for some existing conditions, but where there is enough space, it should be provided to increase safety and usability. Islands are necessary for extremely wide streets such as Queens Blvd. where the amount of time needed to cross may require two traffic light cycles to avoid a too long crossing duration that may conflict with traffic flow. Consider the use of pedestrian barriers to increase the level of safety and perhaps provide benches complying with Section 903 for those that need to rest. It is also helpful to include cross walk signage with a full crossing duration countdown that starts the moment the green signal is actuated (see Section 406.16). This informs the pedestrian how much time is remaining to complete the crossing.

406.11.1 Cut-Through Floor Surface. Floor surface of an island cut through at road grade should be provided with detectable warning on the entire cut-through surface complying with Section 705.1 through 705.5.



(a) (b)

Fig. 406.10
Diagonal Curb Ramps



(a)
Cut Through at Island

(b)
Curb Ramp at Island

Fig. 406.11
Islands

406.12 Detectable Warnings at Raised Marked Crossings. Marked crossings that are raised to the same level as the adjoining sidewalk should be proceeded by a 24-inch (610 mm) deep detectable warning complying with Section 705, extending the full width of the marked crossing.

406.13 Detectable Warnings at Curb Ramps. Detectable warnings provided on curb ramps should comply with Sections 406.13 and 705.

406.13.1 Area Covered. Detectable warnings complying with Section 705.1 through 705.5 should extend the full length and full width of the curb ramp or flush surface. Curb ramp flares should not contain detectable warnings.

406.13.2 Location. The detectable warning should be located so the edge nearest the curb line is 6 inches (150 mm) to 8 inches (205 mm) from the curb edge.

406.13.3 Visual Contrast. Detectable warning surfaces should contrast visually with adjacent surfaces, either light-on-dark or dark-on-light. Contrast should be at least 70%.

Contrast = [(B1 — B2)/B1] x 100

Where B1 = Light reflectance value (LRV) of the lighter area and B2 = Light reflectance value (LRV) of the darker area. Note that in any application both white and black are never absolute; thus, B1 , never equals 100 and B2 is always greater than 0.

406.14 Detectable Warnings at Islands or Cut-through Medians. Detectable warnings should be provided on curb ramps, at raised marked crossings leading to islands, or cut-through medians, the island or cut-through median should so be provided with detectable warnings complying with Section 705. These warnings should extend the full width and depth of the pedestrian route or cut-through.

406.15 Recreational Lane Crossover. Recreational lanes should comply with Section 402.4.3. Provide detectable warning 24 inches (610 mm) in depth at all crossover points to warn pedestrians that they are crossing into a recreational lane. See the *NYC Bicycle Master Plan* and NYC DOT's *Street Design Manual* (2009) in Section 105.3.

406.16 Sensory Pedestrian Signals (SPS). Pedestrian signals should be provided in visual, auditory and tactile/vibration overlapping formats. Consistency is encouraged citywide to provide standardized operation throughout the system. The system should include component installation locations (e.g., activation button) street names, width and crossing duration, directionality, destination indicators, vehicle conflict/danger alarm, pedestrian safety traffic signal override, monitoring, integrated electronic devices, etc. Refer to Section 309, Operable Parts, for additional recommendations. It is recommended to provide cross walk signage with a full crossing duration countdown. Functions should be transmitted for a variety of receiver types (e.g., PDA), especially for the crossing countdown.

406.16 Advisory. Refer to the DOT web site for accessible pedestrian signals: http://www.nyc.gov/html/dot/html/pr2006/pr06_04.shtml. Recommended reading regarding pedestrian signals can be obtained through the Access Board website: http://www.access-board.gov/. See the National Cooperative Highway Research Program's *Accessible Pedestrian Signals: A Guide to Best Practices.* http://www.walkinginfo.org/aps/

406.17 Illumination. Locate street lights to increase illumination at all crossing areas to enhance physical elements (curb, flares, ramp, etc) of the crossing for pedestrians and to increase visibility of the pedestrians from moving vehicles.

406.18 Corner Obstructions. Obstructions should be set back a minimum of 40 feet from the corner. These include but are not limited to: subway entrance , sidewalk cafe, bus stop (with and without shelter), fire hydrants/standpipes, trees, benches, telephone booth/kiosk, mail boxes, street lights, street signs, parking meters, manholes, cellar doors, transformer vaults and subway grates.

407 Elevators

407.1 General. Elevators should comply with Section 407 and *ASME A17.1* listed in Section 105.2.5 Elevators should be passenger elevators as classified by *ASME A17.1.* Elevator operation should be automatic. At least two elevators are recommended to allow continuous operation regardless of failure, repair or maintenance. Two elevators allow phasing of work. Safety and access can be maintained and continuous service will avoid stranding those with limited physical abilities and those that require mobility devices that cannot navigate stairs. Consider a portable platform lift stair climber, complying with Section 411 for use as a single elevator building back-up.

407.1 Advisory. A standard elevator should be used where feasible rather than a LULA. Destination-oriented elevators are recommended for operational advantages. LULA's complying with Section 408 must comply with limitations as per *NYCBC* Section 1109.6.1, recommended for dwelling units. A LULA should be used only if a standard elevator is not reasonable [e.g. buildings with a narrow footprint or maximum of 3 floors and less than 10,000 sf. and limited to 25 feet of travel height). Residential elevators are very limited and are intended for dedicated usage. Small elevation changes may be accomplished with a platform lift complying with Section 410. Platform lifts shall not serve as part of an accessible means of egress, except as allowed as part of a required accessible route in *NYCBC* Section 1109.7 Enclosed platform lifts are an economical alterative for dwelling units, but are slow, and limited to two contiguous floors with limited automatic operation.

An elevator for accessible emergency egress in high-rise buildings is required as per *NYCBC* Section 1007.2.1 and 1007.4, but subject to Section 403. This includes emergency operation and signaling device requirements, emergency power and access from an area of rescue assistance or horizontal exit in addition to other requirements. Typically, elevators are automatically recalled to the ground floor for Fire Department operation during a fire or emergency. There are many reasons for control override: entrapment, panic overloading, stoppage on event floor, fire and smoke penetration etc. Safety and usability of elevator systems, especially for high-rises during emergencies could be enhanced by maximizing resistance to fire, smoke, explosions, impacts and seismic events. Voice/alarm communications should be supplemented with visual two-way communications. Door seals need to be very effective. Provide an emergency air supply in cab. Positive air pressure reduces smoke migration. Electrical components should be water resistant. Electrical components and wiring needs to be water resistant to prevent operation failure from water penetration from sprinklers and/or firehose discharge. See *IDG* Section 504.11 and *NYCBC* Section 1007.6. See also *IDG* Sections 408, 409 and 410 for additional information.

407.2 Landing Requirements. Elevator landing requirements should comply with Section 407.2. The landing clear floor space for each elevator should be 72 inches (1830 mm) in width and 72 inches (1830 mm) in depth and centered on the opening.

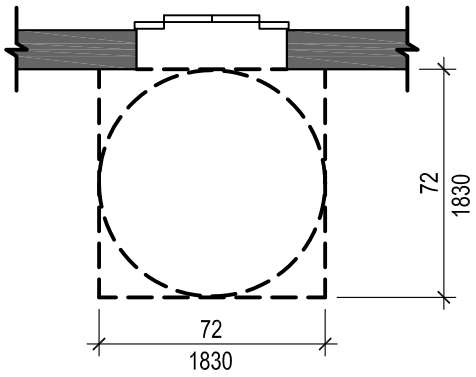


Fig. 407.2
Elevator Landing Clear Floor Space

407.2 Advisory. Consider tactile surface characteristics for the entire landing clear floor space complying with Section 302.6 or detectable surfaces complying with Section 302.7. Detectable surfaces such as a raised strip (corduroy) complying with Section 705.6 may be too aggressive for some applications.

407.2.1 Call Control. Elevator call buttons should should be visual, audible and tactile, complying with Sections 407.2.1 and 309.4. Call buttons should be raised with tactile identifiers. Objects beneath hall call buttons should protrude 1 inch (25 mm) maximum.

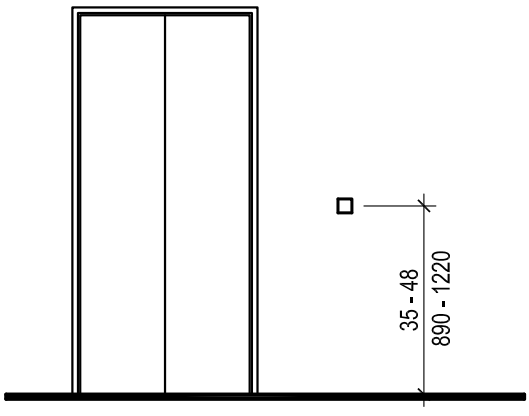


Fig. 407.2.1.1
Height of Elevator Call Buttons

407.2.1.1 Height. Call buttons and control panel components should be located between 35 inches (890 mm) and 48 inches (1220 mm) measured to the centerline of the control to the floor.

407.2.1.2 Size. Call buttons should be 1 inch (25 mm) minimum in the smallest dimension of the operable part of the bottom.

407.2.1.3 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305 should be provided at the controls. This may overlap with the 72 x 72 inch landing recommendation.

407.2.1.4 Location. The call button that designates the up direction should be located above the call button that designates the down direction.

407.2.1.5 Signals. Call buttons should have visible, auditory and tactile signals to indicate when each call is registered and when each call is answered.

407.2.1.6 Keypads. Where keypads are provided, keypads should be a standard telephone arrangement and should comply with Section 407.4.7.2.

407.2.1.7 Destination-oriented Elevator Signals. Destination-oriented elevators should be provided with visible, audible and tactile signals to indicate which car is responding to a call. These should be activated by pressing a function button. The function button should be identified by the international Symbol of Accessibility and tactile indication. The symbol should comply with Section 703.6.3.1 and should be 5/8 inch (16 mm) in height and be a raised tactile character complying with Section 703.2. The tactile indication should also be three raised dots, spaced 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) at base diameter, in the form of an equilateral triangle. The function button should be located immediately below the key pad arrangement of the floor buttons, 1-inch (25 mm) high and the width of the keypad. Each control button should be 1 inch (25 mm) minimum height and 1 inch (25 mm) minimum in width.

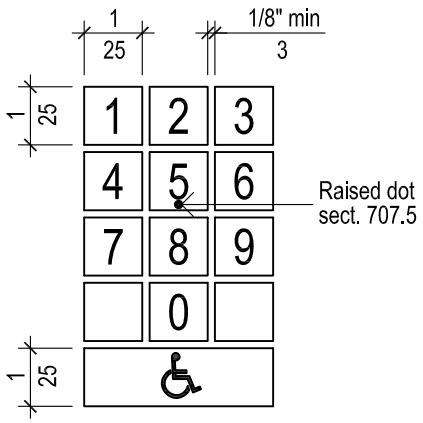


Fig 407.2.1.7
Destination-Oriented Elevator Control Buttons

407.2.1.7 Advisory. This system provides an effective alternative to standard controls. It increases dispatching efficiency and reduces congestion by distributing loading and reducing response time. The rider, keys in the desired floor at the floor lobby, the designated car arrives and automatically takes the rider to that floor.

407.2.1.7.1 Verbal Annunciator. Provide a verbal annunciator for the function button. Pressing the function button should activate the verbal annunciator that indicates activation by saying “hello”, directs the user to key in the desired floor number, identifies which car is responding, left or right of the keypad, provides approximate time of arrival, and wishes the user a nice day.

407.2.1.7.2 Visual Annunciator. Provide a visual annunciator for the function button. Characters should comply with Section 703.2. Pressing the function button should activate the visual annunciator that indicates activation by displaying “hello”, directs the user to key in the desired floor number, identifies which car is responding, left or right of the keypad, provides approximate time of arrival and wishes the user a nice day.

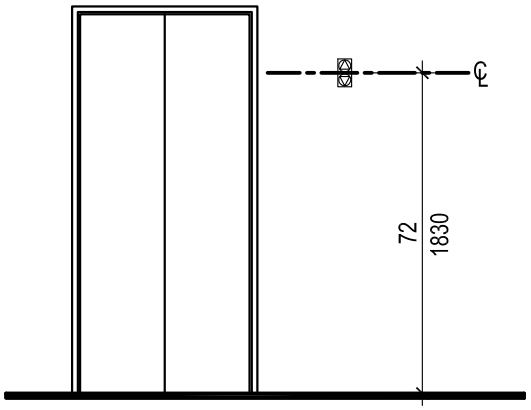
407.2.1.7.3 Tactile Annunciator. Provide a tactile annunciator and vibrating function button complying with Section 309.7.

407.2.1.8 Seating. Consider providing seating at each landing that complies with Section 903. Seating should not conflict with the clear floor space. Consider a recessed alcove that will not obstruct the landing or place seating within close proximity.

407.2.2 Hall Signals. Hall signals, including in-car signals, should comply with Section 407.2.2.

407.2.2.1 Visible, Audible and Tactile Signals. A visible, audible and tactile signal should be provided at each hoistway entrance to indicate which car is answering a call and the car's direction of travel. In-car signals should be visible from the floor area adjacent to the call button.

407.2.2.2 Visible Signals. Visible signal fixtures should be centered at 72 inches (1830 mm) minimum above the floor. The visible lighted signal elements should be 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) minimum measured along the vertical centerline of the element. Signals should be visible from the floor adjacent to the hall call button.



(a)
Height of Signals

(b)
Size of Signals

Fig. 407.2.2.2
Elevator Visible Signals

407.2.2.3 Audible Signals. Audible signals should sound once for the up direction and twice for the down direction, or should have verbal annunciators that indicate the direction of elevator car travel. Audible signals should have a frequency of 1500 Hz maximum. Verbal annunciators should have a frequency of 300 Hz minimum and 3,000 Hz maximum. The audible signal or verbal annunciator should be 10 dBA minimum above ambient, but should not exceed 80 dBA, measured at the hall call button.

407.2.2.3 Advisory. Verbal annunciators should: identify the next arriving car, number of the car, and location in a bank of elevators, using compass direction. A typical announcement may be: "Car #3 arriving on north side of lobby". Verbal and tactile annunciators supplement visual signals and are a component of a wayfinding; refer to Section 714.

407.2.2.4 Tactile/Vibration Signals. Consider tactile/vibration signals complying with Section 309.7, tactile signage complying with Section 703.3, and the use of an information/navigation reference point system complying with Section 708.7 that uses vibration.

407.2.2.5 Differentiation. Each destination -oriented elevator in a bank of elevators should have audible, visible and tactile means for differentiation.

407.2.3 Hoistway Signs. Signs at elevator hoistways should comply with Section 407.2.3.

407.2.3.1 Floor Designation. Floor designation should be provided in tactile characters complying with Section 703.3 located on both jambs of elevator hoistway entrances. Section 703.3, Tactile Characters also requires compliance with Section 703.4., Braille. Tactile characters should be 2 inches (51 mm) minimum in height. A tactile star should be provided on both jambs at the main entry level.

407.2.3.2 Car Designations. Destination oriented elevators should provide car identification in tactile characters complying with Section 703.3 located on both jambs of the hoistway immediately below the floor designation. Tactile characters should be 2 inches (51 mm) minimum in height. Car identification should vibrate and comply with Section 309.7.

407.2.4 Destination Signs. Where signs indicate that elevators do not serve all landings, signs in tactile characters complying with Section 703.3 should be provided above the hall call button fixture.

407.3 Elevator Door. Hoistway and elevator car doors should comply with Section 407.3.

407.3.1 Type. Elevator doors should be horizontal sliding type. Car gates should be prohibited.

407.3.2 Operation. Elevator hoistway and car doors should open and close automatically.

407.3.3 Reopening Device. Elevator doors should be provided with a reopening device complying with Section 407.3.3 that should stop and reopen a car door and hoistway door automatically if the door becomes obstructed by an object or person.

407.3.3.1 Height. The reopening device should be activated by sensing an obstruction passing through the opening at 5 inches (125 mm) nominal and 29 inches (735 mm) nominal above the floor.

407.3.3.2 Contact. The reopening device should not require physical contact to be activated, although contact should be permitted before the door reverses.

407.3.3.3 Duration. The reopening device should remain effective for 20 seconds minimum.

407.3.4 Door and Signal Timing. The minimum acceptable time from notification that a car is answering a call until the doors of that car start to close should be calculated from the following equation:

T=D/(1.5 ft/s) or T=D/(455mm/s)=5 seconds minimum, where T equals the total time in seconds and D equals the distance (in feet or millimeters) from the point in the lobby or corridor 60 inches (1525 mm) directly in front of the farthest call button controlling that car to the centerline of its hoistway door.

EXCEPTIONS: For cars with in-car lanterns, T should be permitted to begin when the signal is visible from the point 60 inches (1525 mm) directly in front of the farthest hall call button and the audible signal is sounded.

407.3.5 Door Delay. Elevator doors should remain fully open in response to a car call for 3 seconds minimum.

407.3.6 Width. Elevator door clear opening width should comply with Section 407.3.6.

407.3.6.1 Location. Elevator door location should be centered to avoid favoring one side of the cab and reducing access to the other side. Only place door to a side if restricted by structural or existing conditions.

407.3.6.2 Width. Elevator door clear opening width should be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum.

407.4 Elevator Car Dimensions. Elevator cars should comply with Section 407.4.

407.4.1 Car Dimensions. Inside dimensions of the elevator cars should be 80 inches (2030) minimum in width and 72 inches (1830 mm) minimum in depth.

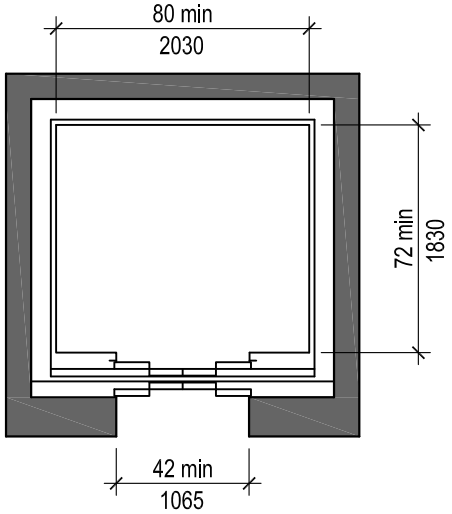


Fig. 407.4.1
Inside Dimension of Elevator Cars

407.4.1 Advisory. Due to limited time for navigating to and into the elevator, and taking into account other occupants and angled entry, it is advantageous for a person using a mobility device to have a 42 inch door opening. This allows some forgiveness for maneuvering errors. A turning space within the cab should be provided to allow a 180 degree turn for forward entry and exit. Based on *A117.1-2003*, Table 407.4.1 the legal inside car side to car side dimension for a centered 42 inch door is 80 inches. At a minimum it is recommended to use a 36 door (any location) with a 72 inch x 72 inch cab. Also, consider a fold down seat for institutional facilities (e.g. hospitals and assisted living) complying with Section 903.

407.4.2. Floor Surfaces. Floor surfaces in elevator cars should comply with Section 302.

407.4.3 Platform to Hoistway Clearance. The clearance between the car platform sill and the edge of any hoistway landing should be in compliance with *ASME/ANSI A17.1* listed in Section 105.2.5.

407.4.4 Leveling. Each car should be equipped with a self-leveling feature that will automatically bring and maintain the car at floor landings within a tolerance of ½ inch (13 mm) under rated loading to zero loading conditions.

407.4.5 Illumination. The level of illumination at car controls, platform, car threshold and landing sill should be 5 foot-candles (54 lux) minimum.

407.4.6 Car Controls Location. Controls should be located as close as possible to both sides of the door opening. Elevator car controls should comply with Sections 407.4.6 and 309.

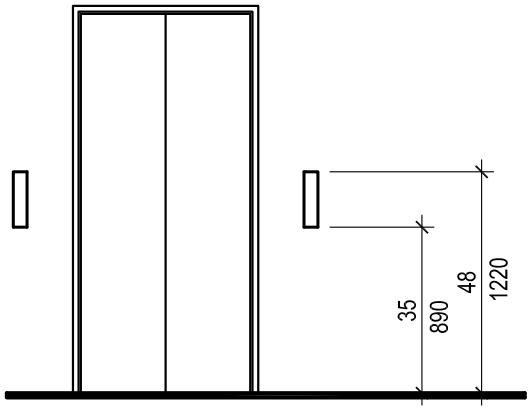


Fig. 407.4.6
Car Control Locations

407.4.6.1 Location. The highest operable parts should be 48 inches (1220 mm) and the lowest operable parts should be 35 inches (890 mm).

407.4.6.1 Advisory. The 35 to 48 inch high horizontal band is relatively narrow to accommodate a complete set of dedicated floor buttons for tall buildings. A larger 24 to 48 inch high comfort zone complying with Section 309.3.1 should work from a standing and sitting position. Destination oriented elevators are recommended to resolve dedicated button concerns. The other option is to use a call sequential step scanning control and place it within the recommended upper 35 to 48 inch height.

407.4.6.2 Buttons. Car control buttons with floor designations should be raised and should comply with Section 407.4.6.2. Consider providing visual, tactile and auditory activation indication.

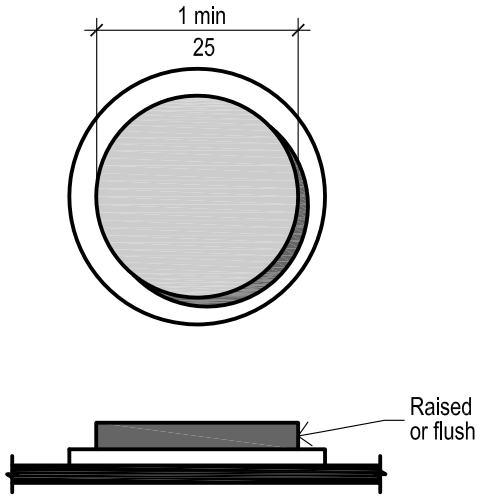


Fig. 407.4.6.2
Elevator Car Control Buttons

407.4.6.2.1 Size. Buttons should be 1 inch (25 mm) minimum in their smallest dimension.

407.4.6.2.2 Arrangement. Buttons should be arranged with numbers in ascending order. Floors should be designated ... -4, -3, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, etcetera, with floors below the main entry floor designated with minus numbers. Numbers should be permitted to be omitted, provided the remaining numbers are in sequence. When two or more columns or buttons are provided, they should read from left to right.

407.4.6.2.3 Contrast. Provide contrasting colors for car control buttons complying with Section 703.2.10.

407.4.6.3 Keypads. Car control keypads should be in a standard telephone keypad arrangement and should comply with Section 407.4.7.2.

407.4.6.4 Emergency Controls. Emergency controls should comply with Section 407.4.6.4.

407.4.6.4.1 Height. Emergency control buttons should have their centerlines 35 inches (890 mm) to 38 inches (965 mm) above the floor.

407.4.6.4.2 Location. Emergency controls, including the emergency alarm should be grouped at the bottom of the panel.

407.4.7 Designations and Indicators of Car Controls. Designations and indicators of car controls should comply with Section 407.4.7.

407.4.7.1 Buttons. Car control buttons should comply with Section 407.4.7.1.

407.4.7.1.1 Type. Control buttons should be identified by back lite tactile characters complying with Section 703.3.

407.4.7.1.2 Location. Tactile characters and Braille designations should be placed immediately to the left of the control button to which the designations apply. Where a negative number is used to indicate a negative floor, the Braille designation should be a cell with the dots 3 and 6 followed by the ordinal number.

407.4.7.1.3 Symbols. The control button for the emergency stop, alarm, door open, door close, main entry floor, and phone, should be identified with tactile symbols as shown in Table 407.4.7.1.3.

407.4.7.1.4 Visible Indicators. Buttons with floor designations should be provided with visible indicators to show that a call has been registered. The visible indication should extinguish when the car arrives at the designated floor.

407.4.7.2 Keypads. Keypads should be identified by back lit tactile characters complying with Section 703.3 and should be centered on the corresponding keypad button. The number five key should have a single raised dot. The dot should have a base diameter of 0.118 inch (3 mm) minimum to 0.120 inch (3.05 mm) maximum, and a height of 0.025 inch (0.6 mm) minimum to 0.037 inch (0.9 mm) maximum. Keypad should be numeric only with a 12-key ascending telephone keypad layout and should comply with Section 707.5. Key pad keys should be a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) in width and 1 inch (25 mm) in length.

407.4.7.2 Advisory. People with low vision have difficulty with keypads. They may be either an ascending order like a telephone or descending like a computer keyboard. Tactile numbers will help confirm the order and identify the number. The one inch minimum key size will enhance usability and speed.

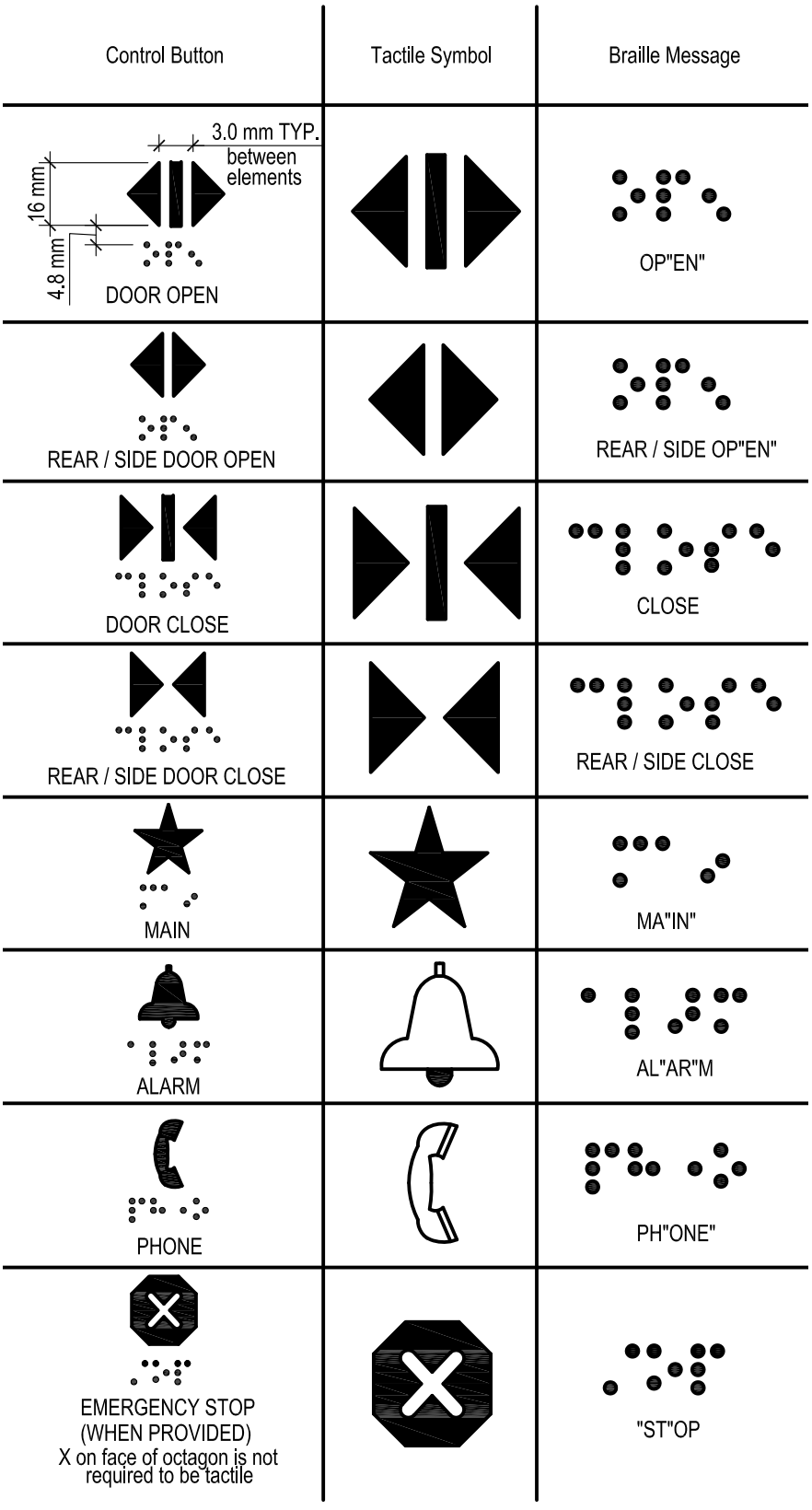


Fig. 407.4.7.1.3
Control Button Identification

407.4.8 Elevator Car Call Sequential Step Scanning. Elevator car call sequential step scanning should be provided where car control panels cannot comply with Section 407.4.6.1. Floor selection should be accomplished by applying momentary or constant pressure to the up or down scan button. The up scan button should sequentially select floors above the current floor. The down scan button should sequentially select floors below the current floor. When pressure is removed from the up or down scan button for more than 2 seconds, the last floor selected should be registered as a car call. The up and down scan button should be located adjacent to or immediately above the emergency control buttons.

407.4.8 Advisory. Based on the reduced reach ranges in Section 308. This forms a narrow band because it reduces the overall height of the band. This does not provide enough vertical space for a button dedicated to each floor in a high rise building and the other components of the elevator controls. This will result in the floor buttons being placed horizontally and extending towards the back of the cab or vertically that may exceed the high reach range. The logical choice for many buildings in New York City, may be the use of destination oriented elevators or sequential step scanning. A potential problem is unfamiliarity by the general public regarding the use of this system because it is not commonly used in the City. It is a good alternative to destination oriented elevators (with refinements).

407.4.9 Car Position Indicators. Audible and visual indicators should be provided on elevator cars.

407.4.9.1 Visible Indicators. Visible indicators should comply with 407.4.9.1.

407.4.9.1.1 Size. Characters should be 1 inch (25 mm) minimum in height.

407.4.9.1.2 Location. Indicators should be located above the car control panel or above the door.

407.4.9.2 Audible indicators. Audible indicators should comply with Section 407.4.9.2.

407.4.9.2.1 Signal Type. The signal should be an automatic verbal annunciator that announces the floor at which the car is about to stop. The verbal announcement indicating the floor should be completed prior to the initiation of the door opening.

407.4.9.2.2 Signal Level. The verbal annunciator should be 10 dBa minimum above ambient, but should not exceed 80 dBa, measured at the annunciator.

407.4.9.2.3 Frequency. The verbal annunciator should have a frequency of 300 Hz minimum to 3,000 Hz maximum.

407.4.10 Emergency Communications. Emergency two-way communication systems between the elevator car and a point outside the hoistway should comply with Section 407.4.10 and *ASMA/ANSI A17.1* listed in Section 105.2.5 and Section 708 for two-way communications systems including visual communication as per Section 708.5.

407.4.10.1 Height. Operable parts of a two-way communication system should be located between 35 inches (890 mm) and 48 inches (1220 mm) measured to the centerline of the device to the floor.

407.4.10.2 Identification. Tactile characters complying with Section 703.3 and symbols complying with Section 407.4.7.1.3 should be provided adjacent to the device.

407.4.11 Visual and Audible Communications. A closed circuit TV system that allows two-way visual and audible communication as per Section 708 should be provided.

407.4.11.1 Monitors. Elevator cars should be provided with monitors located within the car controls location as per 407.4.1 or between 35 inches (890 mm) and 48 inches (1220 mm). An additional monitor should be centered at 72 inches (1830 mm) above the floor measured to the centerline of the screen on both car walls adjacent to the door.

407.4.11.2 Optional Keyboard. When the keyboard is activated an automatic alert should be triggered at the lobby desk or security desk. The requisite monitors will display the typed communications. Comply with Section 704.4 TTY and 704.6 TTY shelf.

407.4.12 Handrails. Handrails should be provided in elevator cars and should comply with Section 505. Handrails should not obstruct control panel.

407.4.12 Advisory. Handrails are recommended for children and for those that have difficulty standing.

408 Limited-Use / Limited-Application Elevators (LULA)

408.1 General. This type of elevator is not recommended for inclusive applications due to space and operational restrictions, except within dwelling units and complying with Section 1007.2, Limited-use/limited –application elevators should comply with Section 408 and *ASME A17.1* listed in Section 408 and *ASME A17.1* listed in Section 105.2.5. Elevator operation should be automatic.

408.1 Advisory. LULA's are limited to a travel height of 25 feet or less, a capacity of 1400 lbs. and a clear platform size of 18 sq. ft.. LULA's should be used only if a full size commercial elevator is not technically feasible due to the foot print of the building and the limited travel height. LULA's should not be used for buildings greater than 10,000 sq.ft. Refer to *2008 NYCBC*, Section 1109.6.1. LULA's are limited to three consecutive floors.

408.2 Elevator Landing. Landings serving limited-use/limited-application elevators should comply with Section 408.2.

408.2.1 Call Controls. Elevator call buttons and keypads should comply with Section 407.2.1.

408.2.2 Hall Signals. Hall signals should comply with Section 407.2.2.

408.2.3 Hoistway Signs. Signs at elevator hoistway doors should comply with Section 408.3.

408.2.4 Clear Floor Space. Clear floor space should comply with Section 407.2. Consider the use of tactile surface characteristics to distinguish from other floor surfaces.

408.3 Elevator Door. Elevator hoistway doors should comply with Section 408.3.

408.3.1 Sliding Doors. Sliding hoistway and car doors should comply with Sections 407.3.1 through 407.3.3, and 408.3.3.

408.3.2 Swinging Doors. Swinging hoistway doors should open and close automatically and should comply with Sections 408.3.2, 404, and 407.3.2.

408.3.2.1 Power Operation. Swinging doors should be power-operated and should comply with *ANSI/BHMA A156.19* listed in Section 105.2.3.

408.3.2.2 Duration. Power-operated swinging doors should remain open for 20 seconds minimum when activated.

408.3.3 Door Location and Width. Car doors should provide a clear opening width of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum. Car doors should be positioned at a narrow end of the car.

408.4 Elevator Car Requirements. Elevator cars should comply with Section 408.4.

408.4.1 Inside Dimensions of Elevator Cars. Elevator cars should provide a clear floor area of 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum in width, and 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum in depth.

408.4.1 Advisory. The maximum platform size allowed by code for a LULA, is the *ASME 17.1* requirement of 18 square feet. A 42" x 60" is 17.5 square feet, slightly under the maximum. This maximum leaves few options. The 42 inch width is necessary to allow some side maneuvering clearance and the 60 inch length accommodates scooters and those who use wheelchairs with their legs extended, etc.

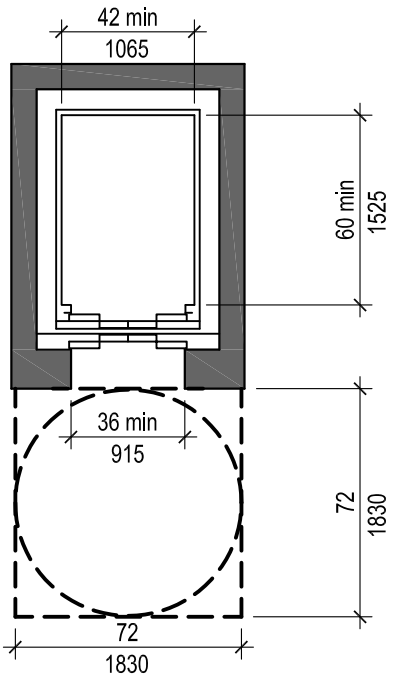


Fig. 408.4.1
Inside Dimensions of Limited-Use/ Limited-Application (LULA) Elevator Cars.

408.4.2 Floor Surface. Floor surfaces in elevator cars should comply with Section 302.

408.4.3 Platform to Hoistway Clearance. The clearance between the car platform sill and the edge of any hoistway landing should be in compliance with *ASME/ANSI A17.1* listed in Section 105.2.5.

408.4.4 Leveling. Elevator car leveling should comply with Section 407.4.4.

408.4.5 Illumination. Elevator illumination should comply with Section 407.4.5.

408.4.6 Elevator Car Controls. Elevator car controls should comply with Section 407.4.6. Control panels should be centered on a sidewall.

408.4.7 Designations and Indicators of Car Controls Designations and indicators of car controls should comply with Section 407.4.7.

408.4.8 Emergency Communications. Car emergency signaling devices complying with Section 407.4.10 should be provided.

409 Private Residence Elevators

409.1 General. Private residence elevators should comply with Section 409 and *ASME A17.1* listed in Section 105.2.5 Elevator operation should be automatic. Use within dwelling units is supplemental to standard elevators and LULA's and should comply with Section 1007.3, Private residence elevators should comply with Section 409 and *ASME/ANSI A17.1* listed in Section 105.2.5. Elevator operation should be automatic.

409.1 Advisory. Private residence elevators should only be considered if a standard elevator, LULA or platform lift are not viable choices. A private residence elevator may have a maximum rise of 50 feet (15 m), but contains a smaller maximum 15 ft^2 platform area. This is an increase from the previous 12 ft^2 in the old code. The 15 square feet allows a 36" x 60" clear floor space complying with Section 305. This is larger than the legal minimum (30" x 48") and accommodates a variety of user scenarios.

409.2 Landing. Clear floor space should comply with Section 407.2.

409.2.1 Call Buttons. Call buttons at elevator landings should comply with Section 309. Call buttons should be 1 inch (25 mm) minimum in their smallest dimension.

409.3 Doors and Gates. Elevator car and hoistway doors and gates should comply with Sections 409.3 and 404.

EXCEPTION: The maneuvering clearances required by Section 404.2.3 should not apply for approaches to the push side of swinging doors.

409.3.1 Power Operation. Elevator car doors and gates should be power operated and should comply with *ANSI BHMA 156.19* listed in Section 105.2.3. Elevator cars with a single opening should have a low energy power operated hoistway doors and gates.

409.3.1 Advisory. ANSI allows the use of manual-open, self-close type hoistway doors. But this restricts the use of the elevator by some. Automatic doors are strongly recommended. Manual doors cannot be operated by everyone. Maneuvering clearances are very tight. If the occupant is carrying packages, it is a juggling act. Installation within a unit and rider limitations does not justify a reduction in usability. Usability should not be reduced to accommodate available space unless there are no other viable options.

409.3.2 Duration. Power operated doors and gates should remain open for 20 seconds minimum when activated.

409.3.3 Door or Gate Location. Car gates or doors should be positioned at a narrow end of the clear floor area required by Section 409.4.1. Door should have a clear opening width of 36 inches (915 mm).

409.4 Elevator Car Requirements. Elevator cars should comply with Section 409.4.

409.4.1 Inside Dimensions of Elevator Cars. Residential elevator cars should provide a clear floor area 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width and 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in depth.

409.4.1 Advisory. The dimensions are not minimums. They are viable dimensions based on the legal requirements as per A17.1. The interior is too small to be inclusive. A multilevel dwelling unit is not inclusive by the installation of this type of elevator. A LULA should be considered.

409.4.2 Floor Surfaces. Floor surfaces in elevator cars should comply with Section 302.

409.4.3 Platform to Hoistway Clearances. The clearances between the car platform sill and the edge of any hoistway landing should be 1 1/4 inches (32 mm) maximum.

409.4.4 Leveling. Each car should automatically stop at a floor landing within a tolerance of 1/2 inch (13 mm) under rated loading to zero loading conditions.

409.4.5 Illumination. The level of illumination at the car controls, platform, and car threshold and landing sill should be 5 foot-candles (54 lux) minimum.

409.4.6 Elevator Car Controls. Elevator car controls should comply with Section 409.4.6 and 309.4.

409.4.6.1 Buttons. Control buttons should be 1 inch (25 mm) minimum in their smallest dimension. Control buttons should be raised or flush.

409.4.6.2 Height. Buttons with floor designations should comply with Section 309.3.

409.4.6.3 Location. Controls should be on a sidewall, 12 inches (305 mm) minimum from any adjacent wall.

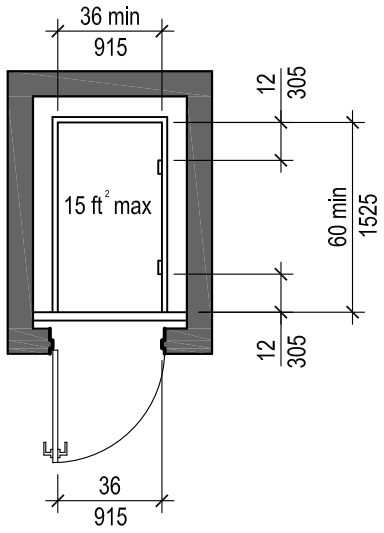


Fig. 409.4.6.3
Location of Controls in
Private Residence Elevators

409.4.7 Emergency Communications. Emergency communications systems should comply with Section 409.4.7. Provide a telephone that should comply with Section 704.2.2 and Section 704.3. Provide an emergency signaling device complying with 702.2.

409.4.7.1 Type. A telephone and emergency signal device should be provided in the car.

409.4.7.2 Operable Parts. The telephone and emergency signaling device should comply with Section 309.3.

409.4.7.3 Compartment. If the device is in a closed compartment, the compartment door hardware should comply with Section 309.

409.4.7.4 Cord. The telephone cord should be 29 inches (735 mm) minimum in length.

410 Platform Lifts

410.1 General. Platform lifts should comply with Section 410 and *ASME/ANSI A18.1-1999* with *Addenda A18.1a-2001* and *A18.1b-2001*. listed in Section 105.2.6. that differentiates general installations from private residence installations. Platform lifts should not be attendant operated and should provide unassisted entry and exit from the lift. Platform lifts are not generally recommended, but there are situations where they may provide a solution where other vertical circulation is not viable. They should be permitted to be part of a route to the following:

1. Performance area(s) in occupancy Group A.
2. Wheelchair spaces in assembly areas
3. Spaces not open to the general public with an occupant load of not more than five
4. Within a dwelling unit or sleeping unit
5. Raised judge's benches, clerks' stations, jury boxes, witness stands, or other raised or depressed areas in a court.
6. Where existing site constraints make use of a ramp or elevator infeasible.
7. Adjustable height inclusive spaces

410.1 Advisory. Platform lifts are recommended for dwelling units. In other applications, they should only be considered for use where elevators and ramps are not feasible and for temporary installations. Only in very limited applications in new construction can a platform lift be used. In existing buildings, they are critical where no other option is viable Ensure that exterior lifts, are protected by locating under overhangs or covered, especially in areas subject to snow and ice accumulation. In addition to providing emergency communications, lifts should be under visual or video surveillance in case assistance is needed. Compliance with *A18.1* (see Section 105.2.6) is required by law and includes: key operation with attendant, continuous pressure up and down control switches, attendant call device, emergency stop switch, emergency alarms, audible signaling devices (that illuminate when actuated), two-way communication devices between unit and emergency personnel. In addition, refer to A18.1, Sections 210.1, 2.10.2, 210.6, 2.11, 2.11.1 and 2.11.2. In addition, there are several voluntary options, such as, stationary ramp in lieu of a flip-up ramp, grab bars, hand crank to raise and lower unit in case of power failure or mechanical breakdown, intermediate stopping and other features.

410.1.1 Vertical Platform Lifts. Vertical platform lifts as per *A18.1* are permitted 12 feet of travel, 15 square feet of platform size and a maximum speed of 30 ft per minute. Consult with equipment manufacturers regarding operation and to help the unit integrate with the immediate environment to reduce intrusiveness both spatially and aesthetically. See also Section 802.6.1 Adjustable Height Inclusive Spaces and Section 807.16 Witness Stands.

410.1.1.1 Enclosed Vertical Platform Lifts for Dwelling Units. In dwelling units, a vertical platform lift enclosed in construction having a minimum fire resistant rating of two hours and limited to two contiguous floors should be considered.

410.1.1.2 Adaptable Enclosure in Dwelling Units. In dwelling units that do not require a lift at initial occupancy, two vertical contiguous closets should be located in proximity of the entrance with easily removable ceiling/floor assembly that does not damage the rated walls if removed. The shaft should be fully sheathed with 2-hour rated walls, including wall surfaces behind the adaptable ceiling/floor assembly.

410.1.1 Advisory. Safety systems, mechanical system, communications, controls, lighting, and other requirements must comply with the *2008 NYCBC* and the applicable codes for platform lifts. An enclosed platform lift is limited to 12 ft of vertical rise (10 ft for residential lifts) and is slow at only 30 ft per minute. In case of power failure the system should provide a manual means of lowering the unit. It is recommended that standby power is provided for all platform lifts.

410.1.2 Inclined Platform Lifts. In dwelling units, inclined platform lifts are suggested as an alternative solution to an enclosed platform lift. Inclined platform lifts cannot conflict with means of egress.

410.1.2 Advisory. Due to size, inclined platform lifts, will typically obstruct most if not the entire width of the communicating stair in a dwelling unit. These lifts are often intrusive. Refer to the *2008 NYCBC* Section 1009.1, Exception 4 for installations regarding Group R-2 and Group R-3 occupancies. They do offer an advantage in that the vertical travel height is not limited like the vertical lifts. Stair location and continuity above two stories require careful planning for inclined platform lifts to function properly and for entering and exiting. Turns require fairly large unobstructed landings. Inclined platform lifts are not recommended for other applications unless there are no other viable choices. Do not use along a means of egress route, especially in fire stairs if they obstruct the route and conflict with the minimum legal width while in use. In some municipalities, automatic recall to the storage position is tied into the fire suppression system. Inclined platform lifts are limited as a temporary means of access during rehabilitation and maintenance of the elevator system. They should not be installed in fire stairs and thus would only be useful if there are communicating stairs that are not part of the required means of egress. See Section 407.1 regarding two elevator minimum recommendations.

410.1.2.1 Turns. Provide proper maneuvering clearance for turns. Indicate on floor plans the turning radius necessary to accommodate a 90 or 180 degree turn.

410.1.2.1 Advisory. If a platform lift is installed on stairs that contain turns or switchbacks, it is necessary to verify that both the stair width and landing contain enough clearance for the platform to make the turns. This should be shown in the design documents It is useless to install a wide stair if proper landing sizes are not provided, perhaps resulting in the use of a smaller and less useful platform.

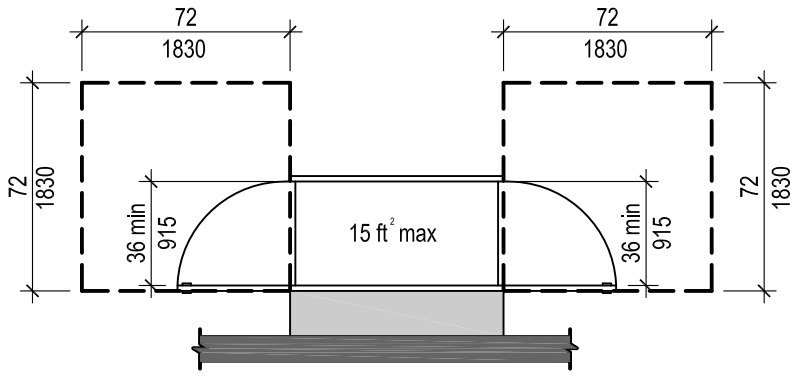
410.1.3 Stair Lifts for Dwelling Units. Stair lifts are inclined lifts with a transfer seat rather than a platform. These are only recommended in dwellings where the occupants can transfer from a wheeled mobility device and can ambulate or for the comfort and convenience of the occupants.

410.1.3 Advisory. Stair lifts provide comfort and convenience for some. It allows those with diminished mobility to navigate stairs within a dwelling unit. It is not appropriate for transfer from a mobility devices since this will require a device at each level. The transfer sequence is awkward or dangerous for some. It is an economical and viable solution for some, especially for the elderly in existing buildings. Refer to the *2008 NYCBC* Section 1009.1, Exception 4 for installations regarding Group R-2 and Group R-3 occupancies.

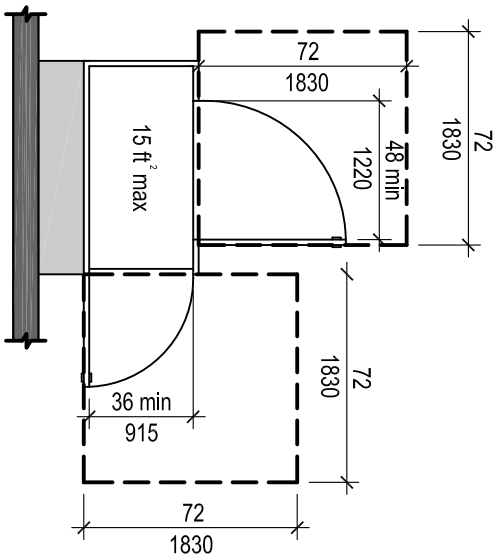
410.2 Lift Entry. Lifts with doors and gates should comply with Section 410.2.1. Lifts with ramps should comply with Section 410.2.2.

410.2.1 Doors and Gates. Doors and gates should be low energy power operated doors and gates complying with Section 404.3. Doors should remain open for 20 seconds minimum. End door clear opening width should be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.

EXCEPTION: Lifts serving two landings maximum and having doors or gates on opposite sides should be permitted to have self-closing manual doors and gates.



(a)



(b)

Fig. 410.2.1
Platform Lift Doors and Gates

410.2.1.1 Alternate Side Entry. Side entry is not recommended due to maneuvering restrictions affecting people who use mobility devices. A side entry should only be considered when it is the only viable solution due to existing conditions, the door width should be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum. The largest side door clear opening should be used while maintaining structural integrity of the platform enclosure. Provide a landing complying with Section 304 to allow sufficient maneuvering clearance to simplify entry and exit.

410.2.1.1 Advisory. The side entry requires the additional width to make the turn onto the platform. It is recommended to provide a platform width of 42 inches and a length of 60 inches for easier maneuvering staying within the 18 ft² maximum.

410.2.2 Ramps. End ramps should be at least as wide as the entry(s).

410.3 Floor Surfaces. Floor surfaces of platform lifts should comply with Section 302.

410.4 Platform to Runway Clearance. The clearance between the platform sill and the edge of any runway landing should be 1 1/4 inch (32 mm) maximum.

410.5 Clear Floor Space for Front and Rear Entry. Clear floor space of platform lifts should be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum width and 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum length complying with Section 305. Maximum platform size is 18 ft².

410.5.1 Clear Floor Space for Side Entry. Clear floor space for side entry should be 42 inches (1070 mm) minimum and 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum length. Maximum platform size is 18 ft².

410.6 Operable Parts. Controls for platform lifts should comply with Section 309. Lifts should be universally keyed operation where security and safety is an issue, especially where children may have access to the lift. Automatic operation with a continuous pressure “on” button required by code increases user independence. Refer to A18.1 section for additional relevant operational information: Section 2.10.1 Key Operation; Section 2.10.2 Attendant Operation; Section 2.10.6 Emergency Stop Switch; 2.11 Emergency Signals; Section 2.11.1 for audible signaling devices; and Section 2.11.2 for two-way communications.

410.6 Advisory. Lifts should be provided with a dedicated electrical circuit and capable of manual operation in case of power failure. Manual lowering is not allowed by occupant for safety reasons, but only by authorized personnel. It is recommended that standby power is provided for all platform lifts. It is also suggested that in addition to the required battery back up on the alarm, all units should have a hands free phone just like elevators. It is also suggested to provide a bell, whistle, small compressed air horn or other non-electrical device that can be used to alert others in case all else fails.

410.7 Front and Rear Lift Landings. Front and rear lift landing should be a clear floor space 60 inches (1830 mm) in length and 42 inches (1830 mm) in width for a direct forward approach. Provide a clear floor space 72 inches (1830 mm) in length and 72 inches (1830 mm) in width for angle or perpendicular approach to the front or rear entry.

410.7.1 Side Lift Landing. Side lift landing should be a clear floor space 72 inches (1830 mm) in length and 72 inches (1830 mm) in width.

410.7.2 Edge Protection. Provide edge protection complying with Section 405.9.2. Provide detectable warning adjacent to lift entry(s).

410.8 Emergency Communications. Emergency communications systems should comply with Section 410.8

410.8.1 Type. As per code, provide a means of two-way conversation between the car and emergency personnel. Refer to A18.1, Section 2.11.2.

410.8.2 Operable Parts. The telephone and emergency signaling device should comply with Section 309.3

410.8.3 Compartment. If the device is in an enclosed compartment, the compartment door hardware should comply with Section 309.

410.8.4 Cord. If standard telephone is used the cord should be 29 inches (735 mm) minimum in length.

410.8.5 Emergency Assistance Alarm. An audible signaling device device operable from the emergency stop switch or from a separate alarm switch is required by law. The switch, marked alarm, is required to illuminate when actuated. A signaling device must be audible inside the car and outside the runway. Refer to A18.1, Section 2.11.1 for additional information.

410.8.5.1 Dwelling Units. Platform lifts located in dwelling units should be provided with an emergency assistance alarm that is connected to a central alarm system. Consider a visual and audible annunciator on the exterior side of the primary entrance.

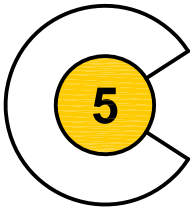
410.9 Storage. Provide recessed storage niche or compartment for lift in stationary positions at the bottom and/or top of run.

411. Portable platform lifts. Portable platform lifts should be self-contained units capable of navigating stair treads while carrying a seated person. Such units are recommended as a back-up in case of elevator power or mechanical failure, to supplement emergency systems during a fire or other emergency and as an interim means of providing vertical access during elevator maintenance. Portable platform lifts are recommended for all single elevator buildings. Units require an operator and are not intended to be occupant operated.

411 Advisory. Portable wheelchair lifts are often the only viable means of maintaining vertical access during repair, maintenance or rehabilitation of an elevator system. This is especially true in buildings containing a single elevator, where work cannot be phased. There are concerns regarding operator training, designation, hours of operation, level of convenience and minimum stair and landing clearances. At least one unit is recommended per building. Storage should be in close proximity of fire stairs and a dedicated closet should be considered for security reasons. Provide an outlet for battery charging.

412 Moving Walkways. Moving walkways should comply with Section 403.11.

412 Advisory. Moving walkways are appropriate for large scale facilities such as airports, arenas, train stations, malls. They assist a wide range of users: parents with children, the elderly, people with baggage and packages, etc. They provide efficient ingress, egress and navigation through a facility, and can be used as part of the wayfinding to direct visitors to primary spaces.



General Site and Building Elements

500 Introduction. Chapter 5 includes: parking spaces and facilities, passenger loading zones, stairways, handrails and windows.

Parking spaces and facilities comprise inclusive vehicle spaces, standard vehicle spaces, passenger loading zones, bicycle parking, carriage and stroller storage, routes, spaces for large vehicles (e.g buses), temporary parking, signage/wayfinding, weather protection, communications and lighting. An inclusive space accommodates both a car or a van, a variety of vehicles types and various entry and exit scenarios, including perpendicular configurations. Composition of the components makes a parking facility inclusive. It is not necessary and it is impractical to make all vehicle spaces inclusive due to need, size and other considerations, such as, distance from a building entrance. Inclusive spaces should be located within close proximity and with the least circuitous route to the primary entrance(s). Routes to and from inclusive parking spaces should not normally pass behind parked vehicles for safety reasons. Parking facilities may also include: temporary/metered parking, valet parking drop-off, bus drop-off, speed reducers, barriers, rest areas, etc. Provide shelters with weather protection for exposed facilities, proper lighting, wayfinding and amenities such as seating, emergency alarms and help system, telephones, trash receptacles and newspaper machines.

Bicycle/scooter/tricycle parking is broken down into Class 1 and Class 2 facilities. These cover interior and exterior locations, floor/wall/ceiling spaces, standard and inclusive space sizes, signage, aisles, floor surfaces, emergency communications, lighting, security, seating and other amenities. The recommendations accommodate and encourage the use of bicycles, scooters and tricycles to increase daily physical activity [see Section 105.3, DDC's *Active Design Guidelines: Promoting Physical Activity and Health in Design* (*ADG*)]. Scooter parking should have outlets for battery charging. Tricycle parking accommodates the elderly. Carriage, stroller and cart storage may be part of the bicycle parking or located in a separate facility. Consider guard booths at areas that contain bicycle and stroller storage and where security is an issue. Consider bicycle-share programs.

Stairways comprise treads, risers, surface, handrails, lighting, signage and communication elements, areas of refuge, and other components. Stairs are not viable for people who use mobility devices and some people with limited dexterity, but are a vital component of the vertical circulation system. They should be easy to navigate and appealing to use for the widest range of people to encourage usage to increase daily physical activity and to reduce reliance on mechanical vertical circulation systems (see *ADG above*).

Handrails benefit everyone (e.g. children, elderly, people with diminished dexterity and mobility, unsteady balance and reduced strength). Dual height handrail systems for children, used for decades in the NYC public school system, are early examples of inclusive design. Handrails can also be used as part of a comprehensive wayfinding system.

Windows examines manual and automatic choices. Manual projected, recessed and lever handle options as well as locking mechanisms and cleaning are covered. Natural illumination should be maximized, while glare should be minimized. Sunlight should be controlled to the advantage of the occupants with non-electrical means where possible (e.g., exterior shading system, awnings, overhangs, polarized and other types of glazing; blinds, shutters and shades).

Smart windows are becoming a reality. Chromogenic switchable glazing can control the flow of light and heat utilizing photochromics, thermochromics, thermotropics and electronically activated chromogenic glazings that include liquid crystals, dispersed particles and electrochromics.[1] A variety of glazing options could be used for solar control, emissivity, acoustics and other properties for diverse applications to accommodate individual needs and preferences.

Smart building skins may enhance inclusive environments by allowing a wide range of visual surface control that will compliment audible and tactile features. Times Square contains rudimentary visual applications utilizing large scale monitors. The concept and the technology could evolve to provide ultra energy efficient high resolution imaging for dynamic manipulation of all or part of a building's surface (e.g., signage, color, contrast, material, texture, architectural styles, fenestration, details, reflectivity, replication of adjacent surfaces and backgrounds, camouflaging and visual alteration of the building mass). The skin should combine with other smart window properties, also functioning as a solar collector providing power to operate the system. Smart interior walls, ceiling and floor surface areas may also become a reality. This may allow manipulation of surfaces from the exterior through the interior with micro control for specific purposes (e.g., lighting, graphics and translucency) to accommodate the needs and preferences of individual users. Eventually, surfaces (e.g., material and finish) will be digitally replicated so accurately that it will be difficult to determine if they are real with the naked eye. Architectural details could be reproduced graphically and appear true by real time control of shadows and lighting, based on the time of day, season and adjusted for weather conditions. A rather simple physical envelope could be used to create a complex 3-D surface. Essentially whatever can be reproduced electronically, can be achieved with the building skin. Part or all of the building could be wrapped and used graphically for emergencies, alerts, evacuation and for benign applications (e.g., holidays and events).

An inclusive environment should maximize the use of natural light. Computer controlled systems utilizing various transmission technologies can channel sunlight deep within a building. Automatic tracking mirror arrays for small collection areas, similar to solar power systems could increase the input. This is important for dense urban areas containing buildings with small footprints and very limited site area for collectors. This concept must be reviewed by the relevant agencies, including the FAA regarding potential visual concerns for aviation. Manipulating and channeling natural light is a very old idea that can be greatly enhanced to extend the effective transmission distance and increase output (e.g., automatic variable shape ducts, perhaps fiber optics for compact flexible transmission, distribution manifolds, variable mirror shaping, variable surface reflectivity, adjustable lenses for both collection and diffusion, color rendering and amplification technology). The quality of natural light, the positive affect on mental and physical health, and sustainability are just a few of the reasons to consider supplementing artificial lighting.

1. C.M. Lampert (1995), *Chromogenic Switchable Glazing: Towards the Development of the Smart Window*, Berkeley, CA: Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory, University of California.

501 General

501.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 5 should apply where recommended by the scoping provisions adopted by the administrative authority.

502 Parking Spaces and Facilities. Parking spaces and facilities should comply with Section 502. Inclusive spaces should comply with Section 502.1. Standard spaces and other types of spaces should comply with Section 502.2.

502 Advisory. It is not necessary and impractical to make all spaces inclusive due to size and other considerations, such as distance from a building entrance. Inclusive spaces are a component of inclusive parking accommodations. It is the composition of the components that makes the facility inclusive. This includes standard vehicle spaces, inclusive vehicle spaces, bicycle spaces, carriage and stroller storage, routes, spaces for large vehicles (e.g. buses), temporary parking, signage, wayfinding, weather protection, communications and lighting.

502.1 Inclusive Parking Spaces. Inclusive parking spaces should comply with Section 502.1. The location of these spaces should be identified for drivers entering a parking lot or structure. They should be placed as close as possible to the entry of the facility or primary destination that the spaces serve. Where the location is not obvious or is distant from the approach viewpoint, directional signage should be placed along the route leading to them.

502.1 Advisory. Inclusive parking spaces should be placed as close as possible to entrances an require the least circuitous route to the facility that they serve. They may be located in alternative locations or a separate dedicated lot if they provide more convenience such as centrally placed for access to multiple facilities. Cautiously use this solution since a separate parking lot should be directly linked to the main parking facility and may not technically meet the minimum code requirements as a stand alone lot. An alternative solution is a shuttle service that is equipped with a lift to eliminate the need to travel lengthy distances.

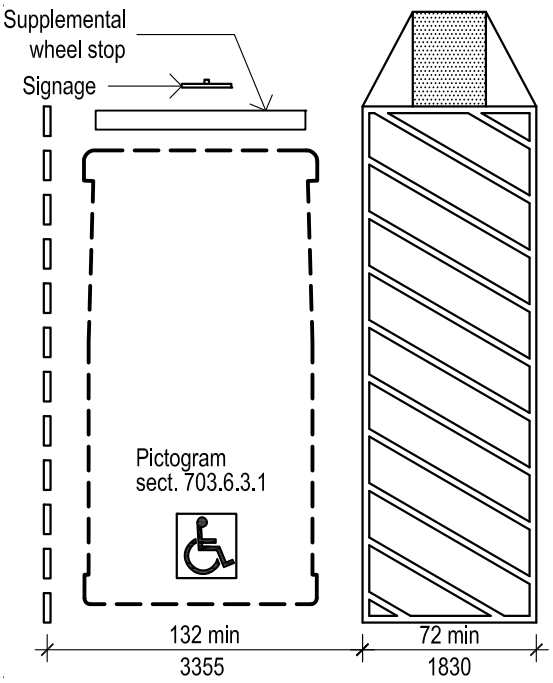


Fig. 502.1
Inclusive Parking Space

502.1.1 Number of Spaces. Provide at least one inclusive space but not less than 5 percent of the total spaces provided in each parking lot.

502.1.1.1 Treatment Facilities. Provide inclusive spaces that are at least 20 percent of the total spaces for facilities specializing in treatment or mobility services.

502.1.1.2 Outpatient Medical Facilities. Provide inclusive spaces that are at least 10 percent of the total spaces for outpatient medical facilities.

502.1.2 Space Size. Inclusive parking space design is an alternative to providing separate types of spaces for car and vans. Inclusive parking spaces utilize one accommodating size for both cars and vans, 132 inches (3350 mm) minimum in width with an adjacent access aisle 72 inches (1830 mm) minimum in width.

502.1.2 Advisory. An inclusive space accommodates a car or a van, and provides for a variety of vehicle entry and exit scenarios including perpendicular configurations. The 72 inch access aisle complies with Section 304 to allow maneuvering positions while accommodating an assistant and various vehicle equipment such as a lift or a pull out ramp. It eliminates the ratio for car and van spaces. It also accommodates other types of vehicles such as SUV's that are often used in lieu of cars or vans.

502.1.3 Vehicle Space Marking. Car and van parking spaces should be marked to define the width. The lines running the length of the space should be dashed. The width measurement of parking spaces and adjacent access aisles should be made from the centerline of the markings. The international symbol of accessibility should be centered in the space width in a blue box 24 inches (610 mm) wide and 24 inches (610 mm) long. The box should be located with the leading edge 12 inches (305 mm) from the entry end of the space. Marking within the box should be in white. The international symbol of accessibility should comply with Section 703.6.3.1.

502.1.4 Access Aisle. Inclusive parking spaces should have an adjacent aisle complying with Section 502.1.4. Two inclusive spaces may share one access aisle.

502.1.4.1 Location. Access aisles should adjoin an accessible route. Access aisles should not overlap with the vehicular way. Consider access aisles placed on either side of the inclusive parking space. Parking spaces that are angled should have access aisles located on the passenger side of the parking space.

502.1.4.2 Width. Access aisles serving inclusive parking spaces should be 72 inches (1830 mm) in width.

502.1.4.3 Length. Access aisles should extend the full length of the parking spaces that they serve and should comply with 502.1 for depth.

502.1.4.4 Marking. Access aisles should be marked to discourage parking in them. Access aisles should be marked with lines. The width measurements of access aisles and adjacent parking spaces should be made from the centerline of the markings. Markings should be 45 degree diagonal 4 inch (100 mm) wide stripes in blue at 24 inches (610 mm) on center. All markings should comply with DOT regulations or authority having jurisdiction. Consider inserting "NO PARKING" on aisle surface complying with Section 703.2.

502.1.5 Floor Surfaces. Inclusive parking spaces and access aisles should comply with Section 302 and have surface slopes not steeper than 1:48. Access aisles should be the same level as the parking spaces they serve. Avoid drainage grates, manholes, and any other potential obstructions or hazards, including vegetation.

502.1.6 Vertical Clearance. Inclusive parking spaces, access aisles serving them, and vehicular routes from an entrance to the inclusive parking spaces to a vehicular exit serving them should provide a vertical clearance of 98 inches (2490 mm) minimum. Consider 114 inches (2892 mm) for larger vehicles.

502.1.7 Identification. Signage should comply with Section 502.1.7, Section 703 and Section 709.

502.1.7.1 Above Grade Identification. Inclusive parking spaces should be identified by above grade signs that include the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with Section 703.6.3.1. Signs identifying inclusive parking spaces should contain the designation "Car/Van Accessible." Such signs should be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum above the floor of the parking space, measured to the bottom of the sign. In large parking facilities it is critical to provide a simple indication of wayfinding for both locating the entrance of the building and to locate the inclusive spaces. Level, compass direction, and zone information should make it easier to locate inclusive spaces within the facility using a unique color, level number and compass direction. Signage should be located overhead, wall and floor surface mounted. Provide large scale signage that is properly illuminated

for distance reading from a moving vehicle at key points. Include pictograms.

502.1.7.2 Locations. Signage for inclusive parking should be located at key points including facility entrances, reference points or landmarks, bicycle parking, shelters, bathrooms, drinking fountains, telephones, rest areas, etc. Provide directional signage for both vehicle and bicycle parking. Refer to Section 502.3.7. Provide additional signage along the vehicle and pedestrian routes to inclusive spaces. Consider orientation maps.

502.1.8 Relationship to Routes. Parking spaces and access aisles should be designed so that cars/vans, when parked, cannot obstruct the required clear width of adjacent routes. Routes from inclusive parking should comply with Section 402 and not pass behind parked vehicles and should not have an irregular texture, ridges, rough or uneven surfaces, or large or protruding joints.

502.1.9 Curb Ramps. Sidewalks located adjacent to an access aisle should contain a curb ramp to navigate elevation change and should comply with Section 406.

502.1.10 Supplemental Wheel Stops. Consider supplemental wheel stops to prevent vehicle from conflicting with adjacent route or signage. Locate edge of bumper that touches wheel 30 inches (765 mm) from edge of sidewalk or pedestrian route edge. Do not use stops if they conflict with snow removal.

502.2 Parking Facilities

502.2.1 General. Parking facilities should comply with Section 502.2 and the *2008 NYCBC*, *NYC Zoning Resolution*, DOT regulations and other applicable rules and regulations.

502.2.1 Advisory. Refer to the NYC Department of Transportation web site regarding rules and regulations relating to parking spaces, road markings and other relevant requirements under their jurisdiction. Minimum space size as per *NYC Zoning Resolution*, Section 36-52 and Section 25-62, is 18 feet long and eight feet, six inches wide. Residential width may be reduced to eight feet wide under some conditions.

502.2.2 Large Spaces. Provide separate alternate parking spaces for buses, RV's, and other large vehicles. Provide sufficient meeting/waiting area space that will accommodate the entire number of passengers for each vehicle. This is especially important for group control. Provide benches and amenities in close proximity. Consider providing shelters.

502.2.3 Temporary Parking. Provide temporary parking area(s) with short duration metered parking and passenger loading zones to prevent double parking, congestion and vehicle conflicts.

502.2.4 Valet Parking /Shuttle Service. Provide valet parking, tram/bus/car and other shuttle services in large parking facilities such as long term parking in airports, stadium parking, malls, etc. where spaces may be located a long distance from facility, destination or entry.

502.2.5 Access Points. Differentiate and provide a distance between vehicle entrances and exits into the parking areas to control traffic flow, reduce vehicle conflicts and confusion, and enhance wayfinding.

502.2.6 Speed Reduction. Provide speed bumps at intervals of no more than 100 feet, bold street bed signage, ribbed tactile indicators, and other graphics such as stripping, strategically located in parking lot to maintain slow speed to reduce hazards and conflicts between pedestrians and vehicles. Where pedestrian and recreation routes conflict with vehicle speed bumps, provide an inclusive route either around or through a portion of it.

502.2.7 Barriers. Provide a physical means of separating pedestrians from car, bicycle/recreational lane and traffic. This may be accomplished by providing a raised area or edge (with cuts or ramps as necessary to allow perpendicular crossing), detectable warnings, bollards, railing, planters, landscape elements such as trees, and shrubs.

502.2.8 Emergency Communications. Provide emergency alarms in isolated areas and distances from entry complying with Section 702.2 and two way communication complying with Section 708.

502.2.9 Lighting. Lighting levels should be higher at inclusive parking spaces, rest areas, bicycle racks, carriage/stroller/cart storage. Provide separate signage lighting. Provide general lighting throughout.

502.2.10 Rest Areas. In large uncovered parking areas, provide weather protected rest areas such as shelters with benches complying with Section 903. Provide higher illumination level and provide emergency communications complying with Section 702.2 and two way communication complying with Section 708.

502.2.10 Advisory. General lighting may be in conflict with environmentally sensitive recommendations, since it is suggested to eliminate general lot lighting to reduce energy consumption. As an alternative it is recommended to provide lighting limited to pedestrian routes and at key location such as intersections or potential conflicts between vehicle, pedestrian and recreational lanes and where security is a concern.

502.2.11 Signage. In large parking facilities it is critical to provide a simple indication of wayfinding for both locating the entrance of the building and to locate the inclusive spaces. Level, compass direction, and zone should be made easier to identifying and locate by identify each area within the facility with a unique color, level number and compass direction. Signage should be located overhead as well as mounted on wall and floor surfaces mounted. Provide large scale properly lighted signage for distance reading from a moving vehicle located at key points. Include pictograms.

502.2.11.1 Locations. Signage should be located at key points including facility entrances, reference points or landmarks, bicycle parking, shelters, bathrooms, drinking fountains, telephones, rest areas, etc. Provide directional signage for vehicle pedestrian and recreational use. Consider orientation maps.

502.2.12 Pedestrian Wayfinding. Provide pedestrian multisensory wayfinding system that complies with Section 714.2.1 for visual, Section 714.2.2 for Tactile and Section 714.2.3 for Auditory. Provide landscape elements complying with Section 714.3, architectural elements complying with Section 714.4. Refer to Section 714 Wayfinding for a complete list of recommendations including hierarchy, consistency, site entry, exterior routes, configuration and exterior entrances.

502.2.13 Supplemental Wheel Stops. Consider supplemental wheel stops to prevent vehicle from conflicting with adjacent route or signage. Locate edge of bumper that touches wheel 30 inches (765 mm) from edge of sidewalk or pedestrian route edge. Do not use stops if they conflict with snow removal.

502.3 Bicycle/Scooter/Tricycle Parking

502.3.1 General. Bicycle/scooter/tricycle parking should comply with Section 502.3. There are two types of bicycle parking: Class 1 and Class 2 facilities. Each parking space must be usable without moving another bicycle. Refer to the *Zoning Resolution* for additional provisions (e.g., number of spaces, distance from main entrance, requirements for the various building classification) and DOT's Cityracks Program. Provide parking near mass transit (park and ride), venues, attractions, etc. See the DOT's *Street Design Manual* (See Section 105.3, and 402.4.3 Advisory), a comprehensive resource that includes bike racks, bike shelters and other bicycle relevant topics. Also see DDC's *Active Design Guidelines: Promoting Physical Activity and Health in Design* (see Section 105.3).

502.3.1.1 Class 1 Facilities. Class 1 bicycle parking is a secure and weather protected area for long-term parking that includes lockers or controlled access areas where bicycles can be stored. These facilities are generally used for residents, employees, commuters and others who need to park their bicycles for several hours, and are usually indoors.

502.3.1.2 Class 2 Facilities. Class 2 bicycle parking facilities are designed for short-term use for shoppers, customers, messengers, visitors, and other uses. These facilities are usually outdoors and open to the public.

502.3.2 Locations. Parking should be located in close proximity and with a direct route to the primary entrance(s), rest room and other amenities in a secure weather protected area and if provided, within close proximity of a security booth. Parking spaces should be located on the same zoning lot as the use served.

502.3.2 Advisory. A Bicycle-share program allows short term use of public bicycles. Docking locations should be numerous and accommodate anticipated peak usage (e.g. rush hours). They may be provided with electronic card readers, computerized bike stands and purpose designed bicycles.

502.3.2.1 Interior Locations. Interior parking locations may consist of placement in an open area with racks or within a separate enclosed area or a separate room. A separate room should have direct access to amenities (e.g. changing room, shower(s), unisex restroom or bathroom).

502.3.2.2 Exterior Locations. Exterior parking locations should be away from areas of congestion and, if possible, adjacent to spaces where visitors can wait, e.g. plazas or shelters. Class 2 facilities should be well lighted and highly visible. Avoid conflict with public transportation stops, fire hydrants, standpipes, street trees, street signs, parking meters, utility access, doors, transformer vaults, subway grates, etc. Provide easy to use, secure parking that does not conflict with vehicle or pedestrian routes. Locate parking under a roof, overhang, or provide a shelter complying with Section 402.6. Provide weather protection and proper drainage for exterior locations. Provide parking at key features (e.g. transit stops).

502.3.3 Number of Inclusive Spaces. Provide at least one inclusive space for scooter/tricycle parking but not less than 5 percent of the total spaces provided in each bicycle parking location. Increase this percentage to accommodate the users for certain types of facilities (e.g. senior centers, stores, government offices and medical facilities).

502.3.4 Floor/Wall/Ceiling Spaces. Parking facilities and racks can be affixed to the floor or ground, the wall, or from the ceiling.

502.3.5 Standard Bicycle Space Size. Each bicycle parking space should be least 72 inches (1830 mm) in length and 30 inches (760 mm) in width or 15 square feet minimum. Provide 36 inches (915 mm) between parallel bicycle racks and a 72 inch (1830 mm) wide aisle between bicycle rack areas. Some vertical parking systems (e.g. wall, ceiling, double stack) are often a more efficient use of space but have different spacing requirements.

502.3.6 Inclusive Space Size. The inclusive space should accommodate a range of mobility devices including a scooter and tricycle. The space size should have a minimum width of 36 inches (915 mm) and a minimum length of 72 inches (1830 mm). The inclusive space provides additional maneuvering space to accommodate those riders that have diminished physical dexterity. It allows sufficient maneuvering clearance for seated transfer.

502.3.7 Signage. Inclusive spaces and access aisles should be marked to discourage parking in them. Aisles should be marked with lines. Markings should be 45 degree diagonals 1 inch (25.4 mm) wide stripes in blue at 12 inches (305 mm) on center. Provide free standing or wall mounted signage with the international symbol with a scooter and tricycle image and a “Bicycle Parking” sign outside of each parking area.

502.3.7.1 Commercial Districts and Garage Signage. Bicycle parking in commercial districts and vehicle parking garages should be clearly visible and obvious from the public right-of-way and directional signage should be provided. Contact information with names and telephone numbers should be provided if parking is unattended.

502.3.7.2 Class 2 Facilities Signage. Class 2 facilities should have additional signage clarifying that building management is not liable for theft or damage to bicycles, scooters and tricycles.

502.3.8 Aisle. Inclusive parking spaces located within an enclosed area or room should have an aisle(s) a minimum of 72 inches (1830 mm) in width. An aisle should provide maneuvering clearance for parking and retrieving. It should also allow a rider to mount and dismount and maneuvering for the inclusive space(s).

502.3.9 Floor Surfaces. Floor surfaces should comply with Section 302 and have surface slopes not steeper than 1:48. Drainage should be provided to prevent accumulation of water. Aisles should be the same level as the parking spaces they serve. Avoid drainage grates, manholes, and any other potential obstructions or hazards, including vegetation.

502.3.10 Emergency Communications. Provide emergency alarms in isolated areas and distances from entry complying with Section 702.2 and two way communication complying with Section 708.

502.3.11 Lighting. Parking space lighting levels should be higher than ambient lighting. Provide separate signage lighting. Provide adequate general lighting for both usage and security.

502.3.12 Security. Security may be self provided (e.g. chain with lock, loop, etc) or automatic. Automatic locks should comply with Section 309 operable parts. All facilities should have racks that are permanently secured. U-racks are often preferred for outdoor bicycle parking because they are standardized, cost effective, allow securing of both the frame and wheels of a bicycle, and can accommodate two bicycles.

502.3.12.1 Class 1 Security. Class 1 facilities offer the highest level of security for bicycle parking. Dedicated rooms and fenced-off or enclosed areas in residential or office buildings can be limited to bicycle owners and management. Facility may be accessed with magnetic key card, key, or other electronic or manual means. Provide security camera and increase surveillance level by locating adjacent to a security booth or facility.

502.3.13 Seating. Provide seating complying with Section 903

502.3.14 Amenities. Amenities include a water fountain complying with Section 602; unisex restroom complying with Section 603.1.1 or 603.1.2, or a changing area; a waste receptacle complying with Section 906; telephone complying with Section 704, lockers complying with Section 803.6, and other amenities. Provide an electrical outlet for each scooter space for battery charging complying with Section 308.

502.4 Carriage , Stroller, Cart Storage. Carriage, stroller, cart storage should be included either as part of the Bicycle and Scooter/Tricycle Parking, or as a separate storage facility specifically for carriage, stroller and cart. It should comply with Sections 502.3.1, 502.3.2, 502.3.9, 502.3.10, 502.3.11, 502.3.12, 502.3.13 (include seating for children), and 502.3.14 (water fountain and waste receptacle).

503 Passenger Loading Zones.

503.1 General. Passenger loading zones should comply with Section 503. Vehicles entering and exiting the loading zones should not create a conflict with through traffic. Loading zones should be sized to accommodate peak usage periods.

503.1.1 Locations. Locate loading zone in close proximity and with direct routes to entrances and other features. Locate away from areas of congestion and if possible, adjacent to spaces where visitors can wait, (e.g. plazas or shelters.) Avoid conflict with public transportation stops, fire hydrants, standpipes, street trees, street signs, parking meters, utility access, doors, transformer vaults, subway grates, etc.

503.2 Vehicle Pull-up Space Size. Passenger loading zones should provide a vehicle pull-up space 96 inches (2440 mm) to 132 inches (3355 mm) in width and 20 feet (6100 mm) minimum in length. A 96 inch (2440 mm) wide pull-up space should only be considered where existing conditions do not allow the wider width.

503.3 Access Aisle. Passenger loading zones should have an adjacent access aisle complying with Section 503.3.

503.3 Advisory. It is important that the access aisle and route are outside of the vehicular route. Due to the limited parking and congestion in the City an alternative was considered that designates one or two on-street parking spaces as a passenger drop-off. This would require direct access to the sidewalk level without entering the street bed. It is not considered a viable solution due to mobility device access, difficulty of vehicle entering and exiting without going in reverse, and enforcement to keep the space clear of illegally parked vehicles. There is also the possibility of passengers being dropped off improperly on the street side rather than the sidewalk side, especially for vehicles with side perpendicular ramps. This not only raises serious passenger safety issues, but may result in street blockage during drop-off.

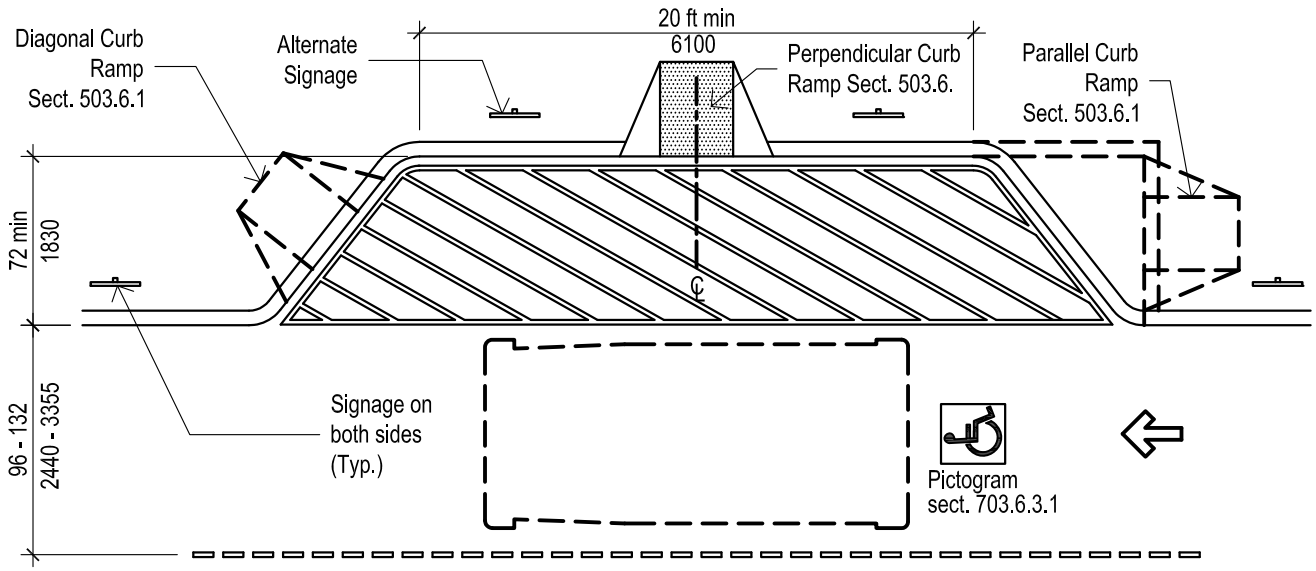


Fig. 503
Passenger Loading Zone with Alternate Curb Cut Locations

503.3.1 Location. Access aisles should adjoin a route. Access aisles should not overlap the vehicular way.

503.3.2 Width. Access aisles serving vehicle pull-up spaces should be 72 inches (1830 mm) to 96 inches (2440 mm) in width.

503.3.3 Length. Access aisles should be 20 feet (6100 mm) minimum in length.

503.3.4 Marking. Access aisles should be marked with lines to discourage parking in them. Markings should be 45 degree diagonal 4 inch (100 mm) wide stripes in blue at 24 inches (610 mm) on center. Provide the words “Passenger Loading Zone” at the entry of the vehicle pull-up space. Provide immediately above these words, the international symbol of accessibility centered in the pull-up space width in a blue box 24 inches (610 mm) wide and 24 inches (610 mm) long as shown in Fig. 503.3 Marking within the box should be in white. The international symbol of accessibility should comply with Section 703.6.3.1.

503.4 Floor Surfaces. Vehicle pull-up spaces and access aisles serving them should comply with Section 302 and should have slopes not steeper then 1:48. Access aisles should be at the same level as the vehicle pull-up space they serve. Avoid drainage grates, manholes, and any other potential obstructions or hazards, including vegetation. Access aisles should not conflict with local sidewalk clearances and adjacent clearances for improvements and existing objects such as public transportation entrances or stops, fire hydrants, street trees, cellar hatchways, benches, telephone booths, mail boxes, street lights, street signs, parking meters, sewers, transformer vaults, subway and other types of grates, curbs and obstructions.

503.4.1 Alternate Sidewalk Access Aisle. Consider direct access to sidewalk adjacent to vehicle pull-up space where space does not permit location of an access aisle in street bed.

503.4.1 Advisory. Normally direct sidewalk access is not allowed, since the drop-off should occur in an access aisle in the road bed. This requires a curb ramp to navigate the curb height. A curb ramp is not practical on narrow sidewalks since it will create a perpendicular slope across the width of the pedestrian route. An alternative may be to place curb ramps at the ends of the access aisle.

503.5 Vertical Clearance. Vehicle pull-up spaces, access aisles serving them, and vehicular route from an entrance to the passenger loading zone, and from the passenger loading zone to a vehicular exit serving them, should provide a vertical clearance of 114 inches (2895 mm).

503.5 Advisory. Vertical clearance has been increased from the standard 98 inches to 114 inches to accommodate high top vans and paratransit vehicles and other large vehicles.

503.6 Perpendicular Curb Ramps. A perpendicular curb ramp should be centered on the length of the zone to navigate the elevation change from road bed to sidewalk level and should comply with Section 406. Width of ramp should comply with Section 406.4.

503.6.1 Parallel or Diagonal Curb Ramps. Parallel or diagonal curb ramps may be considered for the ends of the access aisle, but may require railings to address drop-offs if flares cannot be provided. Width of ramp should comply with Section 406.4.

503.7 Above Grade Identification. Provide signs including the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with Section 703.6.3.1 identifying the loading zone. Such signs should be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum above the floor loading zone, measured to the bottom of the sign. Signs should be placed on the adjacent floor or sidewalk at both ends of the zone.

503.8 Pedestrian Wayfinding. Provide pedestrian multisensory wayfinding system that complies with Section 714.2.1 for visual, Section 714.2.2 for Tactile and Section 714.2.3 for Auditory. Provide landscape elements complying with Section 714.3, architectural elements complying with Section 714.4. Refer to Section 714 Wayfinding for a complete list of recommendations including hierarchy, consistency, site entry, exterior routes, configuration and exterior entrances.

503.9 Weather Protection. Provide weather protection along the adjacent sidewalk for the entire length of the loading zone. Weather protection may include roofed areas, overhangs, shelters, building drive through, etc.. A minimum sidewalk clear width of 8'-0" should be maintained or per DOT regulations. Shelter should comply with Section 402.6

503.10 Lighting. Lighting for passenger loading zones should be illuminated higher than adjacent areas.

504 Stairways

504.1 General. Stairs should comply with 504.

504.1 Advisory. Stairways should be wide enough to anticipate peak load demand that may exceed the code egress requirements. Stairways should be kept out of the direct path of travel, but located on primary routes, near entrances and elevators and obvious locations. See Section 105.3, DDC's *Active Design Guidelines*, that promotes increased physical activity through stair usage.

504.2 Treads and Risers. All steps on a flight of stairs should have a uniform riser height and uniform tread depth. Risers should be 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 7 inches (180 mm) maximum in height. Treads should be 11 inches (280 mm) minimum and 14 inches (355 mm) maximum in depth. Stairways should have no more than 10 risers between landings. This should not apply to required exit stairs.

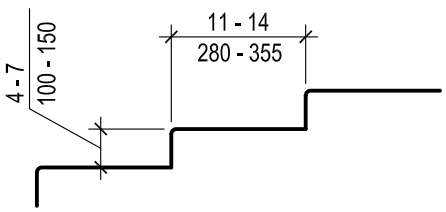


Fig. 504.2
Tread Depth and Riser Heights

504.2 Advisory. Avoid conflicts with the code. Note that 2008 NYC Building Code makes exceptions for riser and tread dimensions for some residential occupancies.

504.2.1 Width. All steps on a flight of stairs should have a uniform minimum clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) between handrails. *NYCBC,* Section 1005.1 may require a large minimum egress width. *NYCBC* Section 1007.3 requires 48 inches minimum, with exceptions. *NYCBC*, Section 1009.1, requires 44 inches minimum, with exceptions. Width should anticipate the expected volume during peak period usage.

504.2.1 Advisory. Care should be taken to avoid code conflicts (see *2008 NYCBC,* Sections 1009.1, 1007.3 and 1005.1). Wider stairs are encouraged to accommodate two-way traffic and increase usability. Consider wide open communicating non-egress stairs between two floors (e.g., 72 inches or greater). Note that the *NYCBC* minimum stair width exceptions for some residential occupancies.

504.2.2 Top and Bottom Tread. Top and bottom tread of each stair flight and landings to be distinguished

504.3 Safety Hazards. Open risers, single steps, spiral stairs, winding or curved stairways and any stair that is not uniform in width and height are safety hazards and are not recommended. Identify potential hazards with both tactile and visual warnings including color, contrast and texture.

504.4 Tread Surface. Stair treads should comply with Section 302 and should have a slope not steeper than 1:48. Avoid glare from reflective surfaces. Tread should be sloped towards nosing to prevent water and ice accumulation.

504.5 Nosings. The radius of the curvature at the leading edge of the tread should be 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum. Nosings that project beyond risers should have the underside of the leading edge curved or beveled. Risers should be permitted to slope under the tread at an angle of 30 degrees maximum from vertical. The permitted projection of the nosing should be 1 ½ inches (38 mm) maximum over the tread or floor below. The leading 2 inches (51 mm) of the tread should have visual contrast of dark-on-light or light-on-dark from the remainder of the tread complying with Section 302.10. Consider the use of an abrasive strip where there is a potential slip hazard.

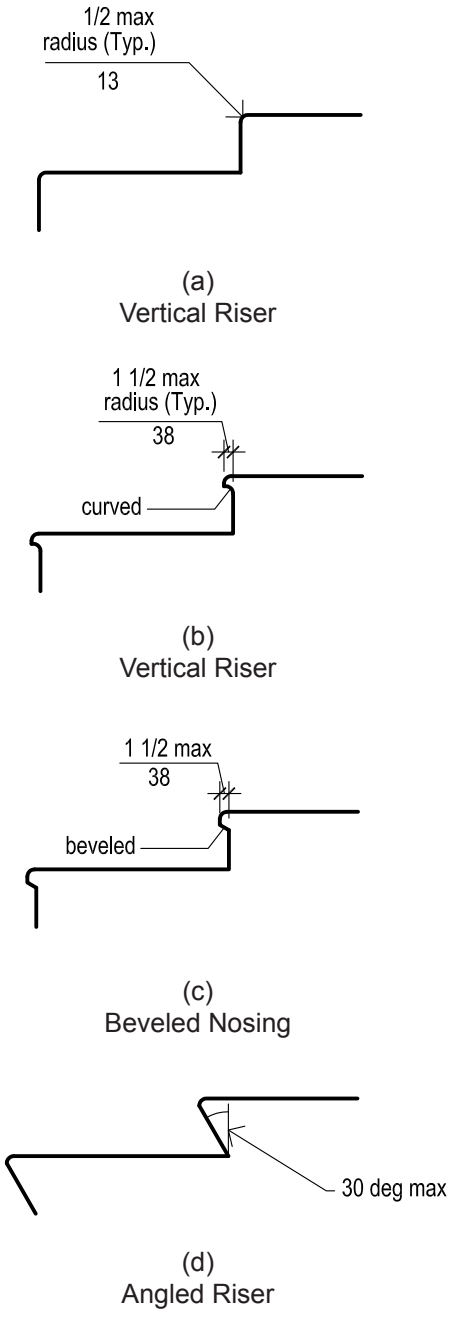


Fig. 504.5
Tread and Riser Profiles

504.6 Handrails. Stairs should have dual height handrails complying with Section 505 on both sides of stairs.

504.7 Weather Conditions. Stairs subject to water conditions should comply with Section 504.7

504.7.1 Wet Conditions. Stair treads and landings subject to wet conditions should be sloped towards nosing and drained to prevent the accumulation of water and ice.

504.7.2 Weather Protection. Provide weather protection for exterior stairs. Where possible, locate under overhangs or provide climate-protected areas.

504.7.3 Snow/Ice Accumulation. Stairs subject to snow/ice accumulation should be provided with an automatic ice melt system.

504.8 Lighting. Provide lighting in accordance with 504.8

504.8.1 Lighting. Lighting level should be provided as per Section 504.8.1.

504.8.1.1 Interior Luminance Level. Lighting facilities system should be capable of providing 10 foot-candles (108 lux) of luminance measured at the center of tread surfaces and on landing surfaces within 24 inches (610 mm) of step nosings. Lighting source should come from overhead. Illuminate treads evenly, reduce glare and avoid strong shadows. Light fixtures should be indirect or shielded. Provide 100-200 lux wherever the visitor is required to read text.

504.8.1.2 Exterior Luminance Level. Lighting system should provide same standard as required for interior applications. The source of illumination should provide color rendering which is not deficient in the blue spectrum. Fixture should be placed so that light patterns intersect at 84 inches (2100 mm) above the ground. Provide 100-200 lux wherever the visitor is required to read text.

504.8.2 Lighting Controls. If provided, occupancy-sensing automatic controls should activate the stairway lighting so the luminance level required by Section 504.8.1 is provided on the entrance landing, each stair flight adjacent to the entrance landing, and on the landings above and below the entrance landing prior to any step being used.

504.9 Stair Level Identification. Stair level identification signs in tactile characters complying with Section 703.3 should be located at each floor level landing in all enclosed stairways. Signs should be located adjacent to the door leading from the stairwell into the corridor to identify the floor level. The exit door discharging to the outside or to the level of exit discharge should have a tactile sign stating “EXIT.” All exit path signs should be photo luminescent materials The signs should be washable, non-toxic, non-radioactive, and if subjected to fire must be self-extinguishing when the flame is removed. Provide stair level identification in Braille on railing in accordance with Section 505.10.4

504.9.1 Supplemental Signage. Provide supplemental signage as per Section 703.

504.10 Stair Landings. Stair landings should be as wide as the stair that it serves at a clear depth of 72 inches minimum. Landings to be based on anticipated volume during peak periods and are required to meet or exceed minimum local code requirements. Landings serving two stair runs or a u-type stair should be provided with a clear floor space complying with Section 305.

504.10 Advisory. A 72 x72 inch landing should accommodate most user configurations including a rest area for those who have difficulty navigating the stairs and to avoid a conflict with two-way traffic. It will also accommodate a portable wheelchair lift for emergency situations and under some installations the use of an inclined platform lift. Consider providing seating complying with Section 903 at landings of large stair assemblies. The increased depth of the 72-inch landing may be problematic or not feasible in some existing buildings.

504.11 Area of Rescue Assistance. Provide an area of rescue assistance adjacent to fire stairs or within fire stairs and distributed throughout a building or facility for those that may be cut off from means of egress or cannot navigate a stair. The entire building should be sprinkled in addition to areas of rescue assistance. An area of rescue assistance should accommodate a minimum of two clear floor spaces complying with Section 305 and an additional space for every 100 occupants that are served by the area. Area of Rescue Assistance sign and directional signage to them should be illuminated and photo luminescent. Provide a bench complying with Section 903.3 Areas of rescue assistance should be protected by a smoke proof enclosure with a minimum fire rating of two hours for all surfaces including floor, walls, ceilings and doors. The area of rescue assistance may be located adjacent to fire stairs and should be a separate vestibule. Additional locations should be considered. Do not conflict with building code requirements. See *NYCBC* Section 1007.6 for minimum requirements for size, separation, two-way communications, instructions and identification. Also, see *NYCBC* Section 1007.8.

504.11 Advisory. Nothing contained in this section regarding an area of rescue assistance is intended to reduce or conflict with code requirements. In addition to *NYCBC* Section 1007.6 these are relevant: 709, 903.3.1.1, 903.3.1.2 1007.2, 1007.3, 1007.4, 1015.1, 1019.1 and 1011.2. The level of safety could be increased and to provide whatever is necessary and viable to help occupants survive until help can reach them. Some, including people with disabilities, the elderly, or those who are incapable of evacuating, should at least have an area that can protect them within a short distance from where they are located and on an inclusive route. The area of rescue assistance should function even under catastrophic circumstances, including an explosion or a seismic event. Spatial requirements for multiple occupant areas of rescue assistance may be difficult to achieve in existing buildings.

504.11.1 Communication Elements. Provide detectable warning complying with Section 705, located adjacent and directly in front of route side of door; visual and tactile signals complying with Section 703; symbols complying with Sections 703.6.3.1, 703.6.3.2, 703.6.3.3 and 703.6.3.4; two-way communications complying with Section 708 (see *NYCBC* 1007.6.3), including two-way visual; emergency assistance alarm complying with Section 702.2 and an Information/Navigation Reference Point System complying with Section 708.7. Visual, tactile and audible signage requires identification and instruction (see *NYCBC* 1007.6.4 and 1007.6.5).

504.11.2 Safety Equipment. Provide within the area of refuge, fire extinguisher, independent/portable air supply with face masks, independent signaling devices including an air horn, bell or whistles and other non-electric devices that will produce enough noise to locate a trapped occupant. Provide emergency lighting, flashlights and chemical flares. Consider providing first-aid kits.

504.12 Detectable Warnings. Raised strip detectable warnings should be provided on each landing and located adjacent to the beginning and end of each stair flight and at the exit discharge point and should comply with Section 705. The detectable warning should be as wide as the stair and exit discharge width and 24 inches (610 mm) in depth. Provide supplemental signage as per Section 504.9.1 at main exit discharge points. Detectable warning material should be fireproof.

504.13 Audible and Visual Signaling System. Provide audible signaling systems, such as a standard recording, with evacuation and emergency instructions, under fire service control to help direct people along the best possible route during an evacuation and to provide other instructions during an emergency. Alarms should comply with Section 702. Provide directional embedded floor lights along emergency egress route as per Chapter 7.

504.14 Communications. Provide two-way communication at all critical points and in all remote areas in accordance with Section 708, and specifically with Section 708.5 for two-way visual communications. Consider the use of 708.7 Information/navigation reference point system.

505 Handrails

505.1 General. Handrails should comply with Section 505.

505.1 Advisory. Handrails benefit everyone from the elderly to children; especially people with diminished dexterity , mobility, balance and strength. Dual handrail systems provide dedicated handrails for children's use. They have been used effectively in the NYC schools for many years. Handrails can also be used as part of a comprehensive wayfinding system providing both general and guidance to specific spaces.

505.2 Location. Dual handrails should be provided on both sides of stairs and ramps, but are not limited to these applications

EXCEPTION: Aisle stairs and aisle ramps provided with a handrail either at the side or within the aisle width.

505.2.1 Supplemental Locations. Handrail locations are not limited to just stairs and ramps, they may be used along corridors, balconies and parapets, elevators, along guardrails, pathways and various exterior applications, as a means of wayfinding, as a cuing device, as well as providing support for these who need it.

1. It is recommended that children's facilities contain handrails in corridors to provide a cueing device that assist supervision, group control and wayfinding. Handrails and other amenities, scale the facility down contributing to the children's comfort.
2. Handrails should be considered both internally and externally to assist in wayfinding along routes, not just to support people as they navigate a level change.

3. Handrails should be continuous from a flight of stairs or ramp along a route to specific locations or as a general wayfinding system for a building or complex. Handrail system provides a wayfinding system for people with visual disabilities as well as others for general guidance.

505.2.1 Advisory. Note that many senior residences include handrails on at least one side of corridors. Continuity of handrails from stairways to specific locations as a wayfinding system may be difficult, since stairs are often separated from corridors or lobbies by partitions. Contemporary design philosophy is to make facilities (e.g hospitals, schools, and residences) feel less institutional, so care should be taken regarding integration and aesthetics of the handrail system. It may be possible to integrate the handrails as moldings to reduce the visual impact.

505.3 Continuity. Handrails should be continuous within the full length of each stair flight or ramp run. Inside handrails on switchback or dogleg stairs or ramps should be continuous between flights or runs. Other handrails should comply with Sections 505.10 and 307.

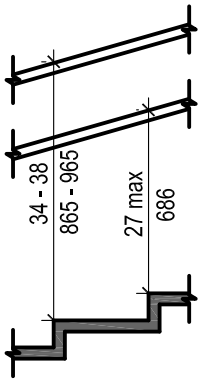
EXCEPTION: Handrails in aisles serving seating.

505.4 Height. Handrail heights should comply with Section 505.4.1 and 505.4.2

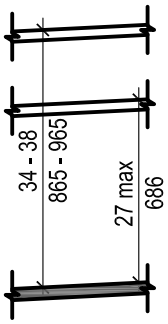
505.4.1 Upper Adult Handrail Height. Top of gripping surfaces of the upper handrails should be 34 inches (865 mm) minimum and 38 inches (965 mm) maximum vertically above stair nosing, ramp surface or walking surface.

505.4.2 Lower Child Handrail Height. Top of the gripping surfaces of the lower handrails should be 27 inches (690 mm) maximum vertically above stair nosing, ramp surface, or walking surface. Sufficient vertical clearance between upper and lower handrails, 9 inches (230 mm) minimum, should be provided to help prevent entrapment.

505.5 Clearance. Clearance between handrail gripping surface and adjacent surface should be 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum.



(a)



(b)

Fig. 505.4
Dual Handrail Heights

505.5 Advisory. Where handrails are affixed to a wall, consider increasing the contrast to enhance visibility for appropriate building types (e.g. institutional).

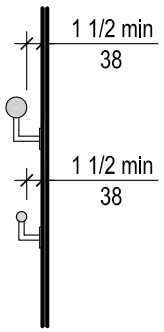


Fig. 505.5
Handrail Clearance

505.6 Gripping surfaces. Gripping surfaces should be continuous, without interruption by newel posts, other construction elements, or obstructions.

EXCEPTIONS:

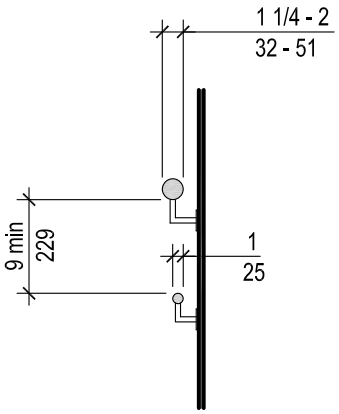
1. Handrail brackets or balusters attached to the bottom surface of the handrail should not be considered obstructions, provided they comply with the following criteria:

a. No more than 20 percent of the handrail length is obstructed.

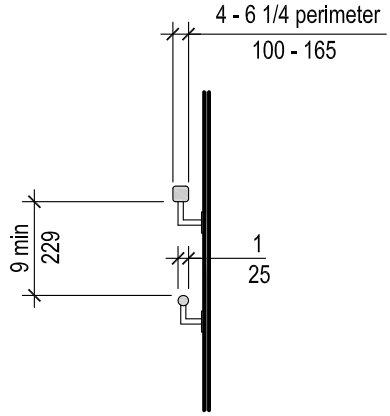
b. Horizontal projections beyond the sides of the handrail occur 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum below the bottom of the handrail, and provided that for each ½ inch (13 mm) of additional handrail perimeter dimension above 4 inches (100 mm), the vertical clearance dimension of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) can be reduced by 1/8 inch (3.2 mm), and edges should be rounded.

2. Where handrails are provided along walking surfaces with slopes not steeper than 1:20, the bottom of handrail gripping surfaces should be permitted to be obstructed along their entire length where they are integral to crash rails or bumper guards.

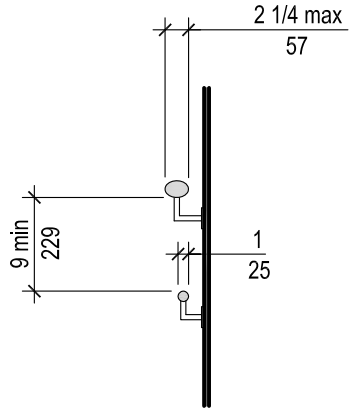
505.7 Cross Section. Handrails should have a cross Section complying with Section 505.7.1 or 505.7.2.



(a)
Circular



(b)
Non-Circular



(c)
Non-Circular

Fig. 505.7
Handrail Cross Section

505.7.1 Adult Circular Cross Section. Handrails designed for adult use should have a circular cross section with an outside diameter of 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum.

505.7.1.1 Children's Circular Cross Section. Handrails designed for children's use should have a circular cross section with an outside diameter of 1 inch (25.4 mm).

505.7.2 Adult Non-circular Cross Section. Adult handrails with a non circular cross section should have a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 6-1/2 inches (160 mm) maximum and a cross-section dimension of 2 1/4 inches (57 mm) maximum.

505.7.2.1 Children's Non-circular Cross Section. Children's handrails should not have a non circular cross-section.

505.8 Surfaces. Handrails, and any wall or other surfaces adjacent to them, should be free of any sharp or abrasive elements. Edges should be eased.

505.9 Fittings. Handrails should not rotate within their fittings.

505.10 Handrail Extensions. Handrails should extend beyond and in the same direction of stair flights and ramp runs in accordance with Section 505.10.

EXCEPTIONS:

1. Continuous handrails at the inside turn of stairs and ramps.
2. Extensions are not required for handrails seating where the handrails are discontinuous to provide access to seating and to permit crossovers within the aisle.
3. In alterations, full extensions of handrails should not be required where such extensions would be hazardous due to plan configuration.

505.10 Advisory. The typical extension for a free standing handrail shows a variable height return to the vertical support. This may be confusing regarding the minimum height or configuration of the return. The primary reason for the return is to prevent a hazardous condition where a handrail end juts out into space. The code solution is often considered too restrictive since it limits the end condition for this type of application.

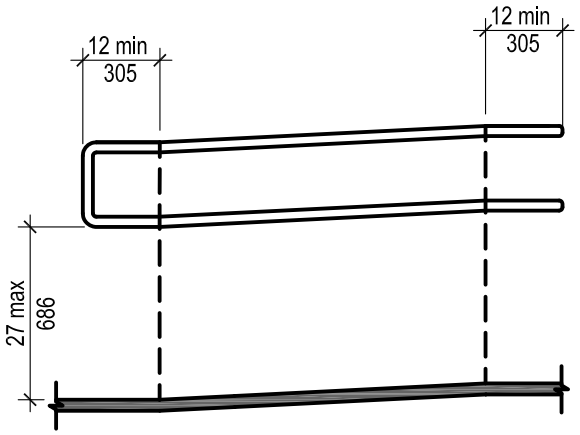


Fig. 505.10.1
Top and Bottom Handrail Extensions at Ramps

505.10.1 Top and Bottom Extension at Ramps. Ramp handrails should extend horizontally above the landing 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the top and bottom of ramp runs. Extensions should return to the wall, vertical support, guard, or floor, or should be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent ramp. Handrail return to vertical support should be a maximum of 27 inches above grade.

505.10.1 Advisory. A minimum return that is code compliant appears to be 1 1/2 inch space between the top and bottom portions of the extension. It is recommended to provide a 9 inch minimum space to prevent hand entrapment.

505.10.2 Top Extension at Stairs. At the top of a stair flight, handrails should extend horizontally above the landing for 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beginning directly above the landing nosing. Extensions should return to wall, vertical support, guard, or the landing surface, or should be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent stair flight. Handrail return to vertical support should be a maximum of 27 inches above grade.

505.10.3 Bottom Extension at Stairs. At the bottom of a stair flight, handrails should extend at the slope of the stair flight for a horizontal distance equal to one tread depth beyond the bottom tread nosing. Extensions should return to a wall, guard, or the landing surface, or should be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent stair flight. Handrail return to vertical support should be a maximum of 27 inches above grade.

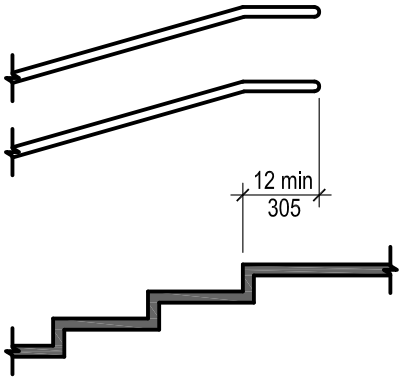


Fig. 505.10.2
Top Handrail Extensions at Stair

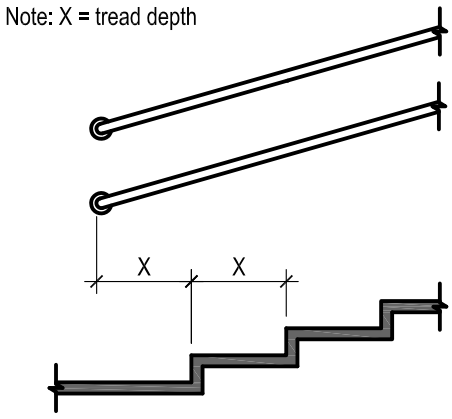


Fig. 505.10.3
Bottom Handrail Extensions at Stair

505.10.4 Location Identification. Location identification should be provided on the top surface of the handrail extension in both tactile characters and Braille in accordance with Section 703. Handrails located in close proximity to an exit door discharging to the outside or to the level of exit discharge should be provided with the word "EXIT," with one or two directions such as: "straight ahead", "behind"; "turn left", "turn right." Consider a directional arrow.

505.10.4 Advisory. Location identification using visual and tactile means, located on the handrail extensions, provides wayfinding and warns the user of potentially hazardous conditions.

505.10.5 Audible Signage. Consider an audible sign system with an activator located on the handrail end face for recorded messages. Consider an Information/Navigation Reference Point System complying with Section 708.7.

506 Windows

506 Advisory. Automatic operation should be available for all types of windows to accommodate user needs and preferences. Automation may increase cost and raise maintenance issues but it useful for many people. It should be provided in buildings where manual operation is difficult or not feasible (e.g., institutional facilities) so occupants may have some control of their environment.
Manual window operation should comply with Section 309. This could be accomplished relatively easily using recessed or projected handles for a double hung or sliding windows and with proper ergonometric designed levers for casement, awning and jalousie windows. It is also recognized that not all parts of a window can be made to comply with Section 309 such as the upper sash of a double hung window or other components of the window that are beyond the reach ranges of Section 308. Manual integrated hand cranks or hand crank kits can resolve this problem. A pole extension such as those used for skylights and traditionally used by schools to operate double hung windows. It may be no-tech, but it works for many people. In senior housing where occupants can have difficulty operating windows, consider enhanced balances for double hung windows to increase safety and usability. The same rationale should apply to window cleaning. For certain types of windows such as tilt-in double hung and casement, cleaning can be accomplished by a wide range of users. Tilt-in windows may pose a potential hazard to people unaware of how the mechanism operates or without sufficient strength to manipulate the sash. Locking devices are sometimes used to restrict access to the tilt-in feature to maintenance personnel. Other types of windows should permit easy cleaning of both the interior and exterior. Window cleaning operation should comply with Section 309. Mechanism should be intuitive, simple, lightweight, durable, safe and within reach ranges complying with Section 308.

506.1 Manual Windows. Manually operated windows should include projected, double hung, sliding, combination, casement, awning, jalousie, pivoted, reversible and other. All windows containing operable components should comply with reach ranges as specified in Section 308 and Section 309 operable parts.

506.1.1 Handles. Handles should be recessed projected or pop-out and should comply with Section 506.1.1.

506.1.1.1 Projected. It is recommended that projected handles should be the full width of window where practical and project 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum from face of frame. Open handles should be 4 inches (102 mm) minimum in length and provide 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum space from face.

506.1.1.2 Recessed. Recessed handles may only be viable for only some types of windows Recessed handles should be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) in length, recessed 3/4 inch (19 mm) minimum in depth and 1 inch (25 mm) minimum in height. Pop-out recessed handles should be easy to operate and comply with 506.1.1.

506.1.2 Operation. Manual window operation should provide a clear floor space complying with Section 506.1.8, operable parts placed within one or more of the reach ranges specified in Section 308. Operable parts should be operable with one hand and should not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate operable parts should be 5.0 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.

506.1.3 Cranks. Rotating crank mechanisms should open clockwise that allows various size rotation arms and accepts various sizes and shapes of rotating termination knobs to accommodate user needs and preferences. Integrated and easy installation hand crank kits allow manual operation beyond the reach ranges specified in Section 308 and for windows that are beyond even a standing position operation. Cranks may be used for a variety of window types including double hung windows.

506.1.4 Pole Extension. Pole extensions should be considered for some upper window sashes allowing them to be operable. It is recommended to provide operable upper sashes even though they are beyond the reach ranges. Poles may not be usable for some people.

506.1.5 Locking Mechanisms. Locking mechanisms should be provided for operable windows located within reach ranges as per Section 308. All operable parts must comply as per Section 309. Locking mechanisms may be placed in a variety of locations to increase usability and safety. Childproofing should be built into the mechanism. See Section 309.5 regarding operation.

506.1.5.1 Lever. Levers should be 4 inches (102 mm) minimum in length with easy to replace longer arms, projecting 11/2 inches (38 mm) minimum from frame face. Provide rotating end that can be replaced with a variety of sizes and shapes to increase usability.

506.1.6 Window Coverings. Window coverings should comply with Section 308 – Reach Ranges and Section 309 – Operable parts. Shutters should contain handles complying with Section 309. See Section 309 Childproofing regarding.

506.1.6 Advisory. Glare is a serious concern. This can be addressed with glazing, window treatments and architectural elements (e.g., building configuration, overhangs, horizontal louvered overhangs, light shelves, vertical louvers, awnings, mesh and clerestories). Consider a system that maintains a balance of natural and artificial light, accommodates the sun's daily movement, cloud cover, sun's seasonal positions, and reflected sunlight from adjacent buildings surfaces. To conserve energy, day light can be combined with artificial lighting controls (photocells) to turn off light fixtures when there is adequate day light illumination.

506.1.7 Temporary Air Conditioners and Fan Installations. These temporary units should be placed in such a way that they will meet the requirements in Section 308 and 309. Provide childproofing and attachment clips that prevent accidental drop-out.

506.1.8 Maneuvering Clearances. Provide a clear floor space complying with Section 305, for manual window operation and cranks.

506.1.9 Emergency Escape and Rescue Openings. The *2008 NYCBC*, Section 1025.3,

requires a height of emergency escape and rescue openings at 36 inches (914 mm) maximum above the floor.

506.1.9 Advisory. Emergency escape and rescue opening are intended for use by rescue/fire personnel to assist occupants in an emergency. Some occupants may use these openings unassisted (e.g. locations at a basement level). The question of sill height is a complex one. Too low a sill height can make occupants feel uncomfortable, is potentially dangerous for children if windows are operable (although NYC requires child guards) and may interfere with installation of heating and air conditioning units under the window. On the other hand, providing a low enough sill height, so that a seated person (e.g. person in a wheelchair) can see out is important. Some have found that a sill height in the range of 28 inches to 32 inches works well in residential occupancies.

506.2 Automatic Windows. Where possible provide automatic window operation. All windows beyond the reach ranges as per Section 309 should be automatic and should comply with Section 506.2. Automatic operation should be provided with manual back-up.

EXCEPTION. Security windows designed to be operated by security personnel or others such as bank personnel should not be required to comply with Section 506.2.

506.2.1 Control Switches. Controls to automatic window operation should be located adjacent to the window. The control switches should be located within the reach ranges as per Section 308 and should comply with Section 309 Operable parts.

EXCEPTION. Where clear floor space complying with Section 305 is not possible adjacent to windows, controls should be clustered remotely within the room. Switches should be clustered for multiple windows with a clear floor space complying with Section 305.

506.3 Skylights, Roof Windows and Solar Ducts. Skylights, roof windows and solar ducts should be automatic operation, with manual back-up by pole extension or hand crank.

506.3.1 Manual Operation. Manually operation as the only means of operation is not recommended if it is limited to the use of a pole extension that is not usable by many people.

506.3.2 Automatic Operation. The control switches should be located within the reach ranges as per Section 308 and should comply with Section 309, within close proximity of the unit and/or clustered in a control location. Provide a clear floor space complying with Section 305.

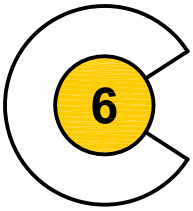
506.4 Glazing. Glazing should reduce glare and, coated to control direct sunlight on surfaces.

506.4 Advisory. There is a wide variety of glazing options, that includes light transmission levels, tinting, filters with various spectrum transmission, which accommodate a wide range of individual preferences and a variety of facilities. Thermal gain and loss should also be considered since it will affect comfort levels. The USGBC LEED-NC Reference Guide is a good cross reference for these issues.

506.5 Interior Windows. Windows that are strictly for interior use such as ticket booths, bank teller windows, security windows, reception windows or other windows that are not located on the exterior envelope of the building should comply with Sections 506.1 and 506.2.

506.5.1 Security Glazing. Security glazing should comply with Section 904.6.

506.6 Windows In Doors. Windows within doors should comply with Section 404.2.10, Vision Lights.



Plumbing Elements and Facilities

600 Introduction. Chapter 6 includes: drinking fountains, toilet and bathing rooms, water closets, toilet compartments, urinals, lavatories and sinks, bathing compartments, grab bars, shower seats, washing machines/clothes dryers, saunas and steam rooms.

The high/low drinking fountain arrangement addresses various statures, positions and sizes of people. In some building classifications, such as nursery schools, an additional spout height is recommended for young children. Even separate accommodations are considered for service animals and domesticated animals. Drinking fountains should be grouped with other amenities to increase overall convenience and usability.

Toilet and bathing rooms should provide a range of choices that address needs and preferences. In larger facilities, a variety of compartments should be provided, including those specifically designed for children's use. Public facilities should be as intuitively automatic as possible to increase usability and to reduce physical contact for sanitary reasons. Inclusive compartments are not limited to those who use mobility devices; they can be used by a parent with a child, those who need an assistant or a person who finds standard configurations confining or do not provide adequate accommodations. Because inclusive stalls are also used for cleaning, dressing, medicating and other uses, consider a variety of dispensers and a lavatory. Ambulatory stalls may be required by some but preferred by others, such as the elderly or those with diminished dexterity and strength, making it easier to raise/lower oneself and for lateral support by using the closely spaced parallel grab bars. Dual height toilet seats, bidet seats, baby changing tables, conveniently located controls, paper toilet seat cover and other types of dispensers (e.g., liquid sanitizer and paper towels), shelves, and other accessories increase usability. Consider single occupant (unisex) rest rooms and bathrooms for individual and family usage. Consider at least one adjustable height lavatory in multiple occupant restrooms for those who find that fixed units are not accommodating. Consider a work station. Alarms should be provided for safety and security.

Bathtubs are not usable by all and for many are hazardous. Bathtub cut-outs and doors are included because they are options that may be useful to some. An inclusive bathing compartment is recommended. Reconfiguration or alternate uses should be easy to accomplish without damage. "Adaptable" here means accommodating a roll-in shower, or bathtub with seat, or a smaller transfer shower with a multi-use space (e.g. to be used for a lavatory, dressing area, or storage). It is not the ability of the visitor or occupant to instantly reconfigure the space, rather, it provides options for owners to address anticipated usage and fluctuations in the market (e.g. a hotel that changes inclusive room distribution or decides to increase the percentage of role-in showers). Dual grab bars and sizing to accommodate children are recommended. Shower seats provide convenience and enhance safety. Dwelling unit bathrooms are covered under Chapter 10.

Front loading washing machines and clothes dryers should have easy to use convenient controls and raised openings at a height that everyone can use. Consider models with sloped faces and adjustable height bases.

Saunas and steam rooms should provide a pleasant and safe experience for everyone.

601 General

601.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 6 should apply where recommended by the scoping provisions adopted by the administrative authority.

601.1 Advisory. The composition of the components should create an inclusive environment. Nothing contained in these guidelines is intended to fall below minimum NYC code requirements. Chapter 6 applies to all classifications of buildings except dwelling units, which are covered under Chapter 10. Recommendations may not apply equally to all classifications, subgroups, and size of buildings; for example, a large multiple occupant bathroom may not be appropriate for a small building. An inclusive toilet compartment helps resolve this. Chapters 6 and 10 contain some cross-referencing. Chapter 10 differs because it accommodates the needs of the current and future occupants of a dwelling unit.

602 Drinking Fountains

602.1 General. Drinking fountains should comply with Sections 602 and 307. Two drinking fountains are recommended, adult standing and adult seated/ child. The supplemental child unit is intended for facilities primarily for the very young. Drinking fountains should be grouped with other amenities such as public telephones and restrooms, to make them easier to locate.

602.1 Advisory. The typical adult standing unit and the seated unit should be sufficient for most applications, with the seated adult unit accommodating children. But this is not adequate in facilities for the very young, such as nursery schools. An installation with three ganged units may be considered excessive for one location. To limit the installation to two units only, there are two recommendations to address this: 1, provide a children's fountain in a separate location in close proximity to the children's facility with a 30 inch spout height; 2, lower the adult seated unit to a maximum of 30 inches. The problem with the 30 inch spout height for seated adults is that it must also meet the 27 inch knee clearance resulting in a 3 inch height to accommodate the unit, also the seated adult is forced to bend to drink. The seated adult may be accommodated by providing a variable height water flow that will increase the height of the water to reduce bending. This may cause some water splattering, requiring a larger receptor and a backsplash.

602.2 Clear Floor Space. Provide a clear floor space for drinking fountains complying with Section 602.2. Clear floor spaces are permitted to overlap. Each clear floor space should be centered on the unit.

602.2 Advisory. The clear floor space for adult standing units takes into account space for bending but also people who use mobility devices such as walkers or crutches. The adult seated/child unit takes into account adults that use mobility devices with their legs in a raised position and complying with Section 306.3 while accommodating standing children. The supplemental child unit for young children, is provided with parallel clear floor space that is based on the minimum code clear floor space to account for children's smaller mobility devices. Some children may require larger devices that approach adult sizes and will thus use the seated adult unit.

602.2.1 Adult Standing. Provide a clear floor space 36 inches (915 mm) in width and 36 inches (915 mm) in depth measured from the face of the unit.

602.2.2 Adult Seated/ Children 6-12. Provide a clear floor space complying with Section 305, positioned for a forward approach. Provide knee and toe space complying with Section 306.

602.2.3 Supplemental for Children 5 and Younger. Provide a clear floor space 48 (1220 mm) inches in width and 30 inches (760 mm) in depth measured from the face of the unit positioned for a parallel approach.

602.3 Operable Parts. Operable parts should comply with Section 308 and 309.

602.4 Spout Outlet Height. Spout outlet height should comply with Section 602.4.

602.4 Advisory. The ability and extent that one bends to comfortably drink is based on individual needs and preferences. Some may not have the ability to bend at all and will require a cup as provided by Section 602.7.

602.4.1 Adult Standing. Spout outlet for drinking fountain for standing adults should be 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 43 inches (1090 mm) maximum above the floor, but the recommended height is 42 inches (1070 mm).

602.4.2 Adult Seated. Spout outlets for adult seated drinking fountains should be 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finish floor.

602.4.3 Supplemental Child. Spout outlet for drinking fountain for children should be 30 inches (760 mm) maximum above the floor.

602.4.4 Supplemental Animal Spout. Consider a supplemental spout for service animals and pets. Outdoor locations should include parks, playgrounds, outdoor stadiums and other types of facilities that can maintain sanitary conditions and do not conflict with people. Receptors may pose a disease transmission threat for animals so just a spout with a drain is recommended.

602.5 Spout Location. The spout should be located 15 inches (380 mm) minimum from the vertical support and 5 inches (125 mm) maximum from the front edge of the drinking fountain, including bumpers. Where only a parallel approach is provided, the spout should be located 31/2 inches (89 mm) maximum from the front edge of the drinking fountain including bumpers.

602.6 Water Flow. The spout should provide a flow of water 4 inches (102 mm) minimum in height. The angle of the water stream from spouts within 3 inches (76 mm) of the front of the drinking fountain should be 30 degrees maximum, and from spouts between 3 inches (76 mm) and 5 inches (125 mm) from the front of the drinking fountain should be 15 degrees maximum, measured horizontally relative to the face of the drinking fountain.

602.7 Cup Dispenser. Drinking fountain locations should be provided with a cup dispenser complying with Section 308 and 309.

603 Toilet and Bathing Rooms

603.1 General. Toilet and bathing rooms should comply with Section 603 and should be as intuitively automatic as possible to increase usability and to reduce physical contact for sanitary reasons.

603.1.1 Single Occupant (Unisex/Family) Toilet Room. Single occupant toilet rooms should consist of a water closet, grab bars, lavatory with work surface (see Section 606.2.1), dispensers (see Section 604.7 for types), floor drain, mirror, automatic door and lock (see Section 404.3.6), coat hooks, shelf, baby changing table, emergency alarms, air dryer, bench and trash receptacle and accessories complying with Sections 302, 303, 309, 310, 404, 603, 604, 606, 609, 903 and 906. The water closet should not be enclosed in a separate compartment. Bidet mechanism should comply with Section 604.2.6. Grab bars should comply with Section 604.5, 604.11, and 609. Consider a dual height continuous grab bar for adults and children complying with Section 609. Include a stool for children to use adult toilet and see Section 604.4 regarding wc height and children's usage. Door maneuvering clearance should comply with Section 603.2 & 604.11.3. Consider hands free automatic/ adjustable task lighting for water closet, lavatory and work surfaces with automatic shut-off.

603.1.2 Single Occupant (Unisex/Family) Bathroom. Single occupant bathrooms should comply with Section 603.1.1 and should contain a inclusive bathing compartment complying with Section 608, and changing area complying with Section 603.8

603.1.1 and 603.1.2 Advisory. Single occupant restrooms and bathrooms should be inclusive. They are recommended where space does not permit both an inclusive male and female facility, as well as to supplement a facility, providing another option for occupants. They function as a family restroom since they allow a parent(s) with child privacy, especially with a child of a different gender where a typical restroom creates a conflict. They may present a viable solution for an existing building where modification or expansion of the restrooms or bathrooms is not feasible. Some people prefer a single occupant facility for privacy, especially for those that require mobility devices, those that require assistance and others with limited dexterity. Refer to the *2008 NYCBC*, Section 1109.2 Exception 3, and 1109.2.1 for required number, and additional requirements. As per the code, in assembly and merchantile occupancies, an accessible unisex toilet room shall be provided where an aggregate of six or more male and female water closets is required. Other requirements relevant to unisex toilet rooms may be found in Section 1109.2.1 of the code. Another approach is to provide a unisex toilet room wherever a multiple toilet room is provided to allow the option of privacy when needed or preferred.

603.1.3 Multiple Occupant Rest Rooms. Multiple occupant rest rooms should consist of at least one adult inclusive water closet, an ambulatory compartment, and one inclusive urinal (male); and a supplemental inclusive child water closet, a supplemental child ambulatory compartment. In addition the restroom should be provided with dispensers, floor drain(s), bench, trash receptacles, mirror, coat hooks, shelves, baby changing table, emergency alarm, air hand dryer, lighting and accessories and comply with Sections 302, 303, 309, 310, 603, 604, 605, 606, 609, 702 903 and 906.

603.1.3.1 Entry. Entry doors are recommended to be automatic and should comply with Section 404.3. Consider a separate entry and exit for large heavily used facilities. Consider a tissue or hand sanitizer dispenser on the inside face or adjacent to exit door for handle or push plate contamination. Consider alternative type entrances that eliminate doors in large public facilities (e.g., airports and stadiums). This includes a variety of maze type entrances (e.g., angles, semicircles and free form configurations) with a 72 inches (1830 mm) minimum clear width for maze route and door opening. Consider a free-standing single panel, t-shaped partition and other configurations to obstruct direct sight lines into restroom opening to eliminate the need for a door.

603.1.4 Multiple Occupant Bathrooms. Multiple occupant bathrooms should contain at least one inclusive roll-in shower with changing area, in addition to the requirements of 603.1.3, and comply with Sections 608 and 610.

603.1.3 & 603.1.4 Advisory. Consider an inclusive or ambulatory compartment in lieu of a standard compartment. The minimum number of fixture distribution between the sexes is based on the percentage of each sex anticipated in the occupant load as per the *2008 NYC Plumbing Code,* Section PC 403 and Table 403.1. Assembly and Business classifications are adjusted to increase the female fixture count. A different distribution of the sexes for any classification requires statistical data approved by the Commissioner as per Section PC 403.3. Consider increasing the total fixture count for convenience. The full range of children's components may not be appropriate for all classifications of buildings, such as an office environment.

603.1.4.1 Entry. Entry doors are recommended to be automatic and should comply with Section 404.3 Consider alternative types of entrances complying with 603.1.3.1. Consider paper tissue dispenser on the inside face of entry door, to protect occupant from contaminated handle or push plate.

603.2 Clearances. Clearances should comply with Section 603.2.

603.2.1 Turning Space. A turning space 72 inches (1800 mm) in diameter complying with Section 304 should be provided within the room.

603.2.2 Overlap. Clear floor space, clearance at fixtures, and turning space should be permitted to overlap.

603.2.3 Door Swing. Doors should not swing into the clear floor space or clearance for any fixture.

EXCEPTION: In single occupant (unisex/family) restrooms and bathrooms, doors may swing into the turning space where a clear floor space complying with Section 305.3 is provided within the room beyond the arc of the door swing.

603.2.4 Permitted Obstructions. The space between permitted obstruction and any other projecting object should be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum. Permitted obstructions include toilet tissue and paper seat cover and other dispensers, mirrors, grab bars, hand dryer, towel racks, emergency alarm, remote flush button, and waste receptacles. HVAC components are not permitted obstructions.

603.2.4.1 Circulation Width. Consider a 72 inch (1830 mm) minimum circulation width in large facilities and a 42 inch (1070 mm) minimum circulation width in small facilities.

603.3 Mirrors. Mirrors should comply with Section 603.3.

603.3.1 Partial Height Mirrors. Partial height mirrors with a tilt mechanism, located above the lavatories, sinks or counters should be mounted with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 40 inches (1015 mm) maximum above the floor. Where adjustable tilt mirrors are provided, provide reach ranges complying with Sect. 308.

603.3.2 Full Length Mirrors. Full-length mirrors with a tilt mechanism, 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in width and 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in height should be unobstructed and mounted with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 18 inches (458 mm) above the floor. Provide a clear floor space centered on width of mirror complying with Section 305.

603.4 Coat Hooks and Shelves. Coat hooks should be located within reach ranges complying with Section 308. Coat hooks should be located on the back of doors and/or on the wall on hinge side of door for single use rest rooms. Hooks should be provided in changing areas and adjacent to bathing compartments. Provide a shelf to avoid placing personal items on the floor. Shelves for adults should be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor. Shelves for children should be 20 inches (510 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor. Shelves are recommended to be recessed.

603.5 Emergency Alarm. Provide an emergency alarm complying with Section 702 that is both audible and visual in the bathing compartments, ambulatory compartments, shower compartments, single occupant (unisex) restroom and single occupant (unisex) bathrooms.

603.5 Advisory. Emergency alarms are intended primarily for institutional facilities such as hospitals and health care facilities, but are also recommended for other classifications. Bathrooms in isolated or remote locations and areas where security is a concern, should always contain emergency alarms. Consider water overflow alarms.

603.5.1 Upper Push Button Locations. A push button should be located on closest side wall adjacent to the water closet and aligned with the front face of the water closet 48 inches (1220 mm) above the floor for adult accessible and ambulatory compartments. Consider locating 36 inches (915 mm) above the floor for children's accessible and ambulatory compartments, aligned with remote flush control. Button should be 2 inches (50 mm) minimum in diameter and should comply with Section 702.2.1.

603.5.1.1 Lower Push Button Locations. Locate adult button 19.5 inches (495 mm) aff minimum complying with Section 308.3, for minimum side reach ranges. Consider children's location 16 inches (406 mm) aff, aligned with vertical grab bar complying with Table 308.4.

603.5.2 Visual/Audible Alarm Locations. Visual/audible alarm locations should comply with Section 702.2.7.

603.6 Lighting. Provide adequate lighting for each toilet compartment and sufficient general lighting for the entire room. Consider automatic/adjustable task lighting in compartments and for lavatory and work surfaces with automatic shut-off.

603.7 Baby Changing Station. Baby changing station should comply with Section 308 and 309. Provide a front approach clear floor space complying with Section 305 and 306. Top of surface should be 28 inches (710 mm) minimum and 34 inches (865 mm) maximum in height above the floor, 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in length and 24 inches (610 mm) maximum in depth. Provide task lighting.

603.8 Changing Area. A changing area is recommended in single occupant (unisex) bathrooms and multiple occupant bathrooms. The bathing compartment may be used as a changing area if space is extremely limited. Provide hooks and towel rack complying with Section 1011.17. Provide seating complying with 1011.13. Provide grab bars complying with Section 609.

603.8 Advisory. The bathing compartment may be used as a changing area but is only recommended when there are no other options. Use immediately after bathing may create a wet/dry conflict, but it is still a viable alternative.

603.8.1 Permanent Seating. Built in benches and other seating should be provided and comply with Section 903.

603.8.2 Portable Seating. Provide storage location for portable seating when not in use.

603.8.3 Lighting. Provide a light fixture within the changing area and perhaps task lighting.

603.9 Waste Receptacles. Waste receptacles complying with Section 906.1 thru 906.7 should be provided in the room, either open or with an automatic operation lid. Do not locate waste receptacles in w.c stalls due to health hazards.

603.10 Dispensers. Dispensers should comply with Section 604.7

603.11 Portable or Temporary Facilities. Portable or temporary facilities should comply with Section 603.

603.11 Advisory. Exterior portable facilities may range from a single occupant unisex unit to a multiple occupant bathroom facility. Both interior and exterior temporary facilities should comply with Chapter 6. Portable or temporary, does not mean that it will be used differently than a permanent facility. Refer to the 2008 NYC Building Code, Section E105.2. for portable toilets and bathrooms.

604 Water Closets and Toilet Compartments.

604.1 General. Water closets and toilet compartments should comply with Section 604. See NYCBC Section 1109 for minimum code requirements)

604.1.1 Adult Inclusive Compartment. Adult inclusive compartments should comply with Section 604.8. Provide a minimum of one compartment for each toilet room.

604.1.2 Adult Ambulatory Compartment. Adult ambulatory compartment should comply with Section 604.9. Provide a minimum of one compartment in each toilet room.

604.1.3 Supplemental Children's Inclusive Compartment. Supplemental children's inclusive compartments should comply with Section 604.10.

604.1.4 Supplemental Children's Ambulatory Compartment. Supplemental children's ambulatory compartment should comply with Section 604.11.

604.1.5 Single Occupant (Unisex/Family) Rest Room and Bathroom. Single occupant (unisex/family) rest rooms and bathrooms should comply with Section 604.1.1.

604.1.5 Advisory. As per the *2008 NYC Building Code*, Section 1109.2.1, assembly and merchantile occupancies, a unisex toilet room shall be provided when the aggregate of six or more male and female water closets are required.

604.1.6 Standard Adult Compartment. Standard adult compartments should comply with *NYC Building Code*. See also *ICC, International Plumbing Code, 2003*, Section 405. Both the accessible and ambulatory compartment may be used in lieu of the standard compartment.

604.1.7 Supplemental Standard Child Compartment. The smallest allowable compartment should be used. As per the *NYC Plumbing Code* Section PC 405.3.1, compartments shall not be less than 30 inches wide (760 mm) and 60 inches deep (1525 mm). Both the inclusive and ambulatory child compartments may be used in lieu of the standard child compartment.

604.2 Water Closet Locations. Water closets should be located with a wall or partition to the rear and one side, complying with Section 604.2.

604.2.1 Adult Inclusive Water Closet Location. The centerline of the water closet should be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum to 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the sidewall or partition.

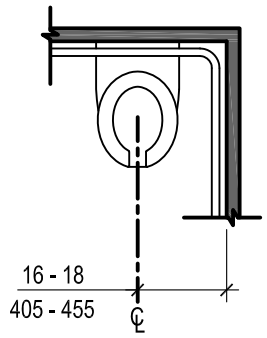


Fig. 604.2.1
Adult Water Closet

604.2.2 Adult Ambulatory Water Closet Location. The centerline of the water closet should be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum to 19 inches (485 mm) maximum from the sidewall of the partition.

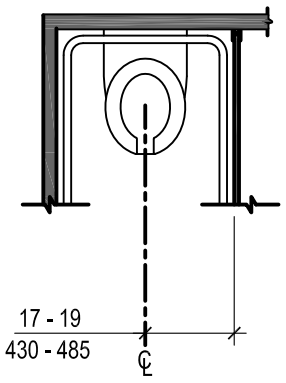


Fig. 604.2.2
Ambulatory Water Closet

604.2.3 Children's Inclusive Water Closet Locations. The centerline of the water closet for children should be from the sidewall of the partition. Children ages 9 through 12, 15 inches (380 mm) to 18 inches (455 mm). Children ages 5 through 8, 12 inches (305 mm) to 15 inches (380 mm). Children 3 and 4, 12 inches (305 mm).

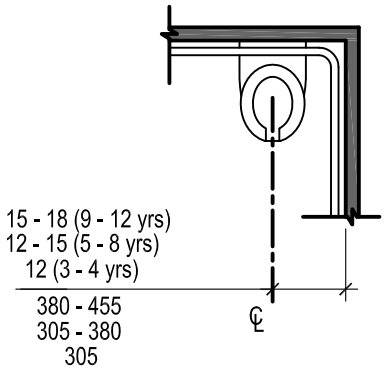


Fig. 604.2.3
Children's Water Closet

604.2.3 Advisory. Children's dimensions were obtained from the 2004 ADA-ABA,Section 105.3.

604.2.4 Children's Ambulatory Water Closet Location. The children's ambulatory water closet location should comply with Section 604.2.3.

604.2.5 Single Occupant Restroom and Bathroom Water Closet Location. Single occupant restrooms, bathrooms, and water closets should comply with 604.2.1 for facilities intended primarily for adults. If the facility is intended primarily for children the water closet should comply with Section 604.2.3. If the facility is intended for all, comply with Section 604.2.1.

604.2.6 Bidets. Bidets are suggested for hygienic purposes and for people with limited dexterity. Conventional bidet usage requires transfer from water closet to bidet. Due to conflict with maneuvering clearances, it is suggested that the bidet mechanism should be incorporated into the water closet seat, to eliminate a separate bidet fixture. Mechanism should be automatic and may be integrated or independent of the seat.

604.2.6 Advisory. Bidets are not as commonly used in the U.S. as they are in Europe and Japan. Bidet mechanisms require less dexterity, provides more independence for some users, and are hygienically superior. Features include: self-cleaning and sanitizing/deodorizing single or multiple spray head(s) or wand(s) warm water supply, warm air dry, heated seat with temperature control, and various remote control configurations. Bidet water closet seat attachments should comply with recommended seat heights. They are suggested for hotels, institutional and education facilities but are appropriate for most classifications of facilities that are not subject to extreme use or vandalism.

604.2.6.1 Supplemental Standard Bidet Fixture. If a standard bidet fixture is used, it may be placed adjacent to the clear floor space of the water closet. Bidet location controls and amenities should comply with Section 1011.8. If the bidet is located in a single use restroom or bathroom it should comply with Section 604.2.1 for facilities intended primarily for adults and it should contain a portable platform or step for use by children. If the facility is intended primarily for children, it should comply with Section 604.2.3.

604.3 Clearance. Clearance for adult accessible, child accessible and single occupant (unisex) restrooms and single occupant (unisex) bathrooms should comply with Section 604.3.

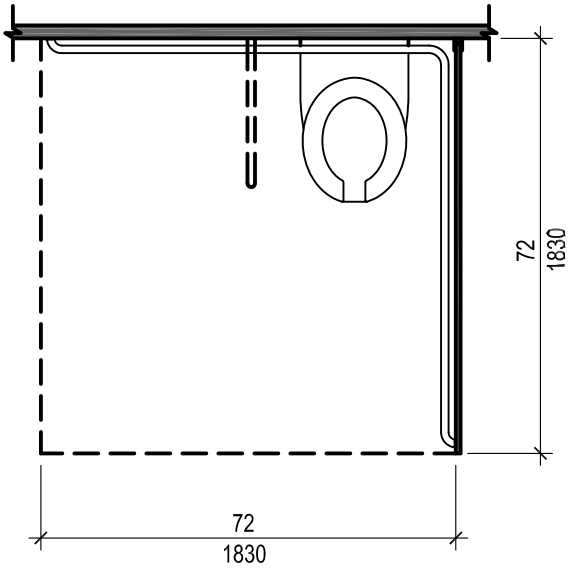


Fig. 604.3
Clearance for Water Closet in Adult and Single Occupant Restroom/Bathroom

604.3.1 Adult Size. In adult inclusive, and single occupant (unisex) restrooms and single occupant (unisex) bathrooms, provide a clearance around the water closet 72 inches (1800 mm), measured perpendicular from the sidewall, and 72 inches (1800 mm) measured from the rear wall. Ambulatory compartments should comply with Section 604.9.2

604.3.2 Children's Size. In children's inclusive compartment, provide a clearance around the water closet 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum, measured perpendicular from the sidewall, and 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum measured from the rear wall. Ambulatory compartments should comply with Section 604.11.2

604.3.3 Overlap. The required clearance around the water closet should be permitted to overlap other fixture clearances, associated grab bars, dispensers, receptacles, coat hooks, shelves, and the turning space. No other fixtures or partitions should be within the required water closet clearance. Obstructions complying with Section 603.2.4 may be permitted.

604.4 Water Closet Seat Height. The height of the water closet seats should comply with Section 604.4. Seats should not be sprung to a return position.

604.4 Advisory. An automatic adjustable height toilet would accommodate and expand the height ranges for both adults and children. This concept is developing and should be considered. Currently, a viable manual solution is to utilize a dual height seat or an elevated seat insert. If a seat insert is provided a wall storage unit should be provided. If a young child must use an adult wc, provide a pull down seat or seat insert with a properly proportioned opening and a stool. If a child exceeds the upper height range for children, they could use the adult facility. Sanitary concerns regarding dual height seats or seat inserts can be addressed with disposable plastic seat covers, liquid hand sanitizer, sealed sanitary wipes and paper towel dispensers. Also, see Section 604.7.2 Other Dispensers. Sanitizers and covers make the use of the elevated seat options viable because it addresses cleanliness and disease transmission concerns. Consider a seat back for support and comfort.

604.4.1 Adult Water Closet Seat Heights. The height of the water closet seats for inclusive and ambulatory water closets should be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (458 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the top of the seat.

604.4.2 Child Water Closet Seat Heights. The height of water closet seats should be 11 inches (280 mm) to 12 inches (305 mm) for children ages 3 and 4. The height of water closet seats should be 12 inches (305 mm) to 15 inches (380 mm) for children ages 5 to 8. The height of water closet seat should be 15 inches (380 mm) to 17 inches (435 mm) for children ages 9 to 12. Seat and opening should be proportioned to the anticipated age group usage to provide proper surface and support.

604.4.2 Advisory. Children's dimensions were obtained from the *2004 ADA-ABA*,Section 105.3.

604.4.3 Standard Seat Height. The height of the water closet is generally 15 inches (380 mm) above the floor, measured to the top of seat.

604.5 Grab Bars. Grab bars for water closets should comply with 604.5, Section 609 and as applicable, Sections 604.8, 604.9, 604,.10, 604.11, and 604.12. Consider grab bars for all water closets.

604.5 Advisory. Refer to the particular compartment type for grab bar requirements including Sections 604.8.6, 604.9.4, 604.10.5, and 604.11.4. Refer to Section 609.4 for height, cross Section, spacing, surface, fittings, installation and structural strength. A continuous grab bar system requires 90° elbows, Tee's, termination plates, and other components, similar to piping or a brass rail system. But there is a conflict with spacing above the horizontal bar (see *A117.1-2003,* Section 609.3) A continuous bar assembly is a stronger solution that allows smooth transition between components, avoids an excessive number of terminations provides more attachment options, gripping surface and is more aesthetically acceptable than a jumble of separate components.

604.5.1 Horizontal Wall Grab Bars. Comply with Section 609 and refer to the specific compartment type in Section 604 for details. Horizontal grab bars are recommended to be continuous. Horizontal grab bars are not recommended on walls or panels 12 inches (305 mm) or less.

604.5.2 Vertical Wall Grab Bars. Comply with Section 609 and refer to the specific compartment type in Section 604 for details. Vertical grab bar should extend to 60 inches (1525 mm) above the finished floor. The center line of the bar should be located between 39 inches (990 mm) and 41 inches (1040 mm) from the rear wall. Controls, dispensers, switches or any other elements should not conflict with grab bars.

604.5.3 Supplemental Swing-up Grab Bars. Swing-up grab bars may supplement, but should not be used in lieu of the fixed grab bars. Swing-up grab bars should be located on open side of the water closet with a clearance of 18 inches (455 mm) minimum from the centerline of the water closet to any sidewall or obstruction. Swing-up grab bars should be installed with the centerline of the grab bar 15 3/4 inches (400 mm) from the centerline of the water closet. Swing-up grab bars should be 28 inches (710 mm) minimum in length, measured from the wall to the end of the horizontal portion of the grab bar.

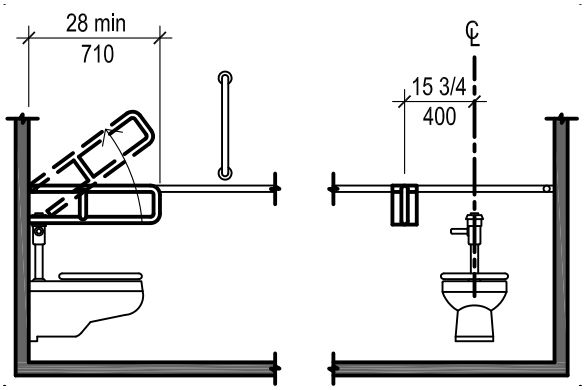


Fig. 604.5.3
Supplemental Swing-up Grab Bar

604.5.3 Advisory. The swing-up grab bar provides another option to address a user's specific needs and preferences. It allows a single occupant restroom and bathroom to be used as an ambulatory compartment to accommodate people who require the support. Due to the level action of a swing–up grab bar, a person applying their weight to the end will exert excessive pressure on the wall attachments. For this reason the unit must be anchored directly to the structure of the wall. The assembly should be strong enough to sustain an impact load (e.g. if someone slips). This may exceed the 250 pounds allowance as per 609.8. Impact loading requires strong anchors as well as a strong wall structure.

604.5.3.1 Height. Height of the top gripping rail surface of the swing-up grab bar should match the horizontal grab bar and should comply with Section 609.4.1. A swing-up unit may be hinged to the wall grab bar. Unit may also be placed below the horizontal grab bar but when arm is in horizontal position, the top gripping rail should match the horizontal wall grab bar. Another option is to terminate the horizontal grab bar a minimum of 1 1/2 inches to the left and right of the swing-up unit. This is not recommended but suggested because the split or gap in the horizontal grab bar may conflict with minimum horizontal grab bar code requirements and must be resolved with the administrative authority.

604.5.4 Child Swing-up Grab Bars. Child swing-up grab bars should comply with Section 604.5.3 and 609.

604.5.4.1 Height. Height should comply with Section 604.5.3.1 but should match the required height for children's horizontal grab bars complying with Section 609.4.2.

604.6 Remote Automatic Flush Controls. Remote automatic flush controls should be provided for the inclusive, ambulatory compartments and single occupant toilet and bathing rooms. The primary flush control should consist of a button that is located on the nearest side wall, aligned with the front face of the water closet. Position the button for adults, 1 1/2 inch (38 mm) minimum to 7 1/2 inches maximum and for children 1 1/2 (38 mm) minimum to 4 1/2 inches (115 mm) below the bottom face of the grab bar. The button should be 2 inches (50 mm) minimum in diameter. Consider a second automatic control for the open side of the water closet in an inclusive compartment and on both side walls in an ambulatory compartment. Wiring should be concealed. Consider visual, tactile, and auditory characteristics complying with Section 309.6, 309.7 and 309.8.

604.6 Advisory. Remote automatic flush controls are recommended, especially for use from the seated position for people with limited dexterity. This allows flushing the water closet while in use. Water conservation is always recommended but people use the water closet in a variety of ways. A motion sensor flushes only after one vacates the water closet. Remote automatic flush controls are recommended for the inclusive and ambulatory compartments.

604.7 Toilet Paper Dispensers. Toilet paper dispensers with unrestricted supply should comply with Section 304 and 309.4 and should be 7 inches (180 mm) to 9 inches (230 mm) in front of the wc measured to the dispenser centerline. The outlet should be 19-1/2 inches (495 mm) to 30 inches (760 mm) aff for adults. Face of dispenser should not project beyond 3/1/2 inches (90 mm) from wall face on either side of a partition to avoid knee conflict.

604.7.1 Children's Toilet Paper Dispensers. The outlet for children should comply with Section 308.4. Ages 9 thru 12, should be 16 inches (405 mm). The outlet of the dispenser for children ages 5 thru 8, should be 18 inches (455 mm). The outlet of the dispenser for children ages 3 and 4, should be 20 inches (508mm).

604.7.1 Advisory. Children's dimensions were obtained from the *2004 ADA-ABA*,Section 105.3.

604.7.2 Other Dispensers. Other dispensers include w.c. seat covers, liquid sanitizer or sealed wipes, soap, sanitary napkins, paper towels/tissues, sealed alcohol pads, powder, disposable gloves, plastic waste bags, masks. Automatic operation is recommended (e.g., liquid sanitizer) for easy hands free use and for sanitary reasons. Within compartments locate dispensers forward of vertical grab bar away from w.c., above the horizontal grab bar with dispenser outlet a maximum of 48 inches aff. (See also Section 309.3.3 for height). Supplies can be used for personal hygiene and cleaning w.c. for use.

604.8 Adult Compartment.

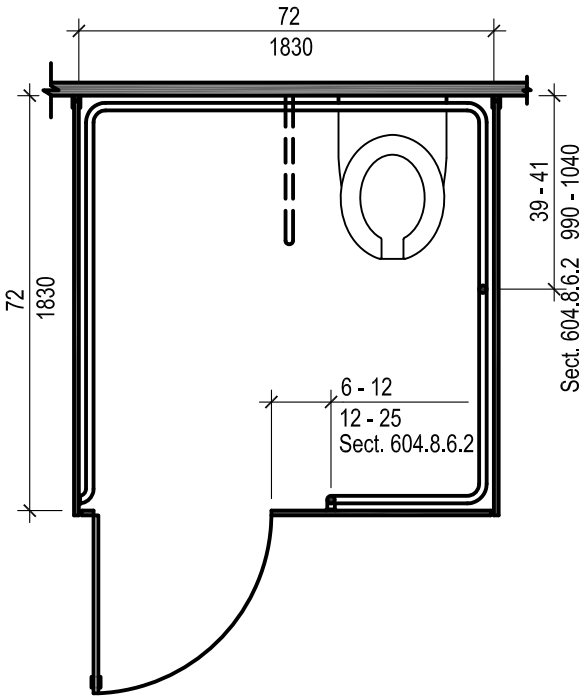


Fig. 604.8
Adult Compartment

604.8. Advisory. Adult inclusive compartments may be used in lieu of code accessible compartments because they exceed acccessibility requirements. See *2008 NYCBC,* Section 1109 and specifically Section 1109.2 for minimum scoping requirements.

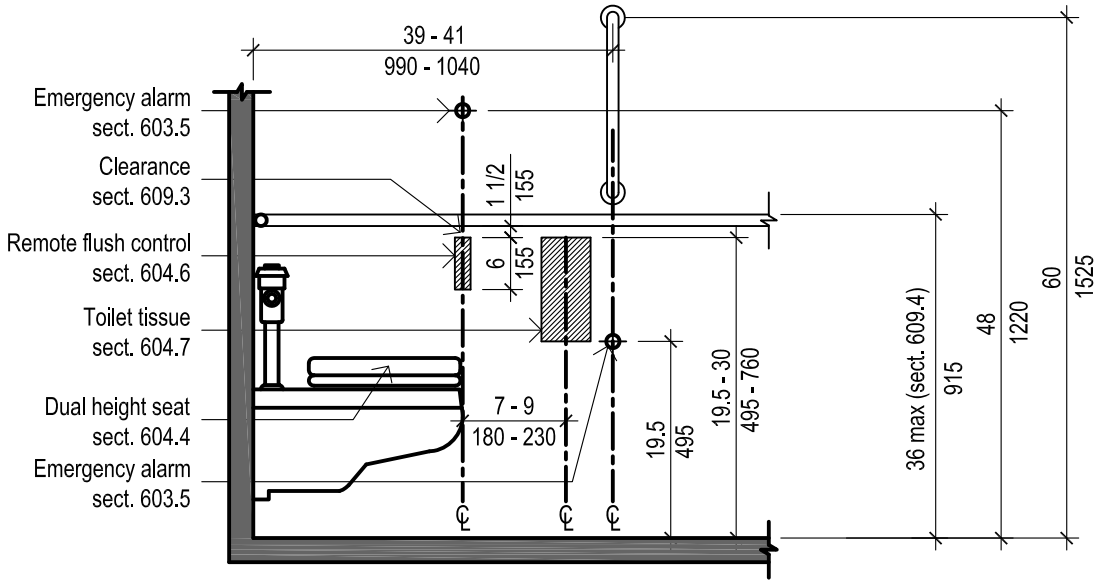


Fig. 604.7
Adult Dispenser and Button Locations

604.8.1 General. Adult inclusive compartments should comply with Section 604.8.

604.8.1 Advisory. The adult compartment is based on the turning space complying with Section 304. Anyone can use it and many people prefer this compartment. It accommodates people with or without mobility devices, people who require an assistant, parent with child, etc. Greater flexibility is provided for approach, transfer sequence and accommodating the various levels of dexterity of the individual. It also takes into account a range of activities that the compartment may be used for, such as cleaning, dressing, adjusting personal devices, medication, etc. It allows a variety of uses and positions intended or not, depending on the needs or preferences of the individual. Consider a sink in the compartment complying with Section 606. If only a single adult accessible compartment is provided it will accommodate all, including children, with some additional features, such as a portable step and appropriate grab bars. It can function similar to a single occupant restroom.

604.8.2 Size. The recommended size is 72 inches (1800 mm) in width and 72 inches (1800 mm) in depth.

604.8.3 Doors. Toilet compartment doors, including door hardware, should comply with Section 404.2.2 and 404.2.6. A door should have a clear opening width of 36 inches (915 mm) located either in the front partition, sidewall or partition, with the latch side as far as possible from the wc with the door swinging out. Where located in the front partition, the door opening should be 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the sidewall or partition farthest from the water closet. Where located in the sidewall or partition, the door opening should be 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the front partition. The door should be self-closing. A door pull complying with Section 404.2.6 should be placed on both sides of the door near the latch. The door should not swing into the compartment.

604.8.4 Approach. The compartment should be arranged for either left-hand or right-hand approach to the water closet.

604.8.5 Toe Clearance. Toe clearance is not required since a 72-inch compartment provides sufficient maneuvering clearance, but a 9-inch (230 mm) space above the floor should be provided for sanitary and cleaning purposes.

604.8.6 Grab Bars. Grab Bars should comply with Section 604.5 and Section 609.

604.8.6.1 Horizontal. Provide a continuous grab bar, height complying with Section 609.4.1, along all walls or panels of the compartment terminating into the walls a minimum of 11/2 inch (38 mm) on each side of the door opening. Horizontal grab bars are not required on wall 12 inches (305 mm) or less.

604.8.6.2 Vertical. Provide two vertical wall grab bars above the horizontal grab bars. One vertical grab bar should extend to 60 inches (1525 mm) above the finished floor with the center line of the bar located between 39 inches (990 mm) and 41 inches (1040 mm) from the rear wall. Provide a second vertical grab bar between 6 inches (12 mm) and 12 inches from the latch side of the door opening, (25 mm) extending to 60 inches (1525 mm) above finished floor.

604.8.6.3 Supplemental Swing-up Grab Bars. Swing-up grab bars may supplement, but should not be used in lieu of the fixed grab bars. Swing up grab bars should comply with Section 604.5.3.

604.8.7 Emergency Alarm. Provide emergency alarm complying with Section 603.5.

604.8.8 Toilet Tissue and Other Dispensers. Provide a dual toilet tissue dispenser unit complying with Section 604.7. Other dispensers (e.g., paper seat cover and hand sanitizer) should comply with Section 604.7.2.

604.8.9 Coat Hook and Shelf. A coat hook should be located on the back of the compartment door complying with Section 603.4. Provide a shelf complying with Section 603.4 to avoid placing personal items on the floor.

604.8.10 Lighting. Lighting should comply with Section 603.6. Consider adjustable task lighting with motion detector/automatic timer.

604.8.11 Seat Height. Seat height should comply with Section 604.4.

604.8.12 Flush Controls. Flush controls should comply with Section 604.6. Consider a second automatic flush control provided on the open side of the water closet.

604.8.13. Water Closet Location. Water closet location should comply with Section 604.2.

604.8.14 Sink. Consider a sink complying with Section 606.

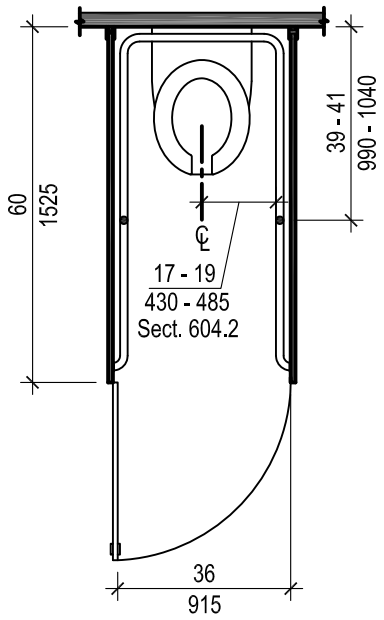


Fig. 604.9
Adult Ambulatory Compartment

604.9 Adult Ambulatory Compartments

604.9.1 General. Adult ambulatory compartments should comply with Section 604.9.

604.9.1 Advisory. Inclusive ambulatory compartments may be used in lieu of code ambulatory compartments because they exceed accessibility requirements. See *2008 NYCBC,* Section 1109 and specifically Section 1109.2.2 for minimum scoping requirements. Ambulatory compartments are provided for people who can ambulate (capable of walking or can move about on their own). Ambulatory does not define level of dexterity, strength, or range of movement. These are different for everyone and may vary at different times in their lives. The ambulatory compartment is narrow with grab bars on both sides and rear wall to allow an adult to support themselves and maneuver using both arms. It is a compartment that is not intended to accommodate a wheelchair but may be used by people with diminished abilities and those who use a mobility device (e.g., walker, cane or crutches) It is difficult to anticipate every conceivable sequence of movement, but the ambulatory compartment is more accommodating than other options for many users.

604.9.2 Size. The ambulatory compartment should be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum to 72 inches (1830 mm) maximum in depth and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum in width.

604.9.3 Doors. Ambulatory compartment doors should have a clear opening width of 36 inches (915 mm), door hardware should comply with Section 404.2.2 Section 404.2.6. The approach to the latch side of the compartment door should be provided with a 48 inch (1220 mm) clearance between the door side of the compartment and any obstruction. The door should be self-closing. Doors pull on both sides of the door near the latch and should comply with Section 309.4. Compartment doors should not swing into the compartment.

604.9.4 Grab bars. Grab bars should comply with Section 604.5 and 609.

604.9.4.1 Horizontal. Provide a continuous grab bar, height complying with Section 609.4.1 along rear and side walls or panels of the compartment terminating into the walls 11/2 inch (38 mm) minimum from the front panel on each side of the door opening.

604.9.4.2 Vertical. Provide two vertical wall grab bars above the horizontal grab bars on both side walls or partitions, should extend to 60 inches (1525 mm) above the finished floor, with the center line of the bar located between 39 inches (990 mm) and 41 inches (1040 mm) from the rear wall.

604.9.5 Emergency Alarm. Provide an emergency alarm complying with Section 603.5.

604.9.6 Toilet Tissue and Other Dispensers. Provide a dual toilet tissue dispenser unit complying with Section 604.7. Other dispensers (e.g., paper seat cover and hand sanitizer) should comply with Section 604.7.2.

604.9.7 Coat Hook and Shelf. A coat hook should be located on the back of the compartment door complying with Section 603.4. If a shelf is provided it should be located on the rear wall. Provide a shelf complying with Section 603.4 to avoid placing personal items on the floor.

604.9.8 Lighting. Lighting should comply with Section 603.6. Consider adjustable task lighting with motion detector/automatic timer.

604.9.9 Seat Height. Seat height should comply with Section 604.4.

604.9.10 Flush Controls. Flush controls should comply with Section 604.6. and should be provided on both side walls of the compartment.

604.9.11 Water Closet Location. The water closet location should comply with Section 604.2.2.

604.10 Supplemental Children's Inclusive Compartment.

604.10.1 General. Supplemental children's inclusive compartments should comply with Section 604.10.

604.10.2 Size. The recommended size of a children's compartment should be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width and 60 inches minimum (1525 mm) in depth.

604.10.2 Advisory. The supplemental children's inclusive compartment is based on the code minimum 60 inch turning circle that accommodates a smaller occupant. The 60 inch turning circle takes into account children's mobility devices and as well as children who require an assistant while allowing greater flexibility regarding approach, transfer sequence and accommodating various levels of dexterity of the individual. It also takes into account a range of activities that the compartment may be used for such as dressing or adjusting personal devices, cleaning, etc. in various ways and positions intended or not, depending on the needs or preferences of the child.

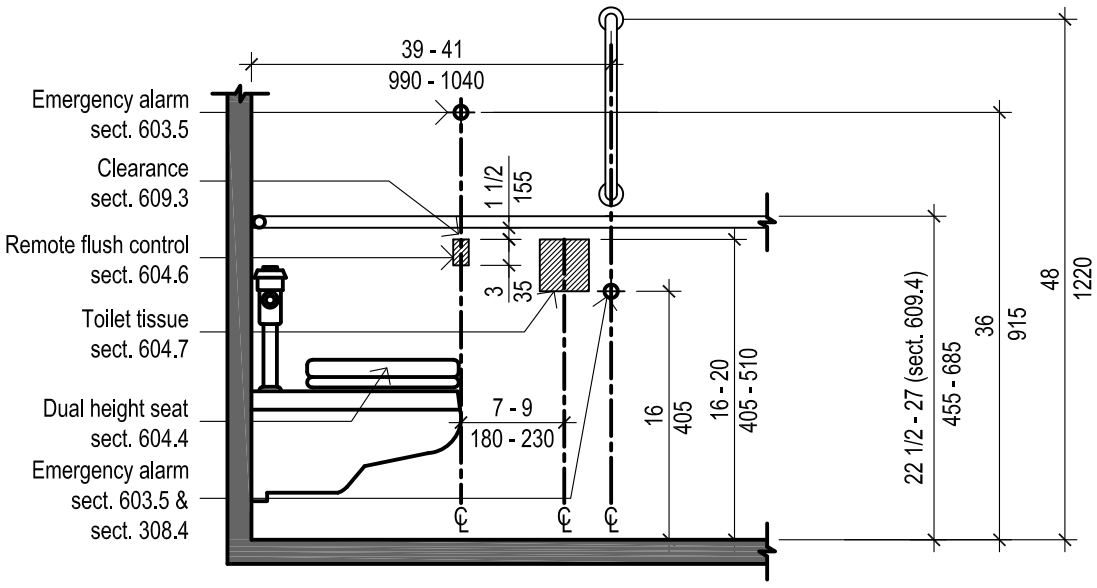


Fig. 604.10
Children's Dispenser and Button Locations

604.10.3 Doors. Toilet compartment doors should have a clear opening width of 36 inches (915 mm), door hardware should comply with Section 404.2.2 and Section 404.2.6. A door should be located either in the front partition, sidewall or partition, with the latch side as far as possible from the wc with the door swinging out. Where located in the front partition, the door opening should be 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the sidewall or partition farthest from the water closet. Where located in the sidewall or partition, the door opening should be 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the front partition. The door should be self-closing. A door pull complying with Section 404.2.6 should be provided on both sides of the door near the latch. Compartment doors should not swing into the compartment.

604.10.4 Seat Height. Seat height should comply with Section 604.4.

604.10.5 Grab Bars. Grab bars for water closets should comply with Section 609 for children and Section 604.5.

604.10.5.1 Horizontal. Provide a continuous grab bar, height complying with Section 609.4.2, along all walls or panels of the compartment terminating into the walls a minimum of 11/2 inch (38 mm) on each side of the door opening.

604.10.5.2 Vertical. Provide two vertical wall grab bars above the horizontal grab bars. One vertical grab bar should extend to 48 inches (1220 mm) above the floor, with the center line of the bar located between 39 inches (990 mm) and 41 inches (1040 mm) from the rear wall. If water closet depth is less than standard adult unit, locate the center of the bar 6 inches (150 mm) from the face of the water closet. Provide a second vertical grab bar between 6 inches from (12 mm) and 12 inches (25 mm) the latch side of the door opening, 24 inches (610 mm) in length.

604.10.5.3 Swing-up Grab Bar. Provide a swing-up grab bar complying with 604.5.4

604.10.6 Flush Controls. Flush controls should comply with 604.6. Consider a second automatic flush control provided on the open side of the water closet.

604.10.7 Toilet Tissue and Other Dispensers. Provide a dual toilet tissue dispenser unit complying with Section 604.7.1. Other dispensers (e.g., paper seat cover and hand sanitizer dispensers) should comply with Section 604.7.2.

604.10.8 Water Closet Location. Water Closet location should comply with Sections 604.2.3.

604.10.9 Emergency Alarm. Emergency alarm should comply with Section 603.5

604.10.10 Lighting. Lighting should comply with Section 603.6. Consider adjustable task lighting with motion detector/automatic timer.

604.10.11 Coat Hooks and Shelves. Coat hooks and shelves should comply with Section 603.4 for children reach ranges. Provide a shelf to avoid placing personal items on the floor.

604.10.11 Sink. Consider a sink complying with Section 606.

604.11 Supplemental Children's Ambulatory Compartment

604.11.1 General. Supplemental children's ambulatory compartments should comply with Section 604.9

604.11.2 Size. The compartment should be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum to 72 inches (1830 mm) maximum in depth and 32 inches (815 mm) in width.

604.11.3 Doors. Toilet compartment doors, including hardware, should have a clear opening of 32 inches (815 mm) and comply with Section 404.2.6.The approach to the latch side of the compartment door and the clearance between the door side of the compartment and any obstruction should be 48 inches (1220 mm). The door should be self-closing. Doors pull on both sides of the door near the latch and should comply with Section 309.4. Compartment doors should not swing into the compartment

604.11.4 Grab bars. Grab bars should comply with Section 604.5 and 609 for children. Handrails are not required on the door side of the compartment.

604.11.4.1 Horizontal. Provide a continuous grab bar, height complying with Section 609.4.2, along rear and side walls or panels of the compartment terminating into the walls 11/2 inch (38 mm) minimum from the front panel on each side of the door opening.

604.11.4.2 Vertical. Provide two vertical wall grab bars above the horizontal grab bars on both side walls or partitions, should be 48 inches (1220 mm) above the finished floor, with the center line of the bar located between 39 inches (990 mm) and 41 inches (1040 mm) from the rear wall. If water closet depth is less than standard adult unit, locate the center of the bar 6 inches (150 mm) from the face of the water closet.

604.11.5 Emergency Alarm. Provide an emergency alarm complying with Section 603.5

604.11.6 Toilet Tissue and Other Dispensers. Provide a dual toilet tissue dispenser unit complying with Section 604.7. Other dispensers (e.g., paper seat cover, hand sanitizer dispensers) should comply with Section 604.7.2.

604.11.7 Coat Hook and Shelf. A coat hook should be located on the back of the compartment door complying with Section 603.4. for children's reach range. Provide a shelf to avoid placing personal items on the floor.

604.11.8 Lighting. Lighting should comply with Section 603.6. Consider adjustable task lighting with motion detector/automatic timer.

604.11.9 Seat Height. Seat height should comply with Section 604.4.3

604.11.10 Flush Controls. Flush controls should comply with Section 604.6 and should be provided on both side walls of the compartment.

604.11.11 Water Closet Location. Water closet location should comply with Section 604.2.4

604.12 Single Occupant (Unisex/Family) Rest Rooms and Bathrooms.

604.12.1 General. Single occupant rest rooms and bathrooms should comply with Section 603.1.1 and Section 603.1.2 and not contain a separate water closet compartment but should comply with Section 604.8. If a separate unisex facility is not provided for children, the adult unisex facility should contain a portable platform or step for use by children. If the facility is intended primarily for children the facility, the water closet should comply with Section 604.10.

604.12.1 Advisory. Please refer to Section 603.1.1 for additional details. Inclusive single occupant rooms may be used in lieu of accessible unisex rooms because they exceed accessibility requirements. See *2008 NYCBC*, Section 1109 and specifically Section 1109.2.1 for minimum scoping requirements.

605 Urinals

605.1 General. Urinals should comply with Section 605.

605.1 Advisory. See *2008 NYCBC*, Section 1109.2 for minimum scoping requirements.

605.2 Height. Urinals should be the stall type or should be the wall hung type with the rim at 17 inches (430 mm) maximum above the floor. Wall hung type urinals for children 3 and older should have the rim 12 inches (305 mm) maximum aff.

605.2 Advisory. Rim height was based on the toilet seat height in the *2004 ADA/ABA*, Section 604.9 Advisory Specifications. The recommended height for children ages 3 & 4 is 11 - 12 inches.

605.3 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305, positioned for forward approach, should be provided.

605.4 Flush Controls. Flush controls should be automatic. Consider manual override button adjacent to automatic unit. Button should be 2 inches (51 mm) in diameter.

605.5 Privacy Partitions. Privacy partitions located adjacent to each side of the clear floor space should extend 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth, 72 inches (1800 mm) minimum in height aff with a toe clearance of 12 inches (305 mm). Maximize privacy between adjacent users.

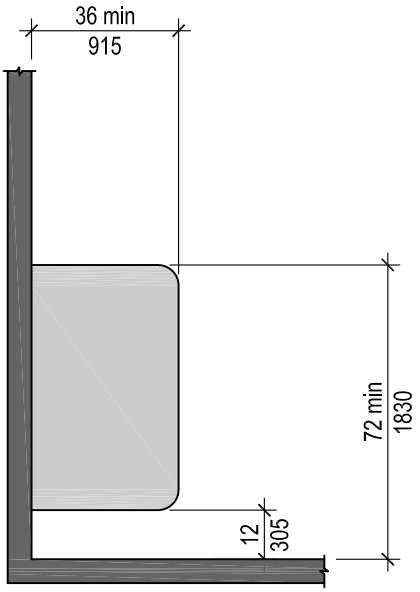


Fig. 605.5
Urinal Privacy Partition

605.5 Advisory. Privacy at urinals is an old issue. Dignity and respect are important aspects of inclusive design and should be primary concerns. The increase in the depth of the partition is an alternative to the use of a water closet compartment. Urinals are not usable by all and are not preferred by many for a variety of reasons. Urinals will continue to be included in bathroom designs because of fixture requirements embedded in codes, based on old preconceived usage rational. Suggested minimum depth is 36 inches, 72 inches high with a 12 inch (305 mm) space from the floor to the bottom of the partition. Consider enclosed urinal stalls as an alternative.

605.6 Grab Bars. Consider vertical grab bars on both sides located 36 inches (915 mm) minimum to 60 inches (1525 mm) above the finished floor. Consider a horizontal bar immediately above the flush control with a minimum 1 1/2 inch (40 mm) clearance, extending the width of the urinal.

606 Lavatories and Sinks

606.1 General. Lavatories and sinks should comply with Section 606. Provide at least one adjustable height unit . Also, consider placing multiple lavatories at different heights, especially for children. Provide at least one work space, preferably that is part of the countertop adjacent to a sink.

606.1 Advisory. See *2008 NYCBC*, Section 1109.3 for minimum scoping requirements.

606.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305.3, positioned for forward approach, should be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 should be provided.

606.2.1 Work Surface. Provide a work surface that is part of the lavatory countertop or adjacent to a lavatory that is 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width. A clear floor space, positioned for a forward approach to the work surface, should be provided. Knee and toe clearance should comply with Section 306. The clear floor space should be centered on the work surface. The surface should comply with Section 902 and be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the floor. Provide at least one work surface no higher than the maximum.

606.2.2 Clear Floor Space for Children. A knee clearance of 24 inches (610 mm) minimum above the floor should be permitted at lavatories and sinks used primarily by children ages 6 through 12 where the rim or counter surface is 31 inches (785 mm) maximum above the floor. A parallel approach may be used for very young children up to 5 years old.

606.3 Height. The front of lavatories and sinks should be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the higher of the rim or counter surface.

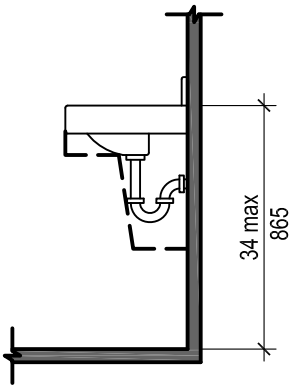


Fig. 606.3
Height of Lavatories and Sinks

606.3.1 Height for Children. Height for children 6 to 12 should be 31 inches (785 mm) maximum, but 27 inches (685 mm) is recommended and for children less than 5 years old 22 1/2 inches (572 mm) maximum, but 19 inches (482 mm) is recommended. Provide children's knee clearance complying with Section 306.3.6 and toe clearance complying with Section 306.2.6.

606.3.1 Advisory. Based on *Architectural Graphic Standards,* Anthropometric Data for Children the recommended lavatory and sink height for ages 6-12 standing is 23-27 inches and 5 or younger, 19 inches. Ages 6-12 seated is 19-23 inches and 5 or younger 17 1/2 inches.

606.4 Faucets. Faucets should comply with Section 309. Automatic operation is strongly recommended. Hand-operated metering faucets should remain open for 10 seconds minimum.

606.5 Lavatories with Enhanced Reach Range. Where enhanced reach range is required at lavatories, faucet and soap dispenser controls should have a reach depth of 11 inches (280 mm) maximum or, if automatic, should be activated within a reach depth of 11 inches (280 mm) maximum. Water and soap flow should be provided with a reach depth of 11 inches (280 mm) maximum.

606.5 Advisory. Enhanced reach range translates to placement of the controls and outlets closer to the user rather than the typical placement. A better solution for controlling the water flow and temperature is an automatic system that allows the user to input temperature, and on / off and flow with controls on the front face of the lavatory.

606.6 Exposed Pipes and Surfaces. Water supply and drainpipes under lavatories and sinks should be insulated or otherwise configured to protect against contact. There should be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under lavatories and sinks.

606.7 Operable Parts for Adults. Operable parts on dispensers (see Section 604.7.2), hand dryers and other equipment should comply with Section 308 and Section 309.

606.7.1 Operable Parts for Children. Operable parts on towel dispensers and hand dryers for children should comply with Section 308.4 and Section 309.4.

606.8 Other Dispensers. A variety of dispensers types are provided in Section 604.7.2. that may be part of the lavatory configuration complying with Section 606.5. Automatic hands-free dispensers are recommended for easy use and sanitary reasons.

606.9 Lighting. Provide automatic/adjustable task lighting for each lavatory and work surface with automatic shut-off.

607 Temporary/Supplemental Bathtub

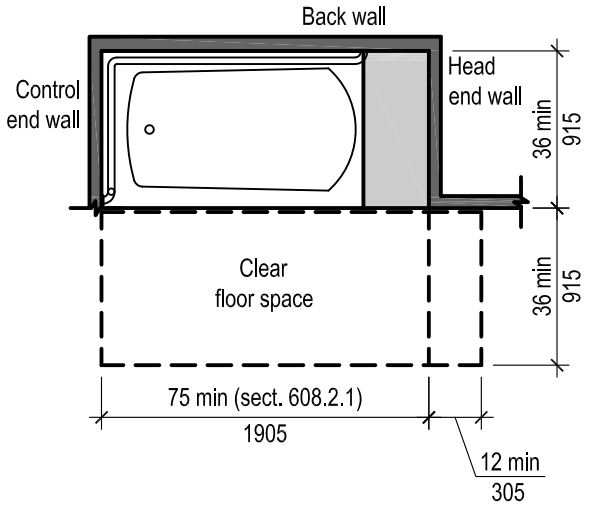


Fig. 607
Temporary/Supplemental Bathtub

607.1 General. Bathtubs are not usable by many people due to safety concerns, entry and exit difficulties and slippage. Refer to *ANSI A117.1 -2003*, Section 607 for applicable requirements. If a bathtub is used it can supplement the inclusive bathing compartment, or the compartment may be used temporarily for a bathtub.

607.1 Advisory. A bathing compartment as defined under Section 608 is the recommended inclusive solution for bathing. It remains under that section number to maintain the harmonization of the standard numbering system. Bathtubs are still important for many people, especially for therapeutic purposes that may be enhanced with variable water flow, aeration, color, sound, light and aroma. Rather than provide the bathtub requirements here, it is recommended to refer to *ANSI A117.1-2003* for the minimum code requirements if a bathtub is provided.

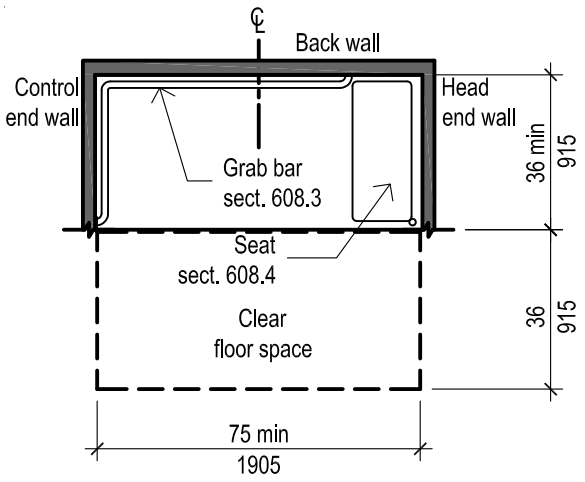
607.2 Supplemental Bathtub Door/Wall Openings. Bathtub door/wall openings may allow walk-in or transfer entry for a standard bathtub or a sit-tub vertical unit. Roll-in capability is not typically feasible due to bathtub maneuvering clearance requirements. Some units may fit within transfer-type shower compartment dimensions and provide another optional use of the bathing compartment space (see 608.1 Advisory). Provide door opening, threshold, built-in seat and maneuvering clearance complying with A117.1-2003, Section 608.2.1 Transfer-Type Shower Compartment.

608 Bathing Compartments

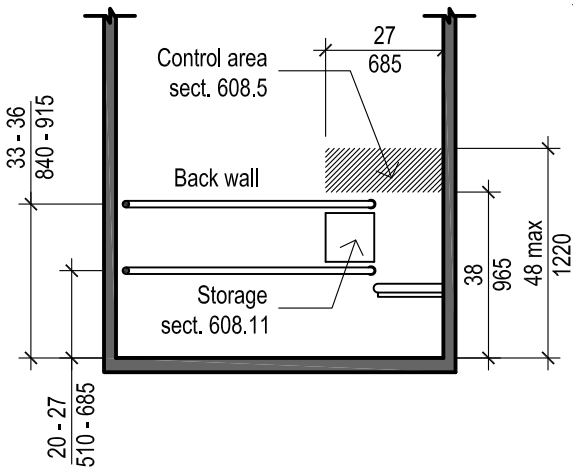
608.1 General. Inclusive bathing compartments should comply with Section 608. The compartment is a flexible multiple configuration space that accommodates a variety of user needs and preferences. The space may be an alcove or a designated open area within the bathroom.

608.1 Advisory. The inclusive bathing compartment is a fully adaptable multipurpose space. The bathtub option is not eliminated, rather it is one of several possible configurations. The intention is to create a complete and finished roll-in shower compartment space that may be adapted to a standard bathtub, walk-in or transfer type bathtub, or a transfer shower with the additional space for other functions (e.g., storage, lavatory, seating and dressing area). This provides flexibility in many types of buildings, such as institutional (e.g., assisted living, hospitals, nursing homes) and residential occupancies (e.g., hotels and multiple dwellings). See Section 1011.

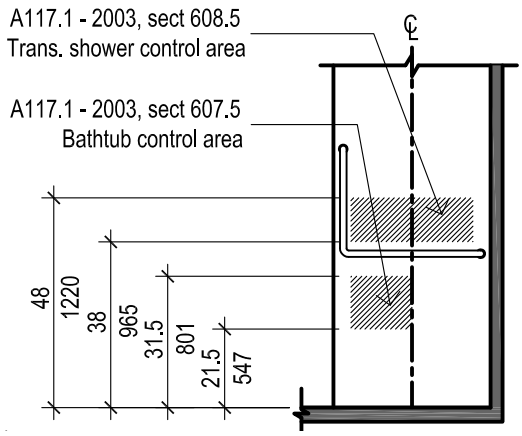
The compartment provides options in a dwelling unit to accommodate the current occupants' needs and preferences. Bathrooms may be extremely difficult or not feasible to alter later. Bathtubs are dangerous for some (e.g., the elderly that may find it difficult or impossible to enter and exit). The compartment may seem large, but the amount of space is similar to a standard bathtub installation. The roll-in configuration allows one to walk-in or roll-in unobstructed, sit, have enough room to wash outside of the water spray, accommodates a personal assistant, and accommodates types of seats other than the standard fold-up unit. It may also work as a drying and dressing area, in addition to some other functions (e.g., steam room).



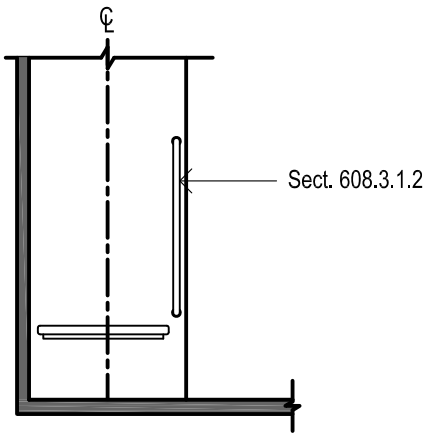
(a)
Plan



(b)
Back Wall Elevation



(c)
Control End Wall Elevation



(d)
Head End Wall Elevation

Fig 608.2
Bathing Compartment

608.2 Size and Clearances.

608.2.1 Compartment. The inclusive bathing compartment is adaptable and should have a clear inside dimension of 75 inches (1905 mm) minimum in width (to accommodate a minimum 60 inch bathtub with a 15 inch minimum seat) and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth, measured at the center point of opposing sides. An entry of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width should be provided. A lavatory complying with Section 606 is permitted at the end of the clearance opposite the shower compartment side where the shower controls are positioned. Provide a pull down seat folding complying with Sections 608.4 and Section 610 adjacent to the controls.

608.2.1 Advisory. Not every bathroom in every type of building will contain a roll-in shower. It is recommended that they should be provided in the required accessible bathrooms. The bathing compartment accommodates a bathtub. If a transfer shower is provided, the excess space could be used for other functions such as storage, dressing, or a lavatory. One of the primary obstacles for full adaptability is providing control areas for each type of bathing arrangement. Lines could be run to locations that contain a knock out panel for relocation of the controls. The cover surface may match the surrounding surface. The compartment may also be used as a changing area. This is suggested for certain types of buildings due to existing conditions or where space is limited, such as a small hotel. Adaptability is very appropriate for dwelling units (see Chapter 10) since the modifications are necessary to address the needs of the current occupant. The bathing compartment surfaces should be fully finished regardless of how it is adaptively used.

608.2.1.1 Clearance. A clearance of 75 inches (1905 mm) minimum in length (of compartment) and 12 inches beyond the wall at the head of the compartment or a total clearance of 87 inches (2210 mm), adjacent to the width of the open face of the compartment, and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth should be provided. A lavatory complying with Section 606 is permitted at the end of the clearance opposite the compartment side. Provide a pull down seat complying with Section 610 adjacent to the controls.

608.2.1.2 Tactile Floor Characteristics. Provide tactile floor characteristics complying with Section 302.6 that are highly slip resistant. Do not use a gloss surface.

608.2.2 Adaptable Enclosure. An adaptable enclosure should be removable without causing damage to surfaces. Clear floor space should be maintained complying with Section 608.2.1. Provide a clear opening 42 inches (1070 mm) minimum. The fold up seat should be provided on the entry side wall of the compartment and should not obstruct the clear opening. Enclosures should not obstruct controls or transfer onto the seat. Threshold should be flush with the exterior surface. Drainage should be provided so that it does not require the use of a threshold. If this is not possible, the threshold should comply with Section 303.

608.2.2 Advisory. Flexibility is increased for a shower compartment by allowing the enclosure. The entry needs to be wide enough to allow maneuvering into the compartment. If one-half of the enclosure is non-operable, that portion of the enclosure may be solid or in-filled with a wall, glass block, etc., but should be easily removable without causing any damage to surfaces to provide a full width opening if needed.

608.3 Grab Bars. Grab bars should comply with Section 609 and should be provided in accordance with Section 608.3. Grab bars for both adults and children are recommended. Each horizontal grab bar should be installed at a consistent height above the floor.

608.3.1 Locations. Grab bars should be provided on the back wall and on the wall opposite the fold-up seat. Grab bars should not be provided above the seat. Grab bars should be continuous but may be 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent wall.

608.3.1.1 Horizontal Grab Bars. Horizontal Grab bars should be provided for both adults and children across the end wall opposite seat and on the back wall. Grab bars should terminate a minimum of 27 inches (724 mm) from the seat wall.

608.3.1.1 Advisory. Horizontal grab bars should not conflict with control area (27 inches max. from back wall) as per Section 608.5.1. See 609.4.2 Advisory if a bathtub is temporarily used, regarding children's & adult lower grab bar height.

608.3.1.2 Vertical Grab Bar. A vertical grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length should be provided on the seat end wall, 24 inches (610 mm) minimum to 60 inches (1525 mm) maximum above the floor, and 4 inches (100 mm) maximum inward from the front edge of the shower. Vertical grab bar should not conflict with the folding operation of the seat.

608.3.1.2 Advisory. Due to the location of the seat and the termination location of the back wall grab bars, a vertical grab bar located adjacent to the seat should address the lack of grab bars behind the seat.

608.3.1.3 Grab Bar Configuration. Grab bars complying with Sections 608.3.1.1 and 608.3.1.2 should be continuous.

608.4 Seats. A folding seat should be provided in shower compartments and comply with Section 610. If the bathing compartment is an open corner, the folding seat should contain a back or provide a movable seat with back.

608.4 Advisory. The seat is necessary for a variety of tasks: soaping, rinsing, drying etc. It should fold to allow use of the entire compartment and to increase entry and exit clearances. If a designated corner of the bathroom is used instead of a compartment, it may not contain a seat wall, thus, a seat back should be provided.

608.5 Controls and Hand Showers. Controls and hand showers should comply with Sections 608.5, 608.6 and 309.4. This consists of one control area and two shower heads (adjustable height and hand). Standard shower bodies that normally split the flow between tub faucet and shower head will suffice. Two separate control areas may be used.

608.5 Advisory. Refer to Advisory 608.2.1. For the inclusive bathing compartment to be adaptable, it should contain the various control panel locations for a bathtub, transfer shower, and roll-in shower so that the compartment can be easily reconfigured. This must be done during initial construction to avoid damage or reconstruction of the walls. The control locations for transfer showers and bathtubs may be obtained in *A117.1-2003* in Sections 607 and 608. An additional control and drainage line should be considered for an adjacent temporary lavatory installation.

608.5.1 Roll-in Shower Configuration Control Location For the roll-in shower configuration, the controls and hand shower should be located 38 inches (965 mm) to 48 inches (1220 mm) above the shower floor. The controls and hand shower should be located on the back wall, no more than 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the end wall behind the seat. An additional shower centered on the control end wall is recommended for standing or seated use with an adjustable height shower head on a vertical bar with a range of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum to 84 inches (2130 mm) maximum above the floor for both adults and children.

608.5.2 Transfer Shower Configuration Control Location. For the transfer shower configuration the controls and hand shower should be located on the control end wall 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor, within 15 inches (380 mm) left or right of the centerline of the wall towards the open side of the shower.

608.5.3 Bathtub Configuration Control Location. Controls other than drain stoppers, should be provided on the control end wall, located between the bathtub rim and upper grab bar, and between the open side of the bathtub and the midpoint of the width of the bathtub.

608.5.3 Advisory. Based on standard bathtub 18 inch rim height and required grab bar heights and depth of bathtub, the control area should meet legal requirements if it is located on the control end wall 21.5 inches (460 mm) minimum to 31.5 inches (760 mm) maximum (allows 1/1/2 clearance for 33 min. bar height) above the finished floor within the compartment, between the open side of the bathtub and the centerline of the wall.

608.5.4 Adaptable Control Panel. The control panel should contain the faucet body attached to a face plate with standard flex lines for hot and cold water with female threaded connectors on the back side of the face plate. The front of the face plate should match existing material and should be flush with surrounding surfaces. An alternate is to provide a face plate (e.g. stainless steel) that may sit on the surface of surrounding material with a waterproof gasket or caulking. This will address potential problems with tile grid lines. If and when the control panel is moved to another location the empty box face plate is relocated.

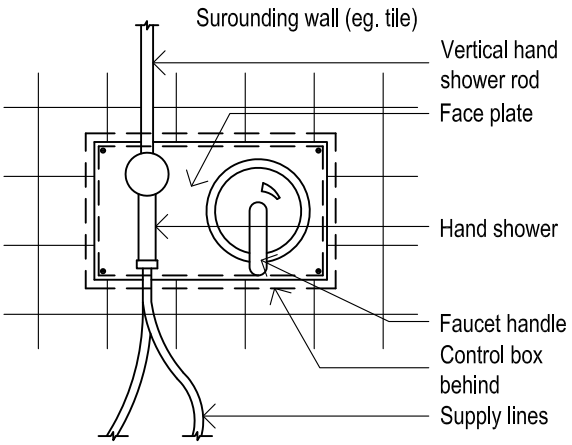
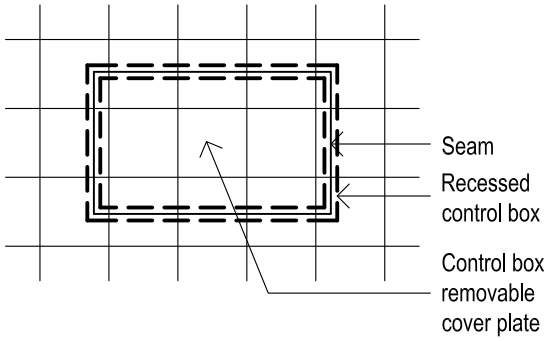
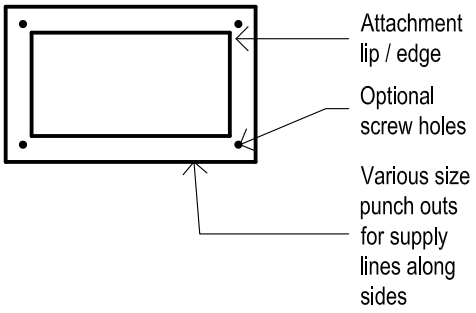


Fig. 608.5.4
Adaptable Control Panel with Control Type Example

608.5.5 Adaptable In-Wall Control Boxes. Three in-wall control boxes should be installed. One for each of the following: the roll-in shower, transfer shower and a bathtub. Hot and cold supply lines should be provided for each box. The box should contain various size hole punch-outs to accommodate a variety of supply line routing scenarios, especially for difficult existing conditions. Shut-off valves may be provided in each box or one set of shutoffs for the entire bathing compartment located within the room. Supply line terminations within each box may be male threaded type connectors for easy flex line attachment. Provide screw type caps. The box should contain 1/2 inch (12 mm) lip or edge for attaching the adaptable control panel.



(a)
Control Box Covers



(b)
Control Box

Fig.608.5.5
Adaptable In-Wall Control Box

608.5.5.1 Lavatory Control Box. Consider a supplemental lavatory control box with drain line for a temporary installation in the bathing compartment (e.g. adjacent to a temporary transfer shower)

608.5.6 Adaptable Bathtub Drain Connection/ Location. If the bathing compartment is fitted with a bathtub, in lieu of a threaded connection, consider a male drain line extension on the bathtub drain that fits into the floor drain, perhaps utilizing a gasket similar to toilet-to-waste line seal. Drain location for the roll-in shower should be located at the standard bathtub drain location. This will resolve relocation of the drain line. Drain control should be located in control area. Consider the use of a standard trench drain, especially if the bathing area is a corner or side of room and the use of a secondary room drain for overflow with an automatic trap primer.

608.5.7 Emergency Alarm. Emergency alarm should comply with Section 603.5 Push button location should comply with 608.5.7.1. The push button should be waterproof. Provide a water detection alarm for overflow and floor flooding.

608.5.7.1 Push Button Locations. A waterproof push button should be located within control area complying with Section 608.5.1 or immediately outside shower compartment complying with 702.2.

608.6 Hand Showers. A hand shower should be provided with a detachable hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length, which can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand shower. The hand shower should have a control with a non-positive shut-off feature. An adjustable-height shower head mounted on a vertical bar should be installed to not obstruct the use of grab bars.

608.7 Thresholds. Thresholds in roll-in-type shower compartments should be flush with the surrounding floor. If threshold is raised due to existing conditions it should be 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum in height in accordance with Section 303.

608.8 Shower Enclosures. Adaptable shower compartment enclosures should not obstruct controls and should comply with Section 608.2.2.

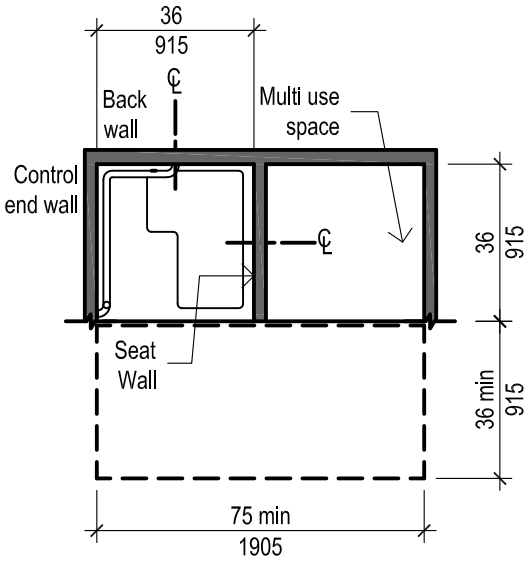


Fig. 608.12
Temporary/Supplemental Transfer Shower and Multi-Use Space

608.9 Water Temperature. Showers should deliver water that is 120 degrees (49 degrees C) maximum. An emergency temperature sensor should automatically cut hot water if the outlet temperature exceeds the maximum. A thermostatic control that automatically compensates for both changes in water pressure and changes in temperature is recommended.

608.10 Illumination. Illumination should be provided within the bathing compartment. Fixture should be water resistant. Controls should be located immediately outside of the bathing compartment. Consider motion detector controls.

608.11 Recessed Storage. It is recommended to provide a recessed storage space within the shower for storage of bathing products and toiletries, and a hook complying with section 603.4 for hanging items.

608.11.1 Location. Recessed storage space should be located on the back wall below the control area 20 inches (508 mm) minimum above the floor to a maximum of 1 1/2 inches below grab bar. Width should be no more than 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the end wall behind the seat.

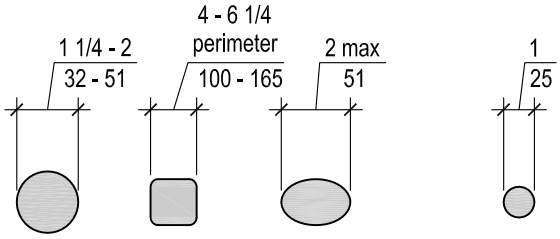
608.12 Temporary/Supplemental Transfer Shower and Multi-use Space. Transfer-type shower compartments are not recommended for inclusive design applications due to size, safety, entry and exit difficulty, and usability. Refer to *ANSI A117.1 -2003*, Section 608.2.1for applicable requirements. A transfer shower may be temporarily installed in the inclusive bathing compartment.

609 Grab Bars

609.1 General. Grab bars should comply with Section 609.

609.1 Advisory. Grab bars can be used anywhere they are needed. In addition to the identified locations for grab bars for toilet or bathing facilities, consider installations for standard toilet compartment, urinals, lavatories and along the room walls.

609.2 Cross Section. Grab bars should have a cross section complying with Section 609.2.1 and 609.2.2.



(a)
Adult Grab Bars

(b)
Children's Grab Bar

Fig. 609.2
Grab Bar Cross Sections

609.2.1 Adult Circular Cross Section. Grab bars with a circular cross section should have an outside diameter of 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum.

609.2.2 Adult Non-circular Cross Section. Grab bars with a non-circular cross section should have a cross section dimension of 2 inches (51 mm) maximum, and a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (102 mm) minimum and 4.8 inches (122 mm) maximum.

609.2.3 Children's Circular Cross Section. Children's grab bars should have a circular cross section and an outside diameter of 1 inch (25.4 mm).

609.3 Spacing. The spacing between the wall and the grab bar should be 1 ½ inches (38 mm). The space between the grab bar and projecting objects below and at the ends of the grab bar should be 1 ½ inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar and projecting objects above the grab bar should be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum.

EXCEPTIONS:

1. The space between the grab bars and shower controls, shower fittings, and other grab bars above the grab bars should be permitted to be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum.
2. Swing-up grab bars should not be required to comply with Section 609.3
3. Emergency alarm button should be permitted within the 12 inch (305 mm) clearance complying with Section 603.5.1.
4. Horizontal grab bars are not required on walls 12 inches (305 mm) wide or less.

609.4 Height of Horizontal Grab Bars. Height of grab bars should comply with Section 609.4.

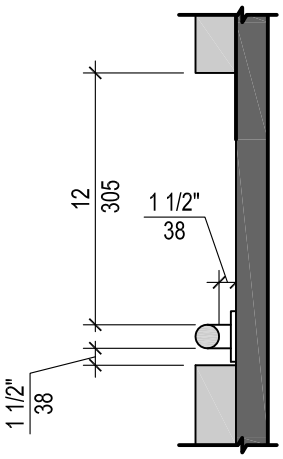


Fig. 609.3
Spacing of Grab Bars

609.4.1 Adult Grab Bar Heights. Adult grab bar should be installed generally in a horizontal position, 33 inches (840 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finished floor measured to the top of the gripping surface. At water closets for adults, grab bars should be installed in a horizontal position 34 1/2 inches (875 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum.

609.4.2 Children's Grab Bar Heights. Children's grab bars should be installed generally in a horizontal position. Dimensions are from the finished floor to the top of the gripping surface. Children ages 9 through 12, 25 inches (635 mm) to 27 inches (685 mm). Children ages 5 through 8, 20 inches (510 mm) to 25 inches (635 mm). Children 3 and 4, 18 inches (455 mm) to 20 inches (510 mm). In showers children's grab bars should be provided that address the primary age group that the facility serves.

609.4.2 Advisory. Children's dimensions were obtained from the *2004 ADA-ABA*,Section 105.3. The lower heights may create a conflict if a bathtub is used since the lower grab bar is required by code to be 9 inches minimum above the tub rim: 18 inches (typical rim height range 15-18 inches) plus 9 inches places the bar at approximately 27 inches. Thus, the lower bar may need to be relocated if a bathtub is used.

609.5 Surface Hazards. Grab bars, and any wall or other surfaces adjacent to grab bars should be free of sharp or abrasive elements. Edges should be rounded.

609.6 Fittings. Grab bars should not rotate within their fittings.

609.7 Installation. Grab bars should be installed in any manner that provides a gripping surface at the locations specified in this standard and does not obstruct the floor space.

609.8 Advisory. Pull down grab bars should accommodate an higher impact load. Provide strong fasteners attached directly to structural members. The increased strength is necessary to sustain impact loads (e.g., someone slipping)

609.8 Structural Strength. Allowable stresses should not be exceeded for materials used where a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the grab bar, fastener mounting device, or supporting structure.

610 Shower Seats.

610.1 General. Seats for inclusive roll-in-type shower compartments should comply with Section 610.

610.2 Seat. A fold down type seat should be provided in a roll-in shower compartment adjacent to the controls. A dual height seat or seat with an adaptor or an adjustable height seat should be provided.

610.3 Height. A dual height seat or seat with adaptor should be 17 inches (430 mm) and 19 inches (485 mm) above the finished floor, measured to the top of the seat. An adjustable height seat should have an extended low range to accommodate children that is 12 inches (305 mm) minimum above the finished floor.

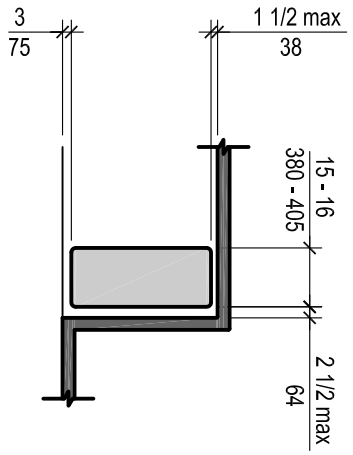


Fig. 610.3
Shower Compartment Seat

610.3 Advisory. A minimum of 12 inches may be used to accommodate children but the reinforcement should be capable of supporting the range of heights from young children to adults. A height option of 15 inches is preferred by many adults.

610.4 Clearances. The rear edge of a rectangular seat should be 2 1/2 inches (64 mm) maximum and the front edge 15 inches (380 mm) minimum to 16 inches (405 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The side edge of the seat should be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) maximum from the control wall. The seat should extend from the control wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. The length of the seat should not conflict the vertical grab bar complying with Section 608.3.1.2.

610.5 Structural Strength. Allowable stresses should not be exceeded for materials used where a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the seat, fastener mounting device, or supporting structure.

611 Washing Machines and Clothes Dryers

611.1 General. Washing machines and clothes dryers should be front loading and comply with Section 611. Consider models with sloping door face/opening for enhanced access. Provide a water overflow alarm, smoke alarm and gas detection alarm (for gas fired units) complying with Section 309.9. Provide local shutoffs or multisensory signage with location of main shutoffs. Amenities should comply with Section 1010.

611.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305, positioned for parallel approach, should be provided. The clear floor space should be centered on the latch side of the appliance door opening

611.3 Operable Parts. Operable parts, including doors, lighting, timer, lint screens, detergent and bleach compartments, should comply with Section 309.

611.4 Height. Front loading machines should have the bottom of the opening to the laundry compartment 19 1/2 inches (495 mm) minimum as per Section 308 and 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the floor. Provide pedestals to meet suggested height if necessary. Consider pedestals with a toe recess. Consider machines mounted to provide knee and toe clearance for a seated perpendicular approach complying with Section 306. Consider automatic adjustable height pedestals to accommodate user needs and preferences for both a seated and standing position.

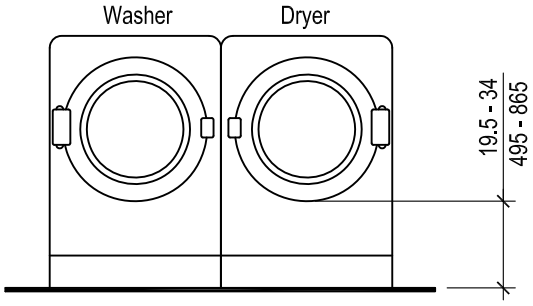


Fig. 611.4
Height of Laundry Equipment

611.5 Clothes Dryer Light and Timer. Dryers should be equipped with an internal light source, ambient and work lighting. Provide a multisensory timers complying with Section 309.

611.6 Illumination. Provide adequate general and task lighting for washing machine and clothes dryer.

611.7 Work Surface. Provide a work surface complying Section 902.

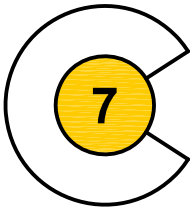
612 Saunas and Steam Rooms

612.1 General. Saunas and steam rooms should comply with Section 612.

612.2 Saunas. Saunas should be provided with a swing out door, a 36 inch (915 mm) minimum clear opening with view panel complying with Section 404.2.10, a clear floor space complying with Section 304 and Section 305 and transferable seating. Heating unit should not be located in the clear floor space. Provide adequate lighting levels, emergency alarm complying with Section 708, multisensory alarms complying with Section 309.9 and two-way communication system. Controls should be located on the exterior of the sauna with an automatic and manual emergency shut-off within the sauna complying with Section 308 and Section 309. Provide wood grab bars. Provide positive drainage to a floor drain. Floor surfaces should comply with Section 302. Benches should comply with Section 903. Thresholds should be flush with the adjacent floor surface or comply with Section 404.2.4.2.

612.2 Advisory. It is suggested to provide a clear floor space 72 x 72 inches complying with Section 304 in large saunas. This may not be practical in small facilities or possible due to existing conditions. An alternative is a 36 x 60 inch space complying with Section 305, but requires the occupant to either back in or out. Since a person who uses a mobility device should not operate their device in reverse, the turning circle is recommended. If a side entry is used, provide a clear floor space complying with Section 305.7 Alcoves.

612.3 Steam Rooms. Steam rooms should comply with Section 612.2.



Communication Elements and Features

700 Introduction. Chapter 7 includes: emergency assistance alarms, visual and tactile characters, Braille, pictograms, remote infrared audible sign systems, telephones, detectable surfaces, detectable warnings, assistive listening systems, information transaction machines, two-way communications, signage system, public information display types, directories, room number system, emergency signage, and wayfinding.

Emergency assistance alarms are recommended throughout the book for safety and security. The lower button location allows activation from a prone position. Consider the use of an enhanced security system with emergency communication devices in isolated areas and critical locations. Consider a video surveillance system where there is no conflict with privacy that allows two-way visual communications.

Alarm output levels should exceed ambient sound levels. Noise and reverberation levels should be reduced to enhance communications and to accommodate specific activities.

Visual characters, tactile characters and Braille recommendations enhance our legal requirements. Extensive use of pictograms is recommended to reduce reliance on text and for simplicity. They should consist of common symbols and easily recognized images. Pictograms are supplemented with simple text, and when within reach ranges with Braille. Images can be grouped to identify multiple features. A series can be used to convey a sequential message (similar to a cartoon strip). Reliance on multiple languages should be reduced at international venues (e.g. airports and stadiums).

A wide range of communications applications are addressed with remote infrared audible sign systems, telephones, computers, cell phones, assistive listening systems (e.g., induction loop, infra-red and FM) and other two-way communication systems (e.g. monitors for hand signing for people with hearing disabilities).

Information transaction machines (ITM's), including bank ATM's, should be multisensory, provide internet access, accommodate a range of statures and as easy and simple to use as possible. ATM's should allow multiple types of monetary transactions.

Truncated dome detectable warning, raised strip (corduroy) and tactile oval hazard warning surfaces are defined. Surface treatments may include enhancements, complying with Section 302.6 Sensory Characteristics.

Two-way visual communication systems allow visual interpreting for signing and lip reading. Other types of systems, such as, an information/navigation reference point system is recommended for people with visual disabilities. It utilizes a hand held activator with automatic vibration that can trigger recorded information from base units, providing proximity and directionality. Another system is an information/emergency terminal that uses the existing public pay phone infrastructure. These terminals may also be used as part of a building directory system and other applications. Terminals are centrally controlled with portrait oriented interactive touch screens, allowing direct access to 311, 911, commercial, and emergency information with bi-directional voice and data communication. Virtual keyboards may be provided, but tactile keyboards are also suggested for people with vision disabilities. Robust voice command software could allow full verbal operation in multiple languages.

The proposed signage system is multisensory and includes a wide range of installations including free standing, wall, ceiling and floor locations. It should be modular for modification and maintenance. Graphics rather than text reduces confusion and makes it more international in nature with less dependence on multiple languages. Content should be concise and properly illuminated.

Public information display types include: wall mounted, free-standing, kiosks, help desks, ceiling and floor installations. Multisensory kiosks should be inviting and easy to use, provide content in visual, auditory and tactile formats, and augmented with raised line maps and diagrams. They combine wayfinding, general information, 911 emergency, 311 information and other features in multiple and redundant ways to address a variety of sensory and cognitive skills. Various sensor technologies are identified, such as, capacitive touch, pressure sensitivity and infrared optics.

Directory components are broken down into non-electronic and electronic types. Main/primary directories, floor directories, and suite directories are defined.

The example room numbering system is based on simple logic. It should be clear and concise with compass orientation, visual, tactile and auditory characteristics. Consider the use of an electronic wayfinding system to help locate rooms, suites or other specific spaces, such as the information/navigation reference point system.

Emergency systems are divided into non-electric and electronic types. A variety of installation location are provided, especially floor locations for use during a smoke condition. They should provide critical information and direct occupants to the safest, least circuitous routes to exits. Multisensory information increases effectiveness in adverse and dangerous conditions. Emergency evacuation plans are comprised of handouts, drill schedules, maps and directories. A voluntary confidential registry is recommended for identification, location and for occupant verification during an emergency.

Wayfinding should be an intentional, well thought out, overlapping multisensory navigation system that utilizes the entire environment. It may be dynamic, passive, dramatic and subtle, functioning on a conscious and subconscious level. Composition of the overall system will determine it’s effectiveness, especially for first time visitors. Wayfinding also includes: smart phone/PDA/GPS wayfinding, cell phone audible wayfinding, recorded tours; information/navigation/alert reference point system, information/emergency terminals; multisensory information/emergency kiosks, and multisensory pedestrian signals.

701 General

701.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 7 should apply where recommended by the scoping provisions adopted by the administrative authority.

702 Alarms

702.1 General. Accessible audible and visual alarms and notification appliances should comply with Section 702 and should be installed in accordance with *NFPA 72* listed in Section 105.2.2, should be powered by a commercial light and power source, connected to the electrical system, and should be permanently installed. Alarms should be multisensory complying with Section 309.9.

702.2 Emergency Assistance Alarms. Emergency assistance alarms should comply with Section 702.

702.2 Advisory. This section explores the concept of the help button. It may include two-way communication. Versions of this notification system are currently used in facilities such as hospitals, nursing homes, and senior housing. A comparable type of system is the 'blue light" emergency call system, which is common on college campuses. Another version is currently used by the MTA in subway stations. It is recommended to use a blue light indicator for all public area installations to help locate the button. This is especially useful for exterior applications.

702.2.1 Help Button. A round help button with the operable portion of the button, 2 inches (50 mm) minimum in diameter with the word "HELP" in tactile character 5/8 inches (16 mm) in height in accordance with Section 703.3 directly below the button with Braille in accordance with Section 703.4. Buttons may be a variety of shapes and sizes including a pull-cord type (e.g, for use in hospitals), flush, recessed, or protruding. Button should illuminate, beep or provide verbal indication and vibrate when actuated to confirm activation. Refer to Section 309.6, 309.7 and 309.8. Help buttons should be tied into a central alarm and communication system where possible. Buttons should be waterproof and vandal proof with unexposed wiring.

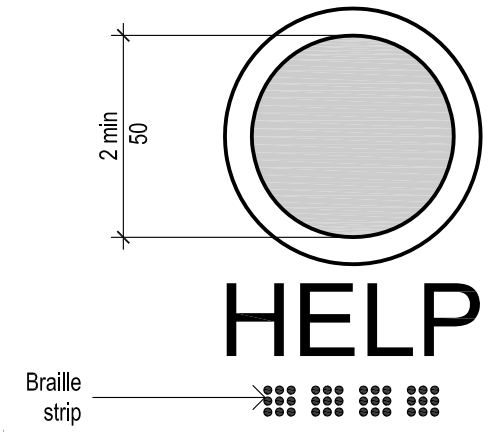


Fig. 702.2.1
Help Button Example

702.2.2 Help Button with Two-Way Communication Device. In some locations it is suggested that in addition to the help button a two-way communication system should also be installed in accordance with Section 708.

702.2.3 Help Button Locations. Help button locations consist of an upper and lower position, identified throughout the guide and should be provided but not limited to the following locations: inclusive toilet compartments, shower, ambulatory compartment, children's toilet compartment, unisex toilet, elevator, platform lift, stairway, dwelling unit, (bathrooms entry door and other locations as per the occupants requirements), sleeping unit, kiosk, assembly area, transportation facility, and dispersed throughout all institutional classification buildings. Distribution should be throughout exterior sites at all points of reference including: entrance, secluded locations, ramps, stairs , seating areas, any directories and included in other types of signage such as kiosks and anywhere that poses a physical hazard a security risk, isolation or required to provide assistance.

702.2.3 Advisory. The lower button location is for someone who cannot raise themselves off the floor, such as from a fall or medical emergency. The height takes into account a very low reach range in a prone position for a person with very limited dexterity. This may be the only way of summoning help for someone in a life threatening situation. The height also takes into account conflicts with water, and electric outlet locations.

702.2.4 Upper Button Location. The upper button location should be centered 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor and within reach ranges complying with Section 308 or as recommended for a specific application in the *IDG*.

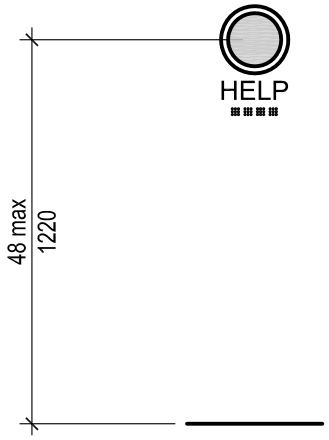


Fig. 702.2.4
Upper Button Location

702.2.4 Advisory. In some instances the upper button is recommended at a specific height, such as in the accessible toilet compartments to avoid conflicts with other component (see 603.5.1)

702.2.5 Lower Button Location. The lower button location should be centered 18.6 -19.5 inches (472-495 mm) above the finished floor complying with Sections 308.2.1 and 308.3.1

702.2.5 Advisory. The lower button may also utilize a pull cord activation mechanism. This is appropriate for institutional facilities such as a hospital or nursing home. The pull cord may be the easiest means of activation for someone that is seriously injured and disoriented. See also 702.2.3 Advisory.

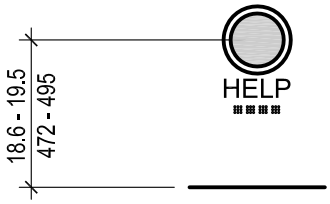


Fig. 702.2.5
Lower Button Location

702.2.6 Children's Button Locations. The upper and lower locations should be placed within reach ranges complying with Section 308.4 or as recommended for a specific application in the IDG.

Height above Floor to Baseline of Character	Horizontal Viewing Distance	Minimum Character Height
40 inches (1015 mm) to less than or equal to 70 inches (1780 mm)	Less than 6 feet (1830 mm)	5/8 inch (16 mm)
	6 feet (1830 mm) and greater	5/8 inch (16 mm), plus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 6 feet (1830 mm)
Greater than 70 inches (1780 mm) to less than or equal to 120 inches (3050 mm)	Less than 15 feet (4570 mm)	2 inches (51 mm)
	15 feet (4570 mm) and greater	2 inches (51 mm), plus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 15 feet (4570 mm)
Greater than 120 inches (3050 mm)	Less than 21 feet (6400 mm)	3 inches (75 mm)
	21 feet (6400 mm) and greater	3 inches (76 mm), plus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 21 feet (6400 mm)

Fig. 703.2.4
Character Height

702.2.7 Help Alarm Notification Device Location. In addition to connection to a central alarm system where viable, a separate help alarm notification device should be provided in accordance with *NFPA 72* that is both visual and auditory and should be provided immediately outside of the following locations: toilet and bathing rooms, dwelling unit, designated classrooms or other institutional rooms, and other rooms or areas that pose a physical hazard, a potential isolation, or security risk.

703 Signs

703.1 General. Signs should comply with Sections 703, 709, 710, 711, 712, 713, and 714.

703.2 Visual Characters.

703.2.1 General. Visual characters should comply with Section 703.2

EXCEPTION: Visual characters complying with Section 703.3 should not be required to comply with Section 703.2.

703.2.2 Case. Characters should be a mixture of uppercase and lowercase.

703.2.2 Advisory. Avoid the use of all upper case letters to increase legibility.

703.2.3 Style. Characters should be conventional in form. Characters should not be italic, oblique, script, highly decorative, or of other unusual forms

703.2.4 Visual Character Height. The upper case letter "I" should be used to determine the allowable height of all characters of a font. The uppercase letter "I" of the font should have a minimum height complying with Table 703.2.4. Viewing distance should be measured as the horizontal distance between the character and an obstruction preventing further approach towards the sign.

703.2.5 Character Width. The uppercase letter "O" should be used to determine the allowable width of all characters of a font. The width of the uppercase "O" of the font should be 55 percent minimum and 110 percent maximum of the height of the uppercase "I" of the font.

703.2.6 Stroke Width. The uppercase letter "I" should be used to determine the allowable stoke width of all characters of a font. The stroke width should be 10 percent minimum and 30 percent maximum of the height of the uppercase "I" of the font.

703.2.7 Character Spacing. Spacing should be measured between the two closest points of adjacent characters within a message, excluding word spaces. Spacing between individual characters should be 10 percent minimum and 35 percent maximum of the character height.

703.2.8 Line Spacing. Spacing between the baselines of separate lines of characters within a message should be 135 percent minimum to 170 percent maximum of the character height.

703.2.9 Height Above Floor. Visual characters should be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum above the floor of the viewing position, measured to the baseline of the character. Heights should comply with Table 703.2.4, based on the size of the characters on the sign. Consider also eye levels complying with Section 310.

EXCEPTION: Visual characters indicating elevator car controls should not be required to comply with Section 703.2.9.

703.2.9 Advisory. Refer to Section 407 and Section 408 for signage requirements for elevators and LULA's.

703.2.9.1 Floor Surface. Provide floor surface signage in addition to typical wall mounted signage where appropriate. Integrate signage into the surface material (e.g. street names in sidewalk concrete) or apply to floor surface complying with Section 302 and in some instances Section 303. Floor surface signage locations are provided throughout the guide but not limited to the following locations: fire stairs, entry doors, toilet and bathing facilities, critical reference points, transportation facilities (various locations), assembly areas and seating locations, swimming pool along the perimeter, throughout medical facilities, exterior routes, and other locations that would benefit by the installation of floor signage in additional to the standard wall mounted location.

703.2.9.1 Advisory. Evacuation plans should be well thought out, simple and provided to occupants with reduced mobility.

703.2.9.2 Supplemental Emergency Floor Surface Signage. Provide floor surface emergency egress signage complying with Section 713. This includes directional signage to exterior discharge or nearest area of rescue. Signage should include the word “EXIT” and directional arrows for the most direct exit route. All emergency signage should be photo luminescent complying with Section 703.2.11

703.2.9.3 Integrated Signage. Some signage may be integrated with components. This includes but is not limited to the following: top surfaces of parapet walls, handrails, door panic hardware, windows, plumbing fixtures, appliance control panels, alarms, automatic teller machines, sales and service counters, etc. Integrated signage should be both visual and tactile, including Braille where practice, and should comply with Section 703.

703.2.10 Finish and Contrast. Characters and their background should have a non-glare finish. Characters should contrast with their background, with either light characters on a dark background, or dark characters on a light background complying with Section 302.10 and 302.11.

703.2.10 Advisory. The highest possible contrast should be used. White or yellow on a black background are easier to read for a greater range of users than dark letters on a light background. The contrast of colors is more important then the colors themselves since some people have difficulty distinguishing color and will have to rely on the contrast. Avoid using colors of similar lightness adjacent to one another, exaggerate lightness difference between foreground and background colors. Refer to the Lighthouse International, *Effective Color Contrast, Designing for People with Partial Sight and Color Deficiencies* by Aries Arditi, Ph.D.

703.2.11 Photo Luminescent. In addition to complying with all applicable code requirements, all emergency exit path signage at both wall and floor locations and all directional arrows or other graphic guidance should be comprised of photo luminescent materials. They should be washable, non-toxic, non-radioactive, and if subjected to fire must be self-extinguishing when flame is removed

703.3 Tactile Characters.

703.3.1 General. Tactile characters should comply with Section 703.3, and should be duplicated in Braille complying with Section 703.4

703.3.2 Depth. Tactile characters should be raised 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) minimum above their background.

703.3.3 Case. Characters should be uppercase.

703.3.4 Style. Characters should be sans serif. Characters should not be italic, oblique, script, highly decorative, or other unusual forms.

703.3.5 Character Height. The uppercase letter “I” should be used to determine the allowable height of all the characters of a font. The height of the upper case letter “I” of the font, measured vertically from the baseline of the character, should be 5/8 inch (16 mm) minimum, and 2 inches (50 mm) maximum.

EXCEPTION: Where separate tactile and visual characters with the same information are provided, the height of the tactile uppercase letter “I” should be permitted to be 1/2 inch (13 mm) minimum.

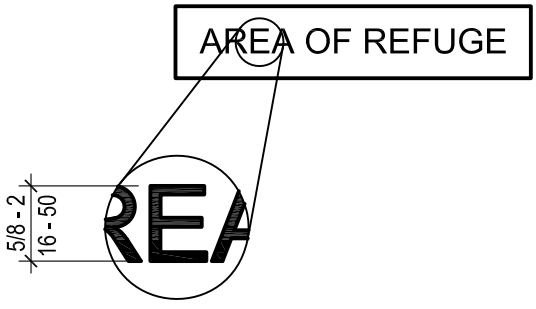


Fig. 703.3.5
Character Height

703.3.6 Character Width. The uppercase letter “O” should be used to determine the allowable width of all characters of a font. The width of the upper case “O” of the font should be 55 percent minimum and 110 percent maximum of the height of the uppercase “I” of the font.

703.3.7 Stroke Width. Tactile character stroke width should comply with Section 703.3.7. The uppercase letter “I” of the font should be used to determine the allowable stroke width of all characters of the font.

703.3.7 Advisory. The stroke width as written allows a wider stroke at the bottom that tapers toward the top.

703.3.7.1 Maximum. The stroke width should be 15 percent maximum of the height of the uppercase letter “I” measured at the top surface of the character, and 30 percent maximum of the uppercase letter “I” measured at the base of the character.

703.3.7.2 Minimum. When characters are both visual and tactile, the stroke width should be 10 percent minimum of the height of the upper case letter “I”.

703.3.8 Character Spacing. Character spacing should be measured between the two closest points of adjacent tactile characters within a message, excluding word spaces. Spacing between individual tactile characters should be 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) minimum measured at the top surface of the characters, 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) minimum measured at the base of the characters, and four times the tactile character stroke width maximum. Characters should be separated from raised borders and decorative elements 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) minimum.

703.3.9 Line Spacing. Spacing between the baselines of separate lines of tactile characters within a message should be 135 percent minimum and 170 percent maximum of the tactile character height.

703.3.10 Height above Floor. Height above floor should comply with Section 703.3.10.

703.3.10 Advisory. Refer to Section 407 and Section 408 for signage requirements for elevators and LULA’s

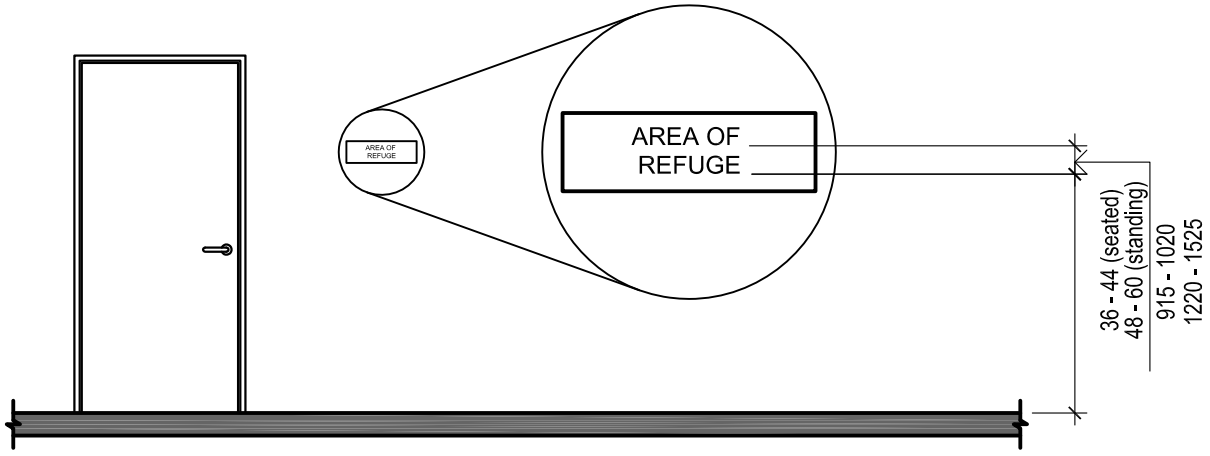


Fig. 703.3.10
Height of Tactile Characters above Floor or Ground

703.3.10.1 Adult Standing Position. Tactile characters should be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum above the floor, measured to the baseline of the lowest tactile character and 60 inches (1525 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the baseline of the highest tactile character.

EXCEPTION: Tactile characters for elevator car controls should not be required to comply with Section 703.3.10.

703.3.10.2 Adult Seated Position. Tactile characters should be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum above the floor, measured to the baseline of the lowest tactile character and 44 inches (1020 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the baseline of the highest tactile character.

703.3.10.3 Children Position Ages 6 - 12. Tactile characters for children should comply with Section 703.3.10.2.

703.3.10.3 Advisory. It is questionable if tactile signage should be provided for children 5 and younger, due to comprehension and need. Signage should be simplified, if used, and should be comprised primarily of pictograms and directional graphics.

703.3.10.4 Floor Surface. Provide floor surface tactile signage in addition to typical wall mounted signage where appropriate. Integrate signage into the surface material (e.g. street names in sidewalk concrete) or apply to floor surface complying with Section 302 and Section 303. Floor surface tactile signage locations are provided throughout the guide but not limited to the following locations: fire stairs, entry doors, toilet and bathing facilities, critical reference points, transportation facilities (various locations), assembly areas and seating locations, swimming pool both along the perimeter and underwater identifying ladder and stair locations, throughout medical facilities, exterior routes, saunas and steam rooms and other locations that would benefit by the installation of floor signage in additional to the standard wall mounted location.

703.3.10.5 Supplemental Emergency Floor Surface Signage. Provide in addition to standard emergency exit signage floor tactile surface emergency egress signage from each floor to exterior discharge or nearest area of refuge. Signage should include the word " EXIT" and directional arrows for the most direct exit route. All emergency signage should be photo luminescent complying with Section 703.2.11

703.3.10.6 Supplemental Tactile Signage Locations. In addition to tactile signage locations on walls and floors, tactile signage integrated into components is equally important. Component integration includes but is not limited to the following: top surfaces of parapet walls, handrails, door panic hardware, windows, plumbing fixtures, appliance control panels, alarms, automatic teller machines, sales and service counters, etc. Integrated signage should be both visual and tactile, including Braille, and should comply with Section 703.

703.3.11 Door Location. Where a tactile sign is provided at a door, the sign should be alongside the door at the latch side. Signs containing tactile characters should be located so that a clear floor area 30 inches (765 mm) minimum by 30 inches (765 mm) minimum, centered on the tactile characters, is provided beyond the arc of any door swing between the closed position and 45 degree open position. Where a tactile sign is provided at double doors with one active leaf, the sign should be located on the inactive leaf side. Where a tactile sign is provided at double doors with two active leaves, signage should be located on wall adjacent to each door. Where there is no wall space on the latch side of a single door, or to the right side of double doors, signs should be on the nearest adjacent wall.

EXCEPTION: Signs with tactile characters should be permitted on the push side of doors with closers and without hold-open devices.

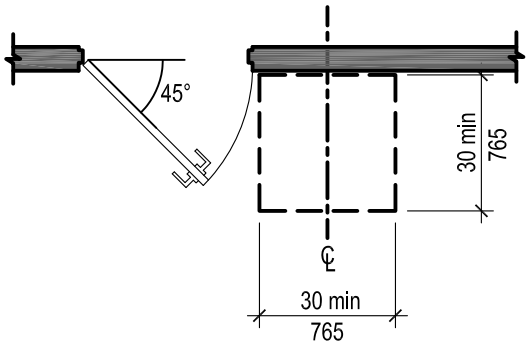


Fig. 703.3.11
Location of Tactile Signage at Doors

703.3.11 Advisory. The 30" x 30" clear floor space is provided for a standing person to feel the tactile sign. It is based on a person that may be using a cane, walker or other mobility device and for people that have a large stature. This clear floor space is already accommodated based on maneuvering clearance at doors, Section 404.2.3 while providing sufficient clearance for a seated person to touch the tactile signage.

703.3.12 Finish and Contrast. Characters and their background should have a non-glare finish. Characters should contrast with their background with either light characters on a dark background, or dark characters on a light background complying with Section 302.10 and Section 302.11.

703.3.12 Advisory. The highest possible contrast should be used. White or yellow on a black background are easier to read for a greater range of users than dark letters on a light background. The contrast of colors is more important then the colors themselves since some people have difficulty distinguishing color and will have to rely on the contrast. Avoid using colors of similar lightness adjacent to one another, exaggerate lightness difference between foreground and background colors. Refer to the Lighthouse International, *Effective Color Contrast, Designing for People with Partial Sight and Color Deficiencies* by Aries Arditi, PhD.

703.3.13 Photo Luminescent. In addition to complying with all applicable code requirements, all emergency exit path signage at both wall and floor locations and all directional arrows or other graphic guidance should be comprised of photo luminescent materials. They should be washable, non-toxic, non-radioactive, and if subjected to fire must be self-extinguishing when flame is removed. Comply with Section 713.

703.4 Braille

703.4.1 General. Braille should be contracted (Grade 2) Braille and should comply with Section 703.4

703.4.2 Uppercase Letters. The indication of an uppercase letter or letters should only be used before the first word of sentences, proper nouns and names, individual letters of the alphabet, initials, or acronyms.

703.4.3 Dimensions. Braille dots should have a domed or rounded shape and comply with Table 703.

703.4.4 Position. Braille should be below the corresponding text. If text is multilined, Braille should be placed below entire text. Braille should be separated 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) minimum from any other tactile characters and 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) minimum from raised borders and decorative elements. Braille provided on elevator car controls should be separated 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) minimum either directly below or adjacent to the corresponding raised characters or symbols.

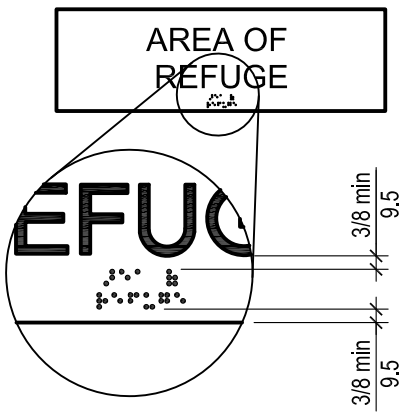


Fig. 703.4.4
Position of Braille

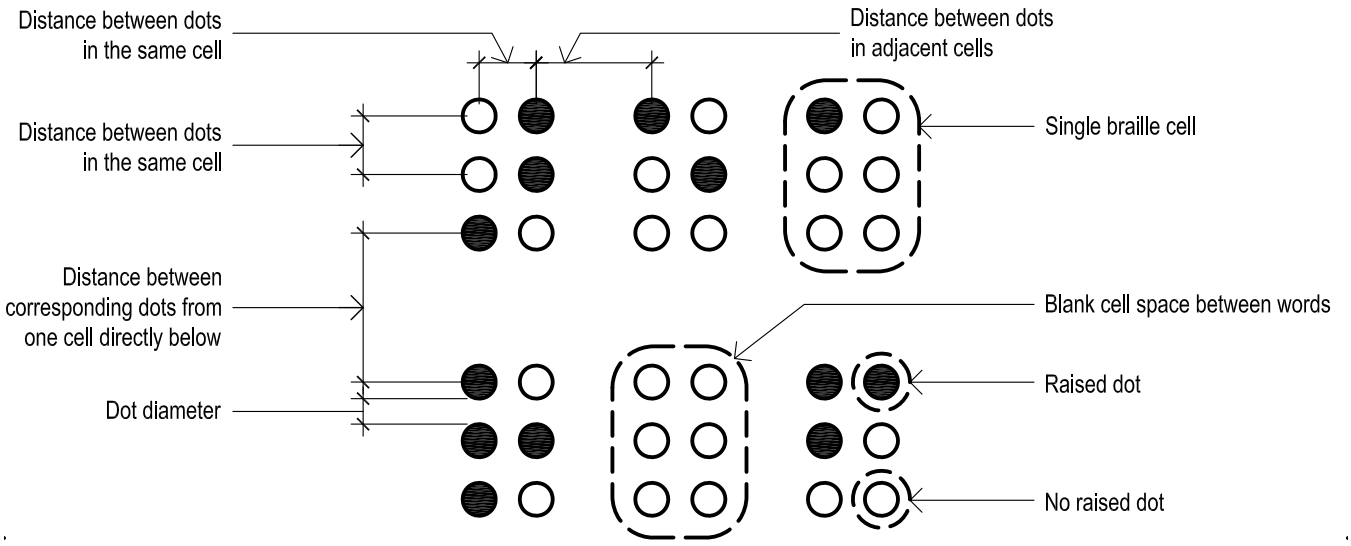


Fig. 703.4.3
Braille Measurement

Measurement range	Minimum in inches / Maximum in inches
Dot base diameter	0.059 (1.5 mm) to 0.063 (1.6 mm)
Distance between two dots in the same cell	0.090 (2.3 mm) to 0.100 (2.5 mm)
Distance between corresponding dots in adjacent cells [1]	0.241 (6.1 mm) to 0.300 (7.6 mm)
Dot height	0.025 (0.6 mm) to 0.037 (0.9 mm)
Distance between corresponding dots from one cell directly below [1]	0.395 (10.0 mm) to 0.400 (10.2 mm)

Measured Center to Center [1]

Table 703.4.3
Braille Dimensions

703.4.5 Mounting Height. Mounting height should comply with Section 703.4.5.

703.4.5.1 Adult Standing Position. Mounting height for Braille for adult standing position should be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum above the floor and 60 inches (1525 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the baseline of the Braille cells.

EXCEPTION: Elevator car controls should not be required to comply with Section 703.4.5.

703.4.5.2 Adult Seated Position. Mounting height for Braille for adult seated position should be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum above the floor and 44 inches (1120 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the baseline of the Braille cells.

703.4.5.3 Children's Position Ages 6-12. Mounting height for Braille for children should comply with Section 703.4.5.2.

703.4.5.3 Advisory. It is questionable if Braille should be provided for children 5 and younger due to comprehension and need.

703.4.5.4 Supplemental Emergency Floor Surface Braille. Provide in addition to standard emergency exit signage, consider supplemental lower wall and floor surface emergency egress signage from each floor to exterior discharge. Signage should include the word " EXIT" in Braille and directional arrows for the most direct exit route. All emergency signage should contain Braille. Lower wall Braille should be located a maximum of 12 inches (305 mm) above floor and may be integrated with base molding.

703.4.5.5 Stair Handrail. Location identification should be provided on the top surface of the handrail extension in Braille complying with Section 505.10.4. Handrails located in close proximity to an exit door discharging to the outside or to the level of exit discharge should be provided with three warning rings followed by Braille stating "EXIT," with directions to the exit, such as: "straight ahead", "behind"; "turn left", "turn right," with a directional arrow.

703.4.5.6 Other Railings. Other railing including handrails along corridors, elevators, and at the top of walls or fencing that provides a gripping surface should contain information in Braille on the upper face of the gripping surface in addition to other signage the may be provided.

703.4.5.7 Other Braille locations. In addition to signage locations on walls and floors, signage integrated into components is equally important. Component integration includes but is not limited to the following: top surfaces of parapet walls, door panic hardware, windows, plumbing fixtures, appliance control panels, alarms, automatic teller machines, sales and service counters, etc.

703.5 Pictograms

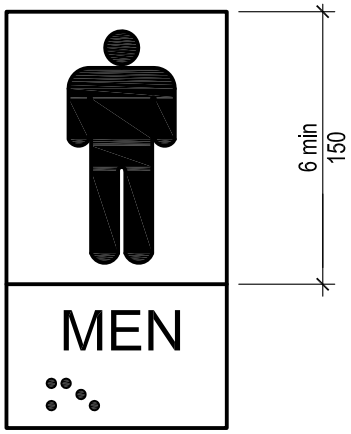


Fig. 703.5
Pictogram Field

703.5.1 General. Pictograms should comply with Section 703.5

703.5.2 Pictogram Field. Pictograms should have a field 6 inches (150 mm) minimum in height. Characters or Braille should not be located in the pictogram field.

703.5.3 Finish and Contrast. Pictograms and their fields should have a non-glare finish. Pictograms should contrast with their fields, with either a light pictogram on a dark field or a dark pictogram on a light field and should comply with Section 302.10 and Section 302.11.

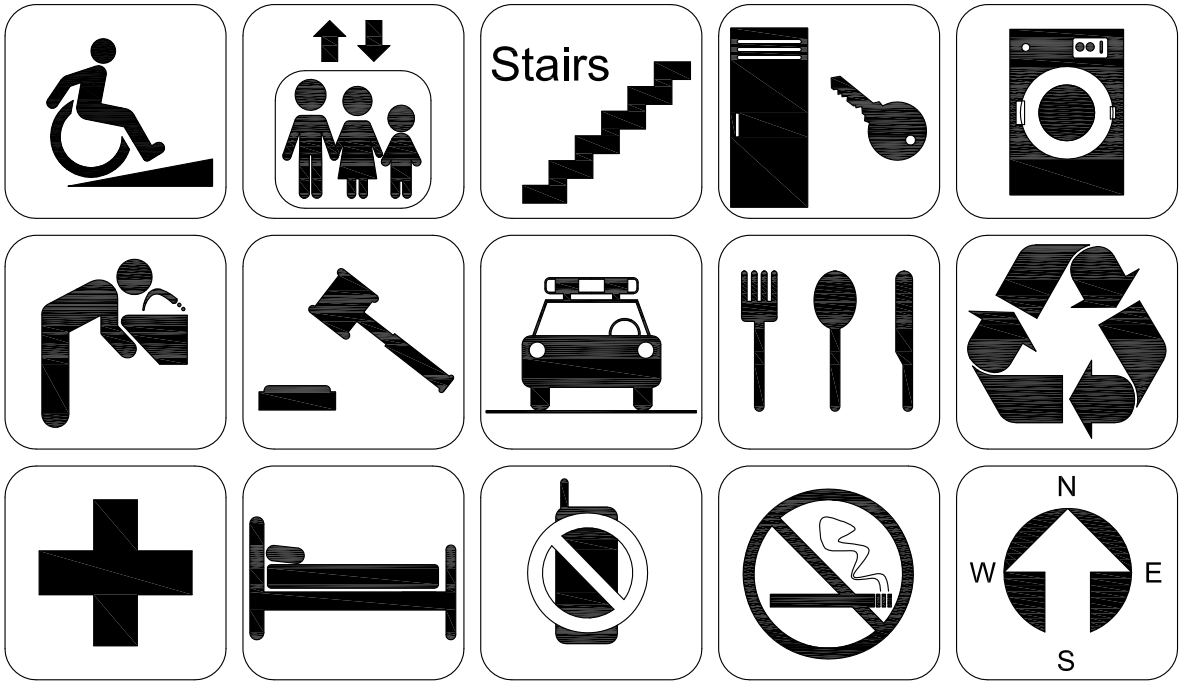


Fig. 703.5.5
Pictogram Examples

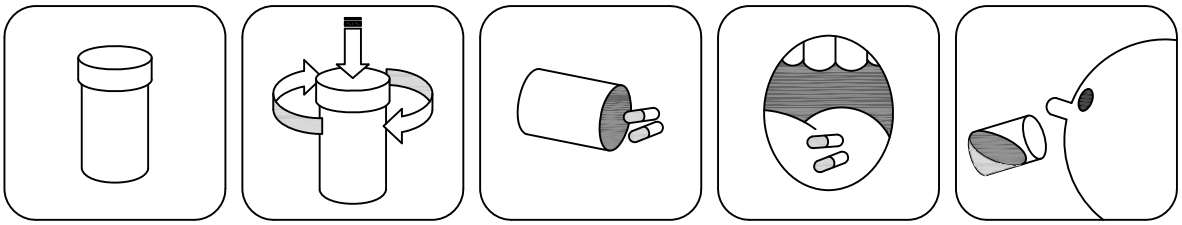


Fig. 703.5.6
Pictogram Sequence Example
(*Taking Medication*)

703.5.3 Advisory. The highest possible contrast should be used. White or yellow on a black background are easier to read for a greater range of users than dark on a light background. The contrast of colors is more important then the colors themselves since some people have difficulty distinguishing color and will have to rely on the contrast. Avoid using colors of similar lightness adjacent to one another. Exaggerate lightness difference between foreground and background colors. Refer to the Lighthouse International's *Effective Color Contrast, Designing for People with Partial Sight and Color Deficiencies* by Aries Arditi, PhD.

703.5.4 Text Descriptors. Provide text descriptors for pictograms located directly below the pictogram field. Text descriptors should comply with Sections 703.3, and 703.4.

703.5.5 Locations. Pictograms should be located throughout a facility. Pictograms should use common symbols and easily recognized images. Pictograms should be supplemented with simple text. In addition to symbols of accessibility, they should be used for routes, doors and doorways, ramps, curb ramps, elevators, parking spaces, parking lot routes, shelters, loading zones, stairways, drinking fountains, toilet and bathing rooms, washing machines and clothes dryers, saunas and steam rooms, alarms, telephones, assistive listening systems, ITM's, rooms types, assembly areas, dressing fitting and locker rooms, kitchens and kitchenettes, transportation facilities, courtrooms, waiting areas, service areas, dining areas, offices, meeting rooms, sales and service counters, storage, trash and recycling, etc.

703.5.6 Pictogram Sequence. Consider a pictogram sequence that graphically conveys steps in pictogram form in lieu of text instructions.

703.6 Symbols of Accessibility

703.6.1 General. Symbols of accessibility should comply with Section 703.6

703.6.2 Finish and Contrast. Symbols of accessibility and their backgrounds should have a non-glare finish. Symbols of accessibility should contrast with their backgrounds, with either a light symbol on a dark background or a dark symbol on a light background and should comply with Section 302.10 and Section 302.11.

703.6.2 Advisory. The highest possible contrast should be used. White or yellow on a black background are easier to read for a greater range of users than dark on a light background. The contrast of colors is more important then the colors themselves since some people have difficulty distinguishing color and will have to rely on the contrast. Avoid using colors of similar lightness adjacent to one another. Exaggerate lightness difference between foreground and background colors. Refer to the Lighthouse International's *Effective Color Contrast, Designing for People with Partial Sight and Color Deficiencies* by Aries Arditi, PhD.

703.6.3 Symbols.

703.6.3.1 International Symbol of Accessibility. The International Symbol of Accessibility should comply with Figure 703.6.3.1.

Fig. 703.6.3.1
International Symbol of Accessibility

703.6.3.1 Advisory. The wheelchair symbol should only be used to indicate access for individuals with limited mobility including people who use wheelchairs. Codes require the installation of this symbol. In an inclusive environment this may cause some confusion since it will identify only some of the components as accessible.

703.6.3.2 International Symbol of TTY. The International Symbol of TTY should comply with Figure 703.6.3.2.

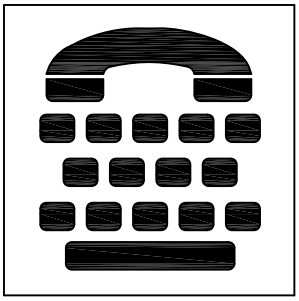


Fig. 703.6.3.2
International TTY Symbol

703.6.3.2 Advisory. This symbol indicates a device known as a text telephone (TT), or a telecommunications device for the deaf (TDD). TTY indicates a device used with a telephone for communications with and between deaf, hard of hearing, a person with a speech disability and/or hearing persons.

703.6.3.3 Assistive Listening Systems. Assistive listening systems should be identified by the international Symbol of Access for Hearing Loss complying with Figure 703.6.3.3

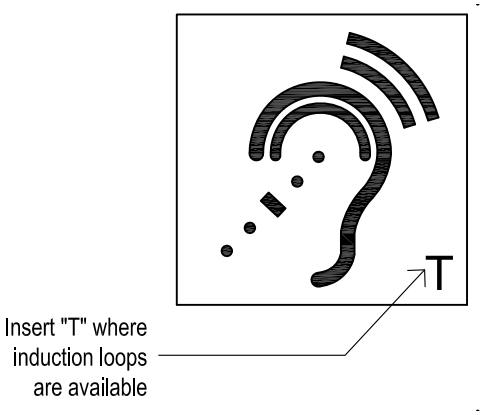


Fig. 703.6.3.3
International Symbol of Access for Hearing Loss

703.6.3.3 Advisory. This symbol indicates systems that transmit amplified sound via hearing aid, headsets or other devices. These include infrared, loop and FM systems. Insert a small “T” in the lower right hand corner of the image for hearing aid “T-Coil” use. Portable systems may be available from audiovisual equipment suppliers that service conferences and meetings.

703.6.3.4 Volume-Controlled Telephones. Telephones with volume controls should be identified by a pictogram of a telephone handset with radiating sound waves on a square field complying with Figure 703.6.3.4

Fig. 703.6.3.4
Volume-Controlled Telephone

703.6.3.4 Advisory. This symbol indicates the location of telephones that have handsets with amplified sound and/or adjustable volume controls.

703.6.3.5 Audio Description. The audio description symbol should comply with Figure 703.6.3.5.

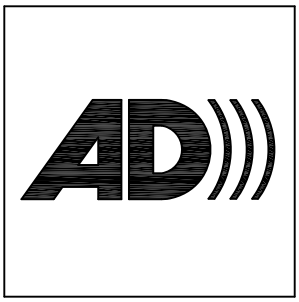


Fig.703.6.3.5
Audio Description

703.6.3.5 Advisory. This symbol indicates a service for persons who are blind or have low vision that makes the performing arts, visual arts, television, video and film more accessible. Description of visual elements is provided by a trained Audio Describer through the Secondary Audio Program (SAP) of televisions and monitors equipped with stereo sound. An adapter is used for non-stereo TV’s. For live Audio Description, a trained Audio Describer offers live commentary or narration (via headphones and a small transmitter) consisting of concise, objective descriptions of visual elements: i.e., a theater performance or a visual arts exhibition.

703.6.3.6 Braille. The Braille symbol should comply with Figure 703.6.3.6.

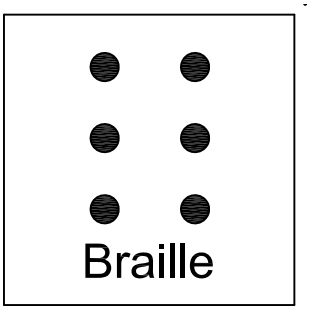


Fig. 703.6.3.6
Braille Symbol

703.6.3.6 Advisory. This symbol in addition to architectural signage indicates that printed material is available in Braille, including exhibition labeling and publications.

703.6.3.7 Closed Captioning (CC). The symbol should comply with Figure 703.6.3.7.

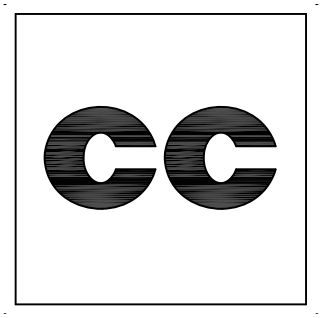


Fig. 703.6.3.7
Closed Captioning (CC)

703.6.3.7 Advisory. This symbol indicates a choice for whether or not to display captions for a television program or videotape. TV sets that have built-in or separate decoder are equipped to display dialogue for program that are captioned when selected by the viewer. *The Television Decoder Circuitry Act of 1990* requires TV sets (with screens 13" or larger) to have built-in decoders as of July, 1993. Also, videos that are part of exhibitions may be closed captioned using the symbol with instruction to press a button for captioning.

703.6.3.8 Sign Language Interpretation. The symbol should comply with Figure 703.6.3.8.

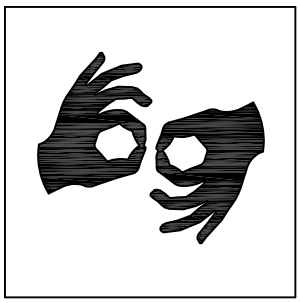


Fig. 703.6.3.8
Sign Language Interpretation

703.6.3.8 Advisory. The symbol indicates that Sign Language Interpretation is provided for a lecture, tour, film, performance, conference, other program or two-way communications.

703.6.3.9 Large Print (18 pt. or Larger). The symbol should comply with Figure 703.6.3.9.

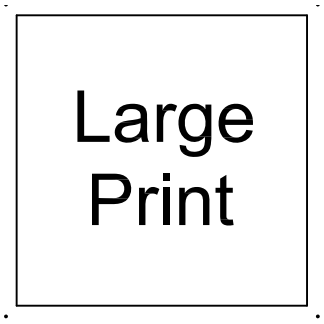


Fig. 703.6.3.9
Large Print (18 pt. or Larger)

703.6.3.9 Advisory. The symbol for large print is "Large Print" printed in 18 pt. or larger text. It indicates that large print versions of books, pamphlets, museum guides and theater programs are available. The symbol is used in other ways to indicate that print materials may be provided in large print. Sans serif or modified serif print with good contrast is important, and special attention should be paid to letter and word spacing.

703.6.3.10 Blind or Low Vision. The symbol should comply with Figure 703.6.3.10

Fig. 703.6.3.10
Access (Other Than Print or Braille) for Individuals Who Are Blind or Have Low Vision

703.6.3.10 Advisory. This symbol may be used to indicate access for people who are blind or have low vision, including: a guided tour, a path to a nature trail or a scent garden in a park; and a tactile tour or a museum exhibition that may be touched.

703.6.3.11 Open Captioning (OC). The symbol should comply with Figure 703.6.3.11.

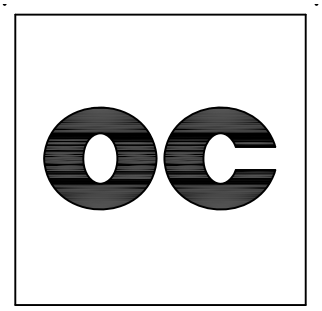


Fig. 703.6.3.11
Open Captioning (OC)

703.6.3.11 Advisory. This symbol indicates that captions, which translate dialogues and other sounds in print, are always displayed on videotape, movie or television program. Open Captioning is preferred by many including deaf and hard-of-hearing individuals, and people whose second language is English, In addition, it is helpful in teaching children how to read and keeping sound levels to a minimum in museums and restaurants.

703.6.3.12 Information. The symbol should comply with Figure 703.6.3.12.

Fig. 703.6.3.12
The Information Symbol

703.6.3.12 Advisory. One of the most valuable commodities of today's society is information; to anyone it is important and to a person with a disability it is essential. For example, the symbol may be used on signage or a floor plan to indicate the location of the information or security desk, where more specific information or materials concerning access accommodations and services such as "LARGE PRINT" materials, audio cassette recordings of material, or sign interpreted tours.

703.7 Remote Infrared Audible Sign (RIAS) Systems

703.7.1 General. Remote Infrared Audible Sign Systems should comply with Section 703.7.

703.7.1 Advisory. RIAS systems are comprised of transmitters and receivers. Pre-recorded verbal messages are transmitted within a limited proximity to the receiver that are heard through a speaker or hearing device that is meant for to provide general, specific and directional information. See also Section 708.7 that uses an activator that vibrates and triggers messages that are transmitted through mounted base units. There are other systems such as induction loop and FM. Other technologies under research should be considered. Systems should not only address people with a wide range of hearing abilities, but should also address a wide range or visual abilities. Typically, infrared is used to limit transmission of information to line of sight for privacy.

703.7.2 Transmitters. Where provided, Remote Infrared Audible Sign Transmitters should be designed to communicate with receivers complying with Section 703.7.3

703.7.3 Remote Infrared Audible Sign Receivers.

703.7.3.1 Frequency. Basic speech messages should be frequency modulated at 25 kHz, with a +/-2.5 kHz deviation, and should have an infrared wavelength from 850 to 950 nanometer (nm).

703.7.3.2 Optical Power Density. Receiver should produce a 12 decibel (dB) signal-plus-noise-to-noise ratio with a 1kHz modulation tone at +/-2.5 kHz deviation of the 25 kHz sub carrier at an optical power density of 26 Pico watt per square millimeter measured at the receiver photo sensor aperture.

703.7.3.3 Audio Output. The audio output from an internal speaker should be at 75 dBA minimum at 18 inches (455 mm) with a maximum distortion of 10 percent.

703.7.3.4 Reception Range. The receiver should be designed for a high dynamic range and capable of operating in full-sun background illumination

703.7.3.5 Multiple Signals. A receiver provided for the capture of the stronger of two signals in the receiver field of view should provide a received power ratio on the order of 20 dB for negligible interference.

703.8 Pedestrian Signals. Pedestrian signals should comply with Section 406.16. See also the *Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices* listed in Section 105.2.1, Section 4E.06 – Accessible Pedestrian Signals, and Section 4E.08 Accessible Pedestrian Signal Detectors.

703.8 Advisory. Section 406.16 advisory contains suggestions that will supplement or enhance pedestrian signal applications such as alternate technologies for people with reduced hearing or sight abilities. Alternate technologies require the approval of the governmental jurisdiction. Consider an information/navigation reference point system complying with Section 708.7, alert devices and verbal signage to guide people with reduction in visual ability to cross the street. Consider the use of cross walks signs that are commonly used in San Francisco that provides a countdown to the signal change. This provides a time frame for very wide street crossings.

703.9 Variable Message Signs. Variable message signs, also known as dynamic or changeable message signs, are signs capable of displaying more than one message that can be modified manually or automatically complying with Section 714.17.

704 Telephones

704.1 General. Accessible public telephones should comply with Section 704.

704.1 Advisory. In large facilities (e.g. mercantile), provide phone assistance throughout.

704.2 Inclusive Telephones. Accessible public telephones should comply with Section 704.2.

704.2.1 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305 should be provided. The clear floor space should not be obstructed by bases, enclosures, or seats.

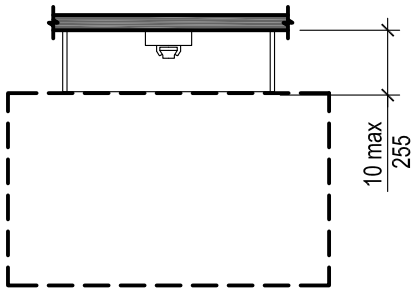


Fig. 704.2.1.1
Parallel Approach

704.2.1.1 Parallel Approach. Where a parallel approach is provided, the distance from the edge of the telephone enclosure to the face of the telephone should be 10 inches (255 mm) maximum.

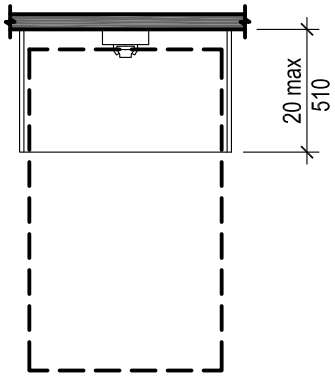


Fig. 704.2.1.2
Forward Approach

704.2.1.2 Forward Approach. Where a forward approach is provided, the distance from the front edge of a counter within the enclosure to the face of the telephone should be 20 inches (510 mm) maximum.

704.2.2 Operable Parts. Operable parts should comply with Section 308 and Section 309. Telephones should have push button controls.

704.2.3 Telephone Directories. Where provided, telephone directories should comply with Section 309.

704.2.4 Cord Length. The telephone handset cord should be 29 inches (735 mm) minimum in length.

704.2.5 Hearing-Aid Compatibility. Telephones should be hearing aid compatible.

704.3 Volume-Control Telephones. Public telephones required to have volume controls should be equipped with receiver

704.4 TTY. TTYs required at a public pay telephone should be permanently affixed within, or adjacent to, the telephone

704.5 Height. When in use, the touch surface of TTY keypads should be 34 inches (865 mm) minimum above the floor.

EXCEPTION: Where seats are provided, TTYs should not be required to comply with Section 704.5.

704.6 TTY Shelf. Where pay telephones designed to accommodate a portable TTY are provided, they should be equipped with a shelf and an electrical outlet within or adjacent to the telephone enclosure. The telephone handset should be capable of being placed flush on the surface of the shelf. The shelf should be capable of accommodating a TTY and should have a vertical clearance 6 inches (150 mm) minimum in height above the TTY is placement.

704.7 Protruding Objects. Telephones, enclosures, and related equipment should comply with Section 307.

704.8. Locations. Telephones should be placed in consistent locations from floor to floor with other amenities. They should be placed in lobbies and locations off the primary route that provide isolation from general pedestrian traffic.

704.8 Advisory. Cell phones and PDA's are rapidly replacing fixed telephone installations. This includes emergency information terminals complying with Section 708.8. Video phones are used as a tool for closed /open captioning, audio descriptions and sign language interpretation. See section Section 714.10 and 714.11 regarding cellphones. Technological advancements, integration of software and hardware will soon lead to a inclusive communication system that is customized for each user's needs and preferences making fixed phone installations obsolete.

704.9 Privacy. Provide privacy to carry on a normal conversation without distracting others perhaps through the use of sound absorbing partitions, alcove or other sound isolated areas.

704.10 Seating. Phones designed for seated use should comply with Section 903.

704.11 Braille. Calling card and coin slot indicated in Braille complying with Section 703.4

704.12 TTY Compatibility. Phone clusters should always include a TTY compatible phone that complies with Sections 704.4, 704.5 and 704.6

704.13 Supplemental Telephone Booths. Consider telephone booths with a clear floor space complying with Section 305, swing-out automatic door or sliding automatic door complying with Section 404. Provide adjustable task lighting, a pull-down seat complying with Section 903. Consider handrails and a reflective surface or mirror to see behind for safety. See Section 811.10 Temporary Workspaces for additional information

704.13 Advisory. Section 811.10 Temporary Workspaces, are essentially an updated version of the traditional telephone booth that provides two-way communications and a work surface that can be used for a variety of purposes (e.g., office work, computer usage, writing, and study).

704.14 Color and Material. Consider the use contrasting colors and materials to differentiate the various components of the telephone.

704.15 Internet Connections. Provide internet connection hardware.

704.16 Work Surface. Provide a small work surface complying with Section 902.

704.17 Shelf. Provide shelf adjacent to telephone for placing personal items, writing, using phone book, counting change, etc.

704.18 Computer Communications. In addition to standard telephone devices and configurations, hard-wired and wireless connections should be provided for a wide range of devices.

704.18.1 Height. For permanent installations, height should comply with Section 704.5.

704.19 Cell Phones and PDA's. In addition to standard telephone devices and configurations, cell phones, PDA's and other device requirements should be accommodated.

704.20 Information/Emergency Terminal. Information/emergency terminals should comply with Section 708.8 and may use the existing public pay phone infrastructure, required to be maintained by New York City. The intention is to utilize one of a ganged set of public telephone units or booths.

705 Detectable Warnings and Surfaces.

705.1 General. Detectable warning and surfaces should comply with Section 705.

705.2 Standardization. Detectable warning and surfaces should be standard within a building, facility, site, or complex of buildings.

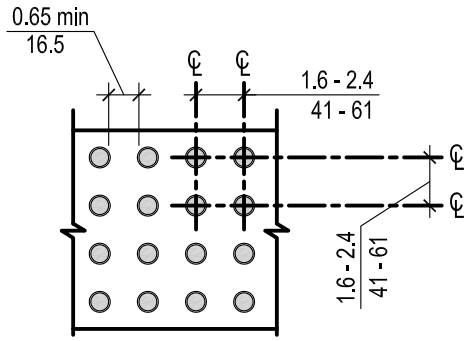
705.3 Visual. Detectable warning and surfaces should contrast visually with adjacent surfaces, either light-on-dark or dark-on-light. Contrast should be at least 70%.

Contrast = $[(B_1 - B_2)/B_1] \times 100$

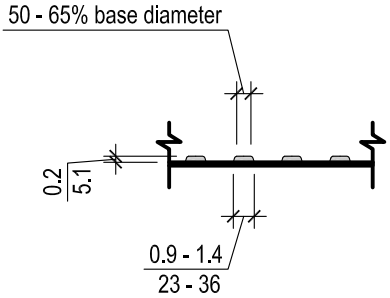
Where B_1 = Light reflectance value (LRV) of the lighter area and B_2 = Light reflectance value (LRV) of the darker area. Note that in any application both white and black are never absolute; thus, B_1, never equals 100 and B_2 is always greater than 0.

705.4 Material Contrast. Detectable warning and surfaces in interior locations should differ from adjoining walking surfaces in resiliency or sound-on-cane contact.

705.5 Truncated Domes. Detectable warning surfaces should have truncated domes complying with Section 705.5



(a)
Plan



(b)
Elevation (Enlarged)

Fig. 705.5
Truncated Dome Size and Spacing

705.5 Advisory. Truncated domes are used to give advanced warning of level changes or other hazards for people with a sight disability because they can be detected underfoot and with the use of a cane. They are used primarily for exterior applications such as in Section 406 Curb Ramps and in Section 405 Ramps, at the threshold of ramp assembly, but have other applications where an aggressive tactile indicator is required.

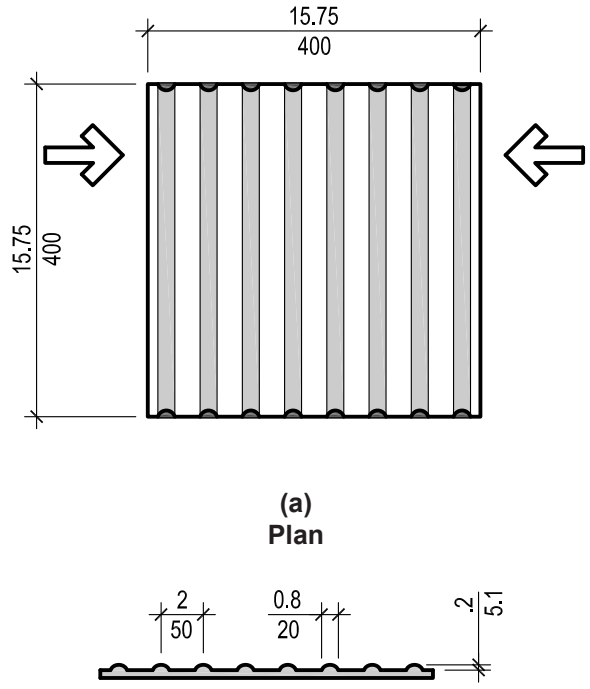
705.5.1 Size. Truncated domes should have a base diameter of 0.9 inch (23 mm) minimum to 1.4 inch (36 mm) maximum, and a top diameter of 50 percent minimum to 65 percent maximum of the base diameter.

705.5.2 Height. Truncated domes should have a height of 0.2 inch (5.1 mm)

705.5.3 Spacing. Truncated domes should have a center-to-center spacing of 1.6 inches (41 mm) minimum and 2.4 inches (61 mm) maximum, and a base-to-base spacing of 0.65 inch (16.5 mm) minimum, measured between the most adjacent domes on the grid.

705.5.4 Alignment. Truncated domes should be aligned in a square grid pattern.

705.6 Raised Strip (Corduroy) Detectable Surface. Raised strip (corduroy) detectable surfaces should comply with Section 705.5. [2]



(a)
Plan

(b)
Elevation (Enlarged)

Fig. 705.6
Corduroy Detectable Surface
Size and Spacing

705.6 Advisory. Raised strip detectable surfaces should only be considered where truncated domes are not required by code. It is not suggested to replace truncated domes, rather to either supplement them or to use the raised strips in other areas where detectable warnings are not required. Raised strips may be appropriate to warn one of potential hazards or as a pre-indicator to truncated domes or as a means of wayfinding, such as the surface of the upper & lower entry landing for a ramp while providing directional cues.

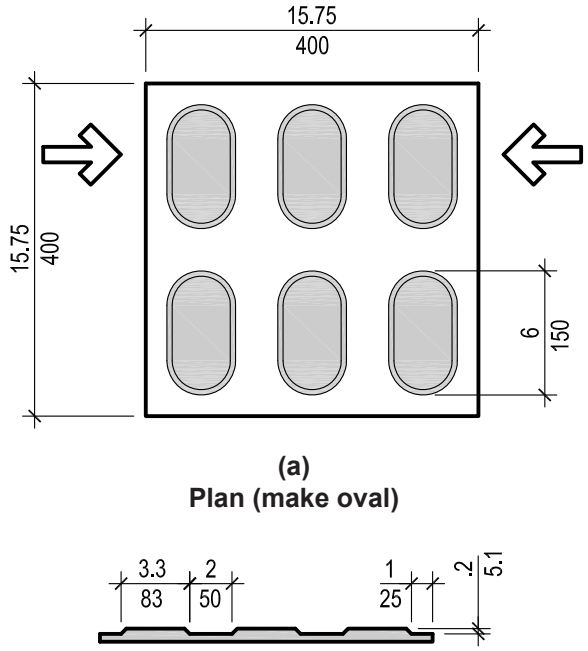
705.6.1 Size. Strips should have a width of 0.8 inch (20 mm) the strips should have a semi-circular cross section

705.6.2 Height. Strips should have a height of 0.2 inch (5.1 mm).

705.6.3 Spacing. Strips should have a center-to-center spacing of 2 inches (50 mm) measured between the center of each strip.

705.6.4 Alignment. Strips should run parallel. Strips should run perpendicular to the direction of travel.

705.7 Oval Detectable Surface. Oval detectable surfaces should comply with Section 705. [3]



(a)
Plan (make oval)

(b)
Elevation (Enlarged)

Fig. 705.7
Oval Detectable Surface
Size and Spacing

705.7 Advisory. Oval detectable surfaces should only be considered where truncated domes are not required by code. It is not suggested to replace truncated domes, rather to either supplement them or to use the ovals for other applications. Ovals may be appropriate to warn one of a drop-off-hazard with the added feature of directional cues.

2 & 3 Merseytravel and the Five Merseyside Metropolitan Councils of Knowsley, Liverpool, St. Helens, Sefton and Wurral (2006). *Code of Practice on Access and Mobility.* http://www.accesscode.info/ Sections 4.1, 5.6

705.7.1 Size. Ovals should have a width of 3.3 inches (83 mm) and a length of 6 inches (150 mm) and a top surface that is 50 percent minimum to 65 percent maximum of the base area.

705.7.2 Height. Ovals should have a height of 0.2 inch (5.1 mm).

705.7.3 Spacing. Ovals should have a continuous spacing of 2 inches (50 mm).

705.7.4 Alignment. Ovals should run parallel to edge. Long side of oval should run perpendicular to the direction of travel.

706 Assistive Listening Systems

706 Advisory. *2008 NYCBC*, Appendix N, controls performance standards of Assistive Listening Systems (ALS) for Induction Loop, Infra-Red and FM. Hearing aids using the "T" or "T-Coil" (Telecoil) setting can receive transmissions from an audio frequency induction loop. The is useful for a variety of purposes (e.g. microphone use, prerecorded messages, intercom and wayfinding). Properly placed microphones allow normal conversation at venues where there is high ambient noise (e.g. service areas, reception areas, stores, assembly areas and theatres). Avoid transmission spillover when using multiple loops. Neck loops and portable microphone/transmitters are useful. Provide signage complying with Section 703.6.3.3, to identify an ALS and the location that it is most effective. Add a "T" for T-coil usage.

706.1 General. Assistive listening systems should comply with Section 706.

706.2 Receiver Jacks. Receivers required for use with an assistive listening system should include a 1/8-inch (3.2 mm) standard mono jack.

706.3 Receiver Hearing–Aid Compatibility. Receivers should be hearing aid compatible and should interface with telecoils in hearing aids through the provision of neck loops.

706.4 Sound Pressure Level. Assistive listening systems should be capable of providing a sound pressure level of 110 dB minimum and 118 dB maximum, with a dynamic range on the volume control of 50 dB.

706.5 Signal-to-Noise Ratio. The signal-to-noise ratio for internally generated noise in assistive listening systems should be 18 dB minimum.

706.6 Peak Clipping Level. Peak clipping should not exceed 18 dB of clipping relative to the peaks of speech.

707 Information Transaction Machines (ITM)

707.1 General. All ITM's should comply with Section 707 and should be operable by people with sight disabilities.

707.1.1 Instructions. Provide multisensory instructions including the following: Braille instructions complying with Section 703.4. and 707.10.; tactile characters complying with Section 703.3.; audio complying with 709.7. Provide multiple language as necessary depending on the type of facility and range of users. Provide help numbers in various formats.

707.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305 should be provided in front of the machine.

EXCEPTION: Clear floor space is not required at drive up only automatic teller and fare machines

707.3 Operable Parts. Operable parts should comply with Section 309. Each operable part should be differentiated by sound or touch without activation.

707.4 Privacy. ITM's should provide the opportunity for the same degree of privacy of input and output available to all individuals.

707.5 Keypads. Keypads should be identified by tactile characters complying with Section 703.3 and should be centered on the corresponding keypad button. The number five key should have a single raised dot. The dot should have a base diameter of 0.118 inch (3 mm) minimum to 0.120 inch (3.05 mm) maximum, and a height of 0.025 inch (0.6 mm) minimum to 0.037 inch (0.9 mm) maximum. Keypad should be numeric only with a 12-key ascending telephone keypad. Consider keys with backlite characters to enhance visual identification.

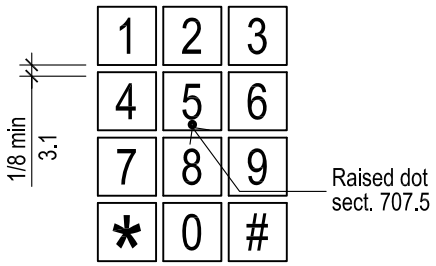


Fig. 707.5
Numeric Key Layout

707.5.1 Key Size. Keys should be a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) in width and 1 inch (25 mm) in height. Provide a minimum of 1/8 inch (3 mm) between keys to tactilely differentiate each key.

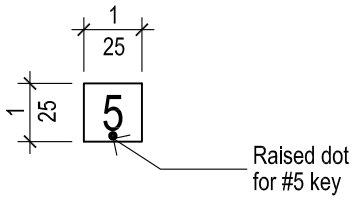


Fig. 707.5.1
Key Size

707.6 Function Keys. Function keys should comply with Section 707.6.

707.6.1 Tactile Symbols. Function key surfaces should have raised tactile symbols as shown in Table 707.6.1.

Key Function	Description of Tactile Symbol	Tactile Symbol
Enter or Proceed:	CIRCLE	O
Clear or Correct:	LEFT ARROW	□
Cancel:	"X"	x
Add Value:	PLUS SIGN	+
Decrease Value:	MINUS SIGN	-

Table 707.6.1
Tactile Symbols

707.6.2 Contrast. Function keys should contrast visually from background surfaces. Characters and symbols on key surfaces should contrast visually from key surfaces. Visual contrast should be either light-on-dark or dark-on-light.

707.7 Display Screen. The display screen should comply with Section 707.7.

707.7.1 Visibility. The display screen should be visible from a point located 40 inches (1015 mm) above the center of the clear floor space in front of the machine.

707.7.2 Characters. Characters displayed on the screen should be in a sans serif font. The uppercase letter "I" should be used to determine the allowable height of all characters of the font. The uppercase letter "I" of the font should be $^{3}/_{16}$ inch (4.8 mm) minimum in height. Characters should contrast with their background with either light characters on a dark background, or dark characters on a light background.

707.7.3 Controls. Provide controls to adjust the display screen brightness, color, contrast. Provide lighting for controls. Provide means of controlling graphics.

707.7.4 Audio. Provide audio with the monitor for all transactions. Provide a standard jack for headphones that automatically mutes the audio output.

707.7.5 Braille Reader Strip. Consider providing an electronic Braille reader pin strip immediately below the display screen.

707.7.6 Visual. Consider two-way visual communications complying with Section 708.5.

707.8 Speech Output. ITM machines should be speech enabled. Operating instructions and orientation, visible transaction prompts, user input verification, error messages, and all displayed information for full use should be accessible to and independently usable by individuals with vision disabilities. Speech should be delivered through a mechanism that is readily available to all users including, but not limited to, an industry standard connector or a telephone handset. Speech should be recorded or digitized human, or synthesized.

EXCEPTIONS:
1. Audible tones should be permitted in lieu of speech for visible output that is not displayed for security purposes, including but not limited to, asterisks representing personal identification numbers.

2. Advertisements and other similar information should not be required to be audible unless they convey information that can be used in the transaction being conducted.
3. Where speech synthesis cannot be supported, dynamic alphabetic output should not be required to be audible.

707.8.1 User Control. Speech should be capable of being repeated and interrupted by the user. There should be a volume control for the speech function.

EXCEPTION: Speech output for any single function should be permitted to be automatically interrupted when a transaction is selected.

707.8.2 Receipts. Where receipts are provided, speech output devices should provide audible balance inquiry information, error messages, and all other information on the printed receipt necessary to complete or verify the transaction.

EXCEPTIONS:
1. Machine location, date and time of transaction, customer account number, and the machine identifier should not be required to be audible.
2. Information on printed receipts that duplicates audible information available on screen should not be required to be presented in the form of an audible receipt.
3. Printed copies of bank statements and checks should not be required to be audible.

707.9 Input Controls. At least one tactually discernible input control should be provided for each function. Where provided, key surfaces not on active areas of display screens should be raised above surrounding surfaces. Where membrane keys are the only method of input, each should be tactually discernible from surrounding surfaces and adjacent keys.

707.10 Braille Instructions. Braille instructions for initiating the speech mode should be provided. Braille should comply with Section 703.4.

708 Two-Way Communication Systems

708.1 General. Two-way communication systems should comply with Section 708.

708.1 Advisory. Two-way emergency communication systems should be provided in kiosks, emergency assistance alarms, building directories, floor directories, suite directories, remote areas, etc.

708.2 Audible and Visual Indicators. The system should provide both visual and audible signals.

708.3 Handsets. Handset cords, if provided, should be 29 inches (735 mm) minimum in length. Provide volume controls

708.4 Hands-Free Operation. Hands-Free operation is recommended and should include a waterproof activation button 2 inches (50 mm) minimum in diameter with an activation indicator light and sound with tactile and visual proof and water proof. Output sound level should be greater than 80 dB. All components should be corrosive resistant.

708.4.1 Standing Position. Unit components (Button, Microphone, Speaker, Camera, etc.) should be located 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum to 60 inches (1525 mm) maximum above the door.

708.4.2 Seated Position. Unit components (Button, Microphone, Speaker, Camera, Etc.) should be located 36 inches (915 mm) minimum to 44 inches (1120 mm) maximum above the door.

708.5 Visual Two-Way Communication. Two-way visual communication systems may include a camera and monitor, video phone, computer, PDA, text messaging, voice to text, text to voice, captioning, translators and other means. A video relay system is used for people who are Deaf or hard of hearing. This will allow the use of visual interpreting that includes but is not limited to signing, lip and body language reading.

708.6 Standard Keyboard.

708.6 Advisory. There is a difference between a TTY and a standard keyboard communication system. A TTY is a dedicated system that requires two units to communicate. A standard keyboard communication system, can use various hardware such as a laptop, PC on a direct electronic link between two devices with a keyboard and monitor for people with hearing disabilities to communicate.

708.6.1 Tactile Keyboard. Tactile keyboard should be in standard format. Unit should be either permanently available or should be a flip unit that is linked to an alert system such as for elevator installation complying with Section 407.4.11.2.

708.6.2 On-Screen Keyboard. On screen keyboards should comply with Section 707.7 An on-screen keyboard that is only one function of a multipurpose monitor will function well for some users but may present a serious problem for those that have limited mobility or diminished dexterity or a problem for those that do not know how to use a keyboard. On-screen keyboards are not usable or difficult to use by people with sight disabilities. It is a space saver, efficient and addresses vandalism and mechanical concerns.

708.6.3 Locations. Standard type-in keyboards should be placed in locations to provide general information, directions, inquiries and for emergencies. This includes kiosks, building directories, also where TTY's are located typically and where general information is provided, ITM's, medical facilities, etc.

708.7 Information/Navigation/Alert Reference Point System. An information/navigation/alert reference point system[4] is intended primarily for people with visual disabilities, complying with Section 708.7, 703.3.11 and 706. The activator as per Section 708.7.1.2 could alert the user to an emergency condition by emitting sound, vibrating pulses and blinking light. Consider integrating the system with other devices (e.g., information emergency terminals, kiosks). The system can also be used as talking directional signage.

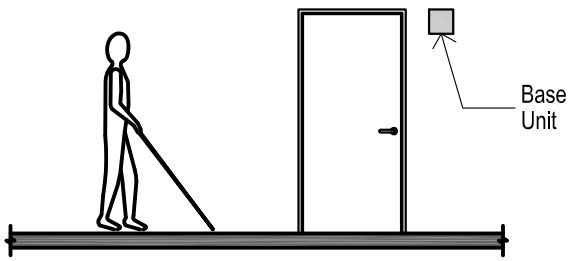


Fig. 708.7
Information/Navigation/Alert
Reference Point System

4 The Information/Navigation Reference Point System was developed by Step Hear Ltd. Description was provided by Dr. Eran and Dr. Neustadt-Noy

708.7.1 Unit Types. The system consists of two types of units: base and activator.

708.7.1.1 Base Units. Base units should provide changeable pre-recorded information. Activation distance is dictated by the environment and functionality of the space and should be location sensitive. Each unit should contain an adjustable distance activation feature, perhaps with three setting (e.g., adjacent 1-3 m, near 3-6 m and far 6-10 m). Unit should be capable of providing a minimum of at least two user programmable information announcements up to 1 minute each. One announcement maybe use to identify the location and the other to provide instructions (e.g. to next location, restrooms or emergency exits.) Provide a high quality speaker and voice audio output, a recording and power LED indicator, built-in microphone and volume control. Provide a strobe light activation indicator.

708.7.1.2 Activator. The activator is a small hand held tactile/vibration device, similar in size and operation to a car alarm remote with 2 or 3 buttons and light indicator and should comply with Section 309. Activator should vibrate and beep within proximity of a base unit should provide at least an information button and a stop button. Three button activators are recommended that provide an information 1 button, information 2 button, and a stop button. Buttons may also be used for scrolling through multiple messages.

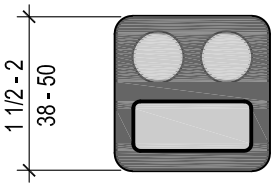


Fig. 708.7.1.2
Activator

708.7.2 Operation. The activator, held by the user, vibrates, beeps and emits a blinking light to notify that there is a base unit nearby. Pressing a button on the activator will trigger the audible recorded information from the base unit that also provides proximity and directionality to the location.

708.7.3 Locations. Base units may be permanently or temporarily installed in key locations. Permanent installations should be vandal proof. Door locations should comply with Section 703.3.11 and Section 712 and should be placed above wall signage without conflicting with visual, tactile or Braille signage. It is suggested to recess the base unit, flush with the wall surface with a secure cover.

708.7.3.1 Interior Applications. Interior applications can help users to easily find their way to areas and spaces (e.g. floor lobbies) rooms, amenities (e.g., rest rooms, water fountains, telephones) vertical circulation (e.g., elevators, stairs), information/transaction machines (e.g., ATM's), transportation facilities (e.g., subway exit, directions to booth, platform and line identification) and other important destinations. Consider installations at exit doors to assist those with visual disabilities to egress in emergencies.

708.7.3.2 Exterior Applications. Exterior installations should be waterproof. The system could improve wayfinding and information gathering at major intersections, parks, transit stations (e.g., bus stops, subway entrances to announce location, transit line), recreation sites and more. The system could be used with pedestrian traffic signals.

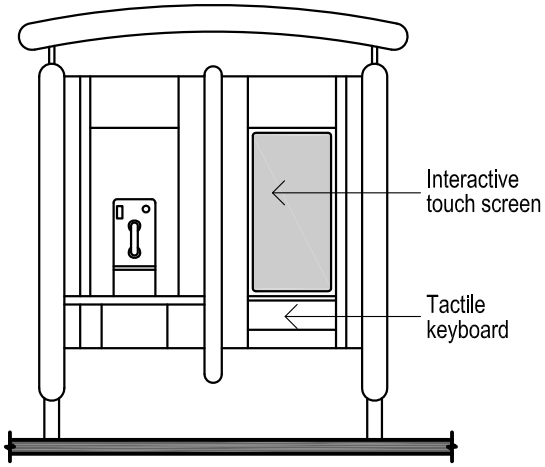


Fig. 708.8
Information/Emergency Terminal

708.8 Information/Emergency Terminal. Information/emergency terminals should comply with Section 708.8 and may use the existing public pay phone infrastructure, required to be maintained by New York City.[5] The intention is to utilize single locations or one of a ganged set of public telephone units or booths. The terminal may be used in stand alone kiosks, as part of a building directory system and other applications. The unit can switch to emergency mode to display public bulletins.

708.8.1 Terminal. Terminals are centrally controlled with portrait oriented interactive touch screens with on-screen keyboards and maybe supplemented with a tactile keyboard for people with sight disabilities, that allow access to commercial and informational venues, bi-directional voice and data communication for emergencies (e.g. 911) and public information (e.g. 311), targeted broadcasting alerts (e.g. Amber), public events (e.g. parades, outages), and general public safety messages. Terminals should comply with Section 706, Sections 305, 306, 307, 308 and 309. Provide controls for brightness , contrast and type size, audio output and language selection (6 languages). Provide a range of options for people with hearing disabilities including an audio frequency induction loop system, video relay system (VRS) utilizing the built-in camera and on-screen keyboard, and closed captioning. Consider two-way visual communications complying with Section 708.5. Clear floor space should be provided with a tactile surface complying with Section 302.6.

708.8.2 Locators. Consider locators utilizing an audio attract beacon, or an information/ navigation/reference point system complying with Section 708.7, or a blue light identifier complying with Section 708.8.1.1., or voice command, or other types of locators.

708.8.2.1 Blue Light Identifier. Provide a single blue light identifier for all kiosk units to visually locate them for use in an emergency and for information. The identifier may be a single enclosed bulb, panel, ring, line of blue LEDs, etc., placed on top or at the upper surface of the unit and should be highly visible but not obtrusive.

708.8.3 Operation. The touch screen should be mounted in the portrait orientation to provide the ability for the user to adjust the height of the touch screen image by simply touching a button on the screen to lower or raise the image. The

5 The Information/Emergency Terminal was developed by City24/7 LLC in partnership with Verizon.

user may use the auto adjust image, select one of several presets or individually adjust the brightness, contrast and type size, and audio output and language. Operation should be pictogram based to reduce reliance on language. The user simply touches a pictogram to initiate operation. The terminal provides the authorities with the ability to directly communicate to the City populous in an efficient and effective new way. This ability provides the City agencies another venue for dissemination of important and timely information (e.g. emergency alerts, amber alerts, safety and transit information). The user may touch a pictogram to access 911, 311, directions, local bulletin boards, E-mail, events, visitor center, points of interest, and information that is normally obtainable through the telephone system and the internet.

708.8.3.1 Tactile Keyboard. Consider a separate physical keyboard or an on screen virtual/tactile keyboard. Keys should be identified by tactile characters complying with Section 703.3 and should be centered on the corresponding key. Keyboard should be water proof and vandal proof. Locate keyboard at the base of the touch screen with face capable of pivoting 0-90 degrees. Virtual keyboards should be tactile using clear embossing on the lower portion of the touch screen. Locate keyboard 28 inches (710 mm) minimum and 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the finished floor and complying with Section 902.

708.8.3.2 Verbal Operation. It is recommended that the terminal is fully capable of voice operation for those who cannot use or prefer the touch screen or keyboard. Terminal should utilize robust verbal command software, that also identifies components, provides operational instructions and functions and confirms actuation.

708.8.4 Locations. The terminals may be located in any existing or new public phone location, kiosks, building directories, etc. Consider locating terminals to provide easy access to relevant information and resources about the entire city or detailed information about the immediate location on street corners, bus stops, subways, landmarks, hotels, etc.

708.8.4.1 Integration. Consider integrating the terminals with public information display types complying with Section 710, directories complying with Section 711, emergency signage complying with Section 713, and wayfinding complying with Section 714.

708.8.5 Enclosure. Enclosures should be vandal proof and water proof. Consider providing a small sloped work surface and task lighting.

708.9 Kiosks. Multisensory kiosks containing wayfinding, general information, 911 emergency, 311 information, and other features in multiple and redundant ways to address a variety of sensory and cognitive skills should comply with Section 710.4

709 Signage System

709.1 General A building signage system should comply with Section 709. It should be:
A. Multisensory, comprised of visual, tactile and audible means of communication.
B. Multilingual where appropriate.
C. Modular for modification, maintenance and updating information.
D. Relies on graphics rather than text to reduce the confusion and to make it more international in nature with less dependence on the use of multiple languages.

709.1 Advisory. Wayfinding is a critical component of a signage system and signage is a critical component of wayfinding. Refer to Section 709.14 and Section 709.19.

709.2 Signage

709.2.1 Exterior Signage. Exterior signage requires protection from the elements and should be waterproof and lighted to a higher level especially for signage meant to be read at a distance such as parking lots. Signage should be placed, where possible, perpendicular to the direction of travel. It should be designed to prevent snow and ice accumulation, capable of sustaining severe winds, graffiti resistant, and built of substantial material that is vandal resistant. Signage subject to a potential conflict with cars should be protected with bollards, curbs, and other elements that will prevent collision. Exterior signage consists of alarms, visual characters, tactile characters, Braille, pictograms, symbols, remote infrared audible, assistive listening systems, two-way communications, public information display types, directories, emergency signage, compass orientation, arrows, etc.

709.2.1.1 Exterior Locations. Exterior locations include: site entry and building entrances, parking, complex and building names, all pedestrian and maintenance routes, intersections, all outdoor spaces and the various levels, plazas, rest areas, shelters, ramps, stairs, reference points (landmarks), public amenities, etc. They may be wall, floor, freestanding, overhead, independent or integrated with landscape and architectural elements. Locations are cited throughout the IDG and comply with Section 714 Wayfinding.

709.2.1.2 Building Name and Number. Building name and number should be provided in visual tactile and auditory formats. Tactile signage should be provided adjacent to primary entrances complying with Section 703.3 and Section 703.3.10 regarding recommended placement.

709.2.2 Interior Signage. Interior installations should be vandal resistant, moisture proof, comprised of easy to replace parts, and intuitive. Signage should be placed where possible perpendicular to travel. Interior signage consists of alarms, visual characters, tactile characters, Braille, pictograms, symbols, remote infrared audible sign, assistive listening systems, two-way communications, public information display types, directories, emergency signage, compass orientation, arrows, etc.

709.2.2.1 Interior Locations. Interior locations include: building entrance, lobby, routes, reference points, floor lobbies, elevator lobbies, stairs, ramps, escalators, intersections and turns, all floor levels, branching, open spaces, waiting areas, terminations, amenities, ancillary spaces, and all the other locations cited throughout the IDG and complying with Section 714 Wayfinding.

709.3 Visual Signage. Visual signage should comply with Sections 703.2. Signage within reach ranges complying with Sections 703.3.10, and 703.3.11 should contain Braille complying with Section 703.4. Visual signage includes: case, style, heights, widths, stroke width, character spacing, line spacing, height above floor, floor surface, supplemental emergency floor surface signage, integrated signage, finish and contrast, photo luminescent characters.

709.4 Tactile Signage. Tactile signage should comply with Sections 703.3 and contain Braille complying with Section 703.4 Tactile signage includes: depth, case, style, heights, widths, stroke width, character spacing, line spacing, height above floor, adult standing position, adult seated position, children's positions, floor surface, supplemental emergency floor signage, supplemental tactile signage locations, door locations, finish and contrast, and photo luminescent signage.

709.5 Braille. Braille should comply with Section 703.4 that includes: upper and lower case letter usage, dimensions, position, height, adult standing position, adult seated position, children's, positions, supplemental emergency floor surface Braille, stair handrails, railings and other locations.

709.6 Pictograms. Pictograms should comply with Sections 703.5. Pictograms within reach ranges complying with Sections 703.3.10, and 703.3.11 should contain text descriptors complying with Section 703.5.4 and Braille complying with Section 703.4. Pictograms include: field, finish and contrast, text descriptors, symbols. Pictograms should use common symbols and easily recognized images. They should be used throughout and supplemented with simple text. They should be used for routes, doors and doorways, ramps, curb ramps, elevators, parking spaces, parking lot routes, shelters, loading zones, stairways, drinking fountains, toilet and bathing rooms, washing machines and clothes dryers, saunas and steam rooms, alarms, telephones, assistive listening systems, ITM's, rooms types, assembly areas, dressing fitting and locker rooms, kitchens and kitchenettes, transportation facilities, courtrooms, waiting areas, service areas, dining areas, offices, meeting rooms, sales and service counters, storage, trash and recycling, etc.

709.7 Audible Signage. Audible signage should comply with Section 703.7 and includes: transmitters, receivers, frequency, optical power density, audio output, reception range, multiple signals. Audible signs include other types of transmitters, pre-recorded messages that can be triggered automatically or manually, web connections, cell phone systems, recorded walking tours, proximity signs, public address speaker systems, etc.

709.8 Pedestrian Signals. Provide sensory pedestrian signals (SPS). Pedestrian Signals that comply with Section 406.16 and Section 703.8. Pedestrian signals should be provided in visual, auditory and tactile/vibration formats.

709.9 Detectable Warnings and Surfaces. Detectable warnings and surfaces should comply with Section 705.

709.10 Assistive Listening Systems. Assistive listening systems should comply with Section 706.

709.11 Two-way Communications. Two-way communication systems should comply with Section 708.

709.12 Color and Contrast. Color and contrast is defined for the various components of a signage system and should comply with Sections 302.10 ad 302.11. Refinement of the use of color and contrast is contained in the Lighthouse International publication, *Effective Color Contrast, Designing for People with Partial Sight and Color Deficiencies* by Aries Arditi, PhD. This will help to enhance the inclusiveness and effectiveness of the signage system.

709.13 Comprehension. Comprehension can be increased by simplifying and grouping text into blocks and reducing the amount of the information to the absolute essence. Do not overwhelm visitors with information and provide only information that is relevant for immediate use. Limit the number of languages used to the relevant users. If a large number of languages are required it is suggested to address this with interactive kiosks complying with Section 710.4. More detailed information can be provided with directories and other supplemental means such as printed material, etc. Use common names and simple to understand directions. Refer to the Lighthouse International publication for type Refer to the Lighthouse International website for the following publications: *Making Text Legible, Designing for People with Partial Sight* by Aries Arditi, PhD; and *Simple Steps to More Readable Type Through Universal Graphic Design* by Aries Arditi, PhD.

709.14 Public Information Display Types. Public information display types should comply with Section 710 and includes: wall mounted types, free standing types, kiosk types, help desk types, ceiling types.

709.15 Directories. Directories should comply with Section 711 and includes: non-electronic directories, electronic directories, main/primary directory, floor directories, suite directories. Directories may contain visual and/or tactile maps. Refer to Section 714.7.1 for additional information regarding the use of maps and floor plans. Consider two-way visual communications complying with Section 708.5

709.16 Queing. Queing is used in a wide variety of building classifications such as banks, restaurant, medical facilities, service areas, etc. It should be provided in a range of formats including visual, and auditory. The system may be tied into other information and display types such as video monitors and other electronic signage. Queing should be supplemented with a manual or automatic ticket device.

709.17 Room Identification System. Room identification system should comply with Section 712.

709.18 Emergency Signage. Emergency signage should comply with Section 713 that includes: electronic and non-electronic signage, directional signage, photoluminescence material, hardware, floor signage, wall base signage, tactile guide strips, handrails, electronic visual signage, content, systems integration, monitors, supplemental monitors, displays, emergency back-up power; audible signage, audible system, building systems, evacuation route, emergency back-up power; emergency evacuation plans, hand-out material, drills, maps, directories and occupant registry.

709.19 Wayfinding. Wayfinding should comply with Section 714. This section supplements the signage system by identifying signage locations that include: site entry, exterior routes, exterior entrances, main lobby, interior routes, reference points, floor lobbies, intersections and turns, ancillary spaces. Wayfinding is a critical component of a signage system.

709.20 Warning and Instruction Labels. Warning and instruction labels should contain visual/ tactile characters, Braille and pictograms. Eye levels should comply with Section 310 to enhance readability. Visual characters, tactile characters, Braille and pictograms should comply with Section 703. The information should be concise. Process or steps should be listed in numerical order. If possible supplement text with a pictogram sequence to communicate process or show steps graphically to reduce the dependence on text or language, reduce confusion and to be comprehensible to all.

709.20 Advisory. Refer to *Making Text Legible Designing for People with Partial Sight* by Aries Arditi, Ph.D. This publication is available from The Lighthouse International provides text guidance regarding contrast, color, point size, leading, fonts and letter spacing.

710 Public Information Display Types.

710.1 General. Public information display types should comply with Section 710. Displays should include wall mounted, free-standing, kiosk type, help desk, ceiling floor and integrated components.

710.2 Wall Mounted Type. Wall mounted types should comply with Section 305, 308, 309 and 707.

710.3 Free-Standing Type. Free standing type displays should comply with Section 305, 307, 308 and 309.

710.4 Multisensory Information/Emergency Kiosks. Multisensory information/emergency kiosks should comply with Section 710.4 and Sections 305, 307, 308, 309 and 708.5. They should function visually, audibly and tactilely. They should not contain any compartments or protruding objects. Combine wayfinding, general information, 911 emergency, 311 information, other features in multiple and redundant ways, to address a variety of sensory and cognitive skills, while being inviting and easy to use. Provide content in visual, auditory and tactile formats.[6] The unit should switch to emergency mode to display public information bulletins.

710.4.1 Locators. Consider locators utilizing an audio attract beacon, with a repetitive sound (e.g. chirp). A cell phone activated beacon with an attract tone played from the kiosk when a request is placed by the user calling the kiosk's computerized attendant. It can also be used instead of a repeating attract sound. A detectable floor surface will make it easier for people who use a cane to locate and identify the unit and to confirm the correct orientation position for operation. Bright contrasting colors and signage can help identify a kiosk's location for people with low vision. Avoid using color combinations that present discrimination problems for users who are color blind.

710.4.1.1 Blue Light Identifier. Provide a blue light identifier for all kiosk units to help locate them for use in an emergency and for information. The light may be a single enclosed bulb, panel, ring or line of blue LEDs placed on top or at the upper surface of the unit and should be highly visible but not obtrusive.

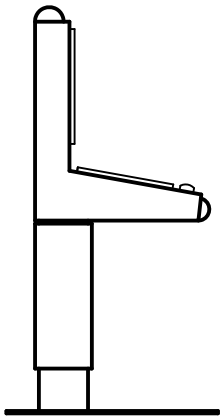


Fig. 710.4
Multisensory Information/Emergency Kiosks

710.4.2 Operation. Tactile graphics features can be added to help users to understand complex spatial configurations. Raised line maps and diagrams may be augmented with audio tagging, where various features are labeled with sound with touch activated audio descriptions. This can be accomplished with various sensor technologies, such as capacitive touch, pressure-sensitivity or infrared optics. Tactile maps should be placed on a level or slightly angled surface and oriented so users are able to form an accurate mental model of the environment depicted. Tactile maps should include high-contrast colors, lighted locator, and task lighting for low vision or color blind users. Incorporate internationally-recognized pictograms rather than language-specific labels. Large illuminated buttons can be used to scroll through menu choices and selections. Provide a large glowing red pushbutton in the middle of the counter, with one green directional arrow on either side. The quantity of buttons should be kept to a minimum and software should be relied on to adjust the function of the buttons needed to operate the kiosk in each operational mode. Traditional input and pointing devices, such as QWERTY keyboards, touch screens and trackballs should be avoided, unless their functionality is duplicated in other methods that are more inclusive. Consider two-way visual communications complying with Section 708.5.

6 The "Talking Kiosk" concept was pioneered by Dr. Karen Gourgey and her team of researchers at Baruch College of the City University of New York. Later, Touch Graphics, Inc., was formed to design and build these units for other clients, such as the Boston Museum of Science, Metropolitan Transportation Authority and now, the NYC Department of Transportation and the WBLDC. Steven Landau, Touch Graphics, Inc., is the co-creator with Dr. Gourgey. They designed, fabricated, programmed and refined the concept of audio-tactile interactive computing.

710.4.2 Advisory. NYC has installed a prototype Talking Kiosk in two ferry terminals. It resembles an automated teller machine. A low, intermittent bird-like chirp helps blind and low-vision passengers locate the kiosk terminal. The horizontal surface is a three-dimensional tactile floor plan of the concourse level. When users place their finger on the plan, a narrator provides the name of the place they touch. Illumination of that spot is an option. If the user continues to hold their finger in a single spot, they hear the information about that kiosk's position in the terminal. An index allows users to select a destination in the terminal from a list, and then have their finger led to that place on the map through a process of incremental audio coaching. All information provided by the Talking Kiosk is presented in multiple formats, including audio narration, video captions, images and sound effects (earcons). By layering information in this way, the kiosk helps to orient people with a range of abilities, that is engaging and fun.

710.4.3 Unit Enclosure. Physical enclosure should promote ease-of-use for both seated and standing users. Exterior kiosks should be weather proof and vandal proof. Where possible, they should be located under a building overhang or roof structure.

710.5 Help Desk Type. Help desk should comply with Chapter 9, Section 305, 307 and 309. In addition, the following should be provided.

1. Centrally located information desk where people can obtain general information, directions, have questions answered, assistance with the service of self-service equipment.
2. Desk that can accommodate seated users when required.
3. Policy instituted where any user can get on-site personal assistance by appointment.

710.6 Ceiling Types. Ceiling types should have bottom edge not less than 80 inches (2030 mm) above the floor and should contain visual and audible signage.

711 Directories

711.1 General. Directories should comply with Section 711.

711.2 Components. The directory should be visual, tactile and audible. Directories non-electronic, electronic or a combination of both components. Comply with Chapter 3.

711.2.1 Non-electronic Directories. Non-electronic directories should comply with Sections 703 for Visual, Tactile and Braille signage. Pictograms should be included where applicable and should comply with Section 703.5. Braille should comply with Section 704.

711.2.2 Electronic Directories. Electronic directories should consist of standard type-in keyboard as per Section 705, monitors complying with Section 707 and 708.5, telephones complying with Section 704, emergency assistance alarm complying with Section 702, remote infrared audible signage complying with Section 703.7, Wi-Fi, and compliance with Section 707. Monitor should be a touch screen with audible capability, keyboard should contain a Braille strip readout above or directly below. Electronic queries should be both tactile and through voice recognition and should be alphabetical, floor-by-floor or by name.

711.2.2 Advisory. Information/emergency terminals located throughout a facility at key locations, complying with Section 708.8, can be an effective and easy to use electronic directory system. This system may be used for the main/primary director complying with Section 711.3, Floor Directories complying with Section 711.4 and Suite Directories complying with Section 711.5. An information/navigation reference point system complying with Section 708.7, could be integrated with the directories to help locate the unit for people with a sight disability. The terminal may be wall mounted at primary reference points, such as an elevator lobby on each floor. It contains a portrait oriented interactive touch screen and virtual keyboard (that may be supplemented with a physical keyboard and perhaps an active Braille strip reader for people with a sight disability) that can convey building, rooms, occupants, floor layout, and directions for a requested location. It should provide: access to commercial and information venues; bi-directional voice and data communications for emergencies (e.g. 911) and public information (e.g. 311); targeted broadcasting alerts (e.g. Amber) building events, and general safety messages.

The Information/emergency kiosk concept complying with Section 710.4 is similar but primarily tactile in nature. It is multisensory and includes 911 emergency, 311 information, building information and other features in redundant ways to address a variety of sensory and cognitive skills. Content is provided in visual, auditory and tactile formats.

(711.2.2 Continuation) One of the major differences between the two approaches is that the multisensory information/emergency kiosk contains a three dimensional plan of the floor where it is located. This helps not only people with sight disabilities, but makes it easier to understand and use for people that have difficulty understanding and orienting themselves with two dimensional maps and floor plans.
Any system should be a WiFi hotspot so that people can use their personal computer and tie into the system.

711.3 Main/Primary Directory. Main/primary directory should be located close to the main entrance. The information should also include locates of amenities such as restrooms, telephones, etc.

711.4 Floor Directory. Floor directory should be located as close as possible or immediately outside the elevator or floor lobby and should comply with Section 308. Information should be provided for that particular floor.

711.5 Suite Directories. Individual suite directories should be located at the suite entrance and should comply with Section 308. Information should be provided to that particular suite.

712 Room Identification System. The system should be simple, intuitive and consistent for effective wayfinding. Identification should comprise letters, number and names. Provide compass orientation for each side of the building (N,E,S,W), identify floor or level, start numbering sequence at the same location for each floor (e.g., due north increasing clockwise in plan, north to south or west to east), maintain even numbers on one side of the corridor and odd on the other side. Identify special rooms and unique spaces by name (e.g., janitor), abbreviation or a single letter (e.g., "j"). Provide pictograms complying with Section 703.5. Label all usable rooms and spaces (e.g., lobby, corridors, stairwells and restrooms). For example, a hotel room or an apartment on the due north side of the 18th floor, may be labeled: N1801. An office suite in the same location may be labeled: N1801s. A janitor closet in the same location may be labeled: N1801j, N18j or N18 janitor.

712.1 Information/Navigation Reference Point System. Consider an information/navigation reference point system complying with Section 708.7 or other proximity devices, to provide room identification and directions for people with sight disabilities.

713 Emergency Signage System(s).

713.1 General. Emergency signage system should comply with all applicable federal, state and local code requirements, should comply with Section 713 recommendations, which are meant to supplement and enhance the legal requirements. If a conflict arises, comply with the legal requirement.

713.2 Non-Electronic Emergency Signage. Non-electronic emergency signage should include the following.

713.2.1 Directional signage. Directional signage should provide clear information regarding path of travel for emergency egress. This includes wall, ceiling, floor, free-standing and component integrated locations.

713.2.2 Photo luminescent Material. All exit path signage should be photo luminescent material. These signs should be washable, non-toxic, non-radioactive and if subjected to fire, must be self extinguishing when the flame is removed. Provide floor level photo luminescent arrows, lines or other wayfinding means that will direct occupants to the closest emergency exit and/or area of refuge.

713.2.2.1 Hardware. Provide an emergency lighting system that will guide occupants to exits and nearest area of rescue.

713.2.3 Floor Emergency Signage. Floor emergency signs should be visual and tactile and comply with Section 703.3. Braille should be provided.

713.2.4 Wall Base Signage. Wall base signage with top of the text no higher than 12 inches (305 mm) above the floor surface, should be considered. Signage should be as close to the floor as possible to accommodate people maneuvering at floor level due to high smoke levels. Signage may be integrated into base molding.

713.2.5 Tactile Guide Strip. Directional arrows or emergency wayfinding should be a tactile guide strip continuous from all major points in the building to exit discharge without interruptions or break in the wayfinding path.

713.2.5 Advisory. It may be difficult to make tactile guide strips continuous due to intervening doors, partitions and other physical interruptions.

713.2.6 Handrails. Handrails should contain a photo luminescent strip to provide additional wayfinding integrated into the handrail. Comply with 713.2.2

713.3 Electronic Visual Emergency Signage. Electronic visual emergency signage should comply with Section 713.3. Consider utilization of the information/emergency terminals complying with Section 708.8 and the information/emergency kiosks complying with Section 710.4. These units may go into emergency mode to display critical information.

713.3.1 Content. Provide the same information that visual, tactile and Braille signage provides, but should also supplement and provide current or real time emergency information.

713.3.2 Systems Integration. Link to the fire suppression, emergency lighting and other systems.

713.3.3 Visual Comminutions. Provide two-way visual communications signing and lip reading complying with Section 708.5 and should be linked to adjacent Braille displays. This includes directories, kiosks, etc.

713.3.4 Supplemental Monitors. In addition to the standard location for monitors, supplementary monitors should be considered including stairwells, emergency exits, etc.

713.3.5 Displays. Displays are not be limited to monitors but can be other types of illuminated signage incorporated into the building system.

713.3.6 Emergency Back-up Power. Electronic signage should be on a dedicated continuous service and should be provided or connected with a an emergency generator and/or battery backup system(s).

713.4 Audible Emergency Signage. Audible emergency signage should comply with Section 713.4. Consider utilization of the information/emergency terminals complying with Section 708.8 and the information/emergency kiosks complying with Section 710.4 and information/navigation reference point system complying with Section 708.7.

713.4.1. Audible System. In addition to visual signaling systems, the audible signaling systems should help people evacuate along the best route relative to the he building condition at the time of the emergency situation.

713.4.2 Building Systems. The audible system should be tied to the centralized system and other systems. Audible systems should be linked to all other electronic means of communication including visual and audio systems (e.g. inductive loop, infrared , FM systems) cell phones, PDA's etc.

713.4.3 Evacuation Route. Best route information must be dynamic, robust and current to address emergencies, building events, peak usage and temporary conditions.

713.4.4 Emergency Back-up Power Audible systems should be on a dedicated continuous service and should be provided or connected with a an emergency generator and battery backup systems.

713.5 Tactile Emergency Signage. Consider integrating vibration with signage at key points. The information/navigation reference point system complying with Section 708.7 may be used in emergencies for directions and may be triggered (to produce pulses) building wide to alert users to an emergency conditions.

713.6 Emergency Evacuation Plans. Emergency evacuation plans should be provided for people who need assistance in an emergency and should comply with Section 713.5.

713.6.1 Handout Material. Handout material should be available showing emergency egress paths that coordinate with the signage system.

713.6.2 Drills. Occupants should be provided with periodic drills that show the various egress paths to become familiar with the signage and location of all wayfinding systems and to provide a level of security and comfort so they will be able to navigate out of the building under extreme circumstances.

713.6.3 Maps. All floor plan maps should contain information regarding the emergency egress signage system, should be tactile and contain Braille.

713.6.4 Directories. Occupants should be made aware of the information located at the various directories and the location of the emergency assistance alarms which should also be indicated on the tactile floor plan.

713.6.5 Registry. All occupants that require assistance should provide their names, location and emergency communication numbers to building security. Note: It is commonly difficult to obtain such a list due to privacy concerns.

714 Wayfinding.

714.1 General. Provide a multisensory wayfinding system complying with Section 714. Wayfinding should be visual, tactile and audible. The composition determines the overall effectiveness. Sight, sound and touch should be examined separately, as well as redundancy to evaluate the solution.

714.1 Advisory. Wayfinding should be an intentional, well thought out, overlapping multisensory navigation system and not a design by-product. It is much more than just signage or maps. Maps are useless for some people who cannot read a floor plan, cannot orient themselves and cannot retain the information. Wayfinding functions should effectively guide first time visitors. It utilizes the entire environment. It may be dynamic and passive, dramatic to subtle, conscious and subconscious. It is the composition of the overall system that will determine it's effectiveness. This will vary from person to person depending upon their ability to mentally navigate a room, area or entire facility. It is recommended to consult with a team of people that represent the various disabilities to review the effectiveness of the design.

714.2 Senses

714.2.1 Visual. Visual wayfinding includes but is not limited to the following: signage (including text, pictograms, maps, diagrams, etc.) architectural and landscape elements, space shape and composition, furniture, circulation patterns, natural and artificial light, material, color and contrast. Pictograms are strongly recommended to reduce the dependence on text. Pictograms can be used in lieu of or to supplement text from room or space identification to direct or communicate critical information. Electronic wayfinding includes computer and display monitors, digitized signs, artificial lighting, etc. Also see Section 311. Visual signage should comply with the relevant Sections of Chapter 7: 703.2 Visual Characters, 703.5 Pictograms, 703.6 Symbols of Accessibility, Provide two-way visual communications complying with Section 708.5, 709 Signage System, 710 Public Information Display Types, 711 Directories, 712 Room Identification System, 713 Emergency Signage System.

714.2.1.1 Visual Contrast. Visual contrast should comply with Section 302.10

714.2.1.2 Color. Color should comply with Section 302.11.

714.2.2 Tactile. Tactile wayfinding includes but is not limited to the following: tactile signage (raised text, Braille, relief maps and diagrams, etc.), landscape and architectural elements, furniture, detectable warnings and surfaces, textures, floor track and strip systems. Floor surface should comply with Section 302 that includes non-compressible, compressible, tactile surfaces, detectable surfaces, and detectable warnings. Electronic signage including Braille pin readers, vibration, etc. Tactile signage should comply with the relevant Sections of Chapter 7: 703.3 Tactile Characters, 703.4 Braille, 703.5 Pictograms, 705 Detectable Warning, 709 Signage System, 710 Public Information Display Types, 711 Directories, 712 Room Identification System, 713 Emergency Signage System,

714.2.2.1 Non-Compressible Floor Surfaces. Non-compressible floor surfaces should comply with Section 302.2.1.

714.2.2.2 Compressible Floor Surfaces. Compressible floor surfaces should comply with Section 302.2.2

714.2.2.3 Tactile Floor Surfaces. Tactile floor surfaces should comply with Section 302.6

714.2.2.4 Detectable Surfaces. Detectable surfaces should comply with Section 705.

714.2.2.5 Edges. Edges should comply with Section 302.9.

714.2.3 Auditory. Auditory perception may be affected by one's hearing ability and acoustics (noise level, reverberation, and distance). Auditory wayfinding includes but is not limited to the following: use of ambient and focused sounds

(e.g. human and machine made sounds), enhancement or focusing on distinct natural sounds (e.g. water, wind, leaf/branch movement), introduced sounds (e.g. bells, chimes) and electronic systems. Audible signage should comply with the relevant Sections of Chapter 7: 703.7 Remote Infrared Audible Sign Systems, 704 Telephones, 706 Assistive Listening Systems, 708 Two-way Communication Systems, 709 Signage System, 710 Public Information Display Types, 711 Directories, 712 Room Identification System, 713 Emergency Signage System. In addition to cell phone wayfinding complying with Sections 714.8, 714.9, 714.1.

714.2.3.1 Auditory Site Amplification. Consider audio amplification stations, strategically placed within a site so those with diminished hearing can listen to the unique sound features of air, wind, vegetation, wildlife (e.g. birds) and water as part of the wayfinding system. Provide portable listening devices (e.g. headphones). Assistive technology should comply with Section 703.7 and Section 706.

714.2.3.1 Advisory. Assistive listening systems consists of three general wireless types utilizing transmitters and receivers. They are named for their method of signal transmission: induction loop (IL), frequency modulation (FM), and infrared (IR). Audible wayfinding may also include pre-recorded tours, cell phones systems and Sections 714.10 through 714.16

714.2.3.2 Sound Reference Points. Utilize unique sound characteristics within and surrounding a site at reference points as part of the wayfinding system. Sounds include the water, e.g. ocean, lakes, streams, fountains; wind, e.g. vegetation movement, birds; sound absorption, e.g. sand, snow; reverberation, e.g. walls, underpasses, spaces between structures. Utilize existing, non-invasive sound generating devices, e.g. bells, wind chimes, fog horns, music.

714.2.3.3 Information/Navigation Reference Point System. An information/navigation reference point system complying with Section 708.7 is recommended for people with a visual disabilities.

714.2.4 Olfactory Reference Points. Utilize unique scent characteristics within the site.

714.3 Landscape Elements. Landscape architecture enhances wayfinding. Consider space shape and composition, element placement and composition, types, shape, color, scale and growth rate/ patterns from initial installation to maturity. Density, glare protection, physical characteristics, radiation protection, sound attenuation and air infiltration are important considerations. Utilize features such as, leaf type, branching structure, flowering, scent, and fruit. Consider sound attenuation, solar radiation, screening, glare, reflection and air filtration. Carefully integrated fabricated elements enhance wayfinding (e.g., bollards, natural and paved walkways, curbs and fencing, railings, ramps, walls, drinking fountains, outdoor furniture, planters).

714.4 Architectural Elements. Architecture should intentionally incorporate wayfinding. Architectural elements include but are far from limited to the following: space shape and composition, columns, doors, overhangs (e.g. canopies, trellises), walls, roofs, finishes, decorative details, railing, ramps, walls, stairs, windows. Elements provide clues and emphasize various components such as entries. The massing orientation of the building will provide wayfinding. Work with elements required by code such as egress locations. Art work applications range from landscape and architectural integration to stand alone works.

714.5 Hierarchy. Hierarchy is not limited to primary, secondary and tertiary routes. Spaces (lobbies, waiting areas, intersections, etc.) configuration should be designed to convey level of importance, sequence and applicable to all sensory information.

714.6 Consistency. Consistency is important in a wayfinding system, but carefully crafted deviation from a standardized system can also be used as an advantage to emphasize an element.

714.7 Orientation. Orientation should be provided in several ways including: compass orientation, location of where you are within the facility and distances. Compass orientation can be provided with visual and tactile compass/north arrow images and audible compass direction. Floor placement is strongly recommended. Location where you are within a facility can be provided with a map, reference point, electronically (e.g. cell phone location by calling number located at a particular location or GPS). Distances to nearest features and primary reference points should be provided. Wayfinding kiosks that contain a relief map linked to an electronic monitor, complying with Section 710.4, is recommended. This will tell you where you are, where ref-

erence points are and compass direction in addition to other relevant information.

714.7.1 Maps and Floor Plans. Maps and floor plans are of limited usefulness and are not inclusive means of providing wayfinding. Not everyone is capable of reading and understanding them. Exterior maps should provide route, connections to other routes, attractions, amenities (e.g., rest areas, shelters, drinking fountains, toilets, transit stops, and parking), distances, travel times, stress levels, and emergency information. If provided, they should be both visual and tactile with location of the map indicated by a star. It is strongly recommended to combine a map with an electronic display to help guide the visitor to their destination. Maps should be included in public information display complying with Section 710, kiosks complying with Section 710.4 and directories complying with Section 711. Maps may be wall mounted, floor mounted, included in overhead signage, as part of the elevator lobby signage requirements, etc. Refer also to Section 714.10

714.7.1 Advisory. One way of increasing the comprehension of maps is to use a three dimensional system complying with Section 710.4. The information/emergency kiosk contains a three dimensional floor plan depicting where it is located. This not only helps people with sight disabilities, but makes it easier to understand and use for people that have difficulty comprehending and orienting themselves to two dimensional maps and floor plans.

714.7.2 Directional Indicators. Consider the use of directional indicators (e.g. arrows) to guide the visitor through the facility and to keep them oriented. In lieu of directional arrows a color dot or raised tactile symbol can be used to guide the visitor. Refer to Section 714.14 site information/emergency terminals.

714.7.3 Information/Navigation/Alert Reference Point System. An information/navigation reference point system is intended for people with a visual disability and should comply with Section 708.7 and Section 706. This system utilizes vibration, providing a tactile indicator. Consider other types of proximity detectors.

714.8 Site

714.8.1 Site Entry. Emphasis site entrance utilizing landscape and architectural elements Begin integration of visual, tactile and auditory wayfinding at site entries and public transportation and vehicle drop-off point. Signage should comply with Sections 709. Consider an information kiosk with general signage, maps, brochures etc.

714.8.2 Vehicle Parking. In large parking facilities it is critical to provide a simple way of wayfinding for both locating the entrance of the building and to locate the vehicle. Level, compass direction, and zone should be made easier to identify and locate by identifying each area within the facility with a unique color, level number and compass direction, such as a blue sign background, that reads: Level 2, North. Signage should be located overhead, wall and floor surface mounted. Provide large scale properly lighted signage for distance reading from a moving vehicle located at key points including parking facility entrance, along pedestrian route and building entrances. Include pictograms.

714.8.3 Exterior Route. A primary exterior route should be designed as a part of a well thought out three dimensional circulation system. A direct link should be provided to the building entrance(s). Exterior routes are defined by a number of elements identified in Section 714.2. Routes are more than just paved walkways, they can be defined by living walls and screens. Introduction of fabricated structure, such as fencing, rails, low walls, and curbs will enhance wayfinding. Signage should comply with 713. Provide public information displays complying with Section 710.

714.8.4 Configuration. Exterior route configuration should be intuitive and consistent whether it is based on a standard geometric pattern or organic. It should direct people to the various features within the site with the least amount of effort and confusion. Provide a minimum of one major meeting space to act as a reference point. Other spaces, including intersections should be based on a hierarchy.

714.9 Building

714.9.1 Entrance. Enhance the building entrance(s) through multisensory means to distinguish it from the rest of the building and other doors. If possible, provide direct views of the building entry for the site entry or route to help guide the visitor.

714.9.2 Main Lobby. Upon entering the facility, the wayfinding system should be obvious and continuous from the exterior. Consider the lobby as the primary reference point or one of several primary intersections or reference points within the facility. More aggressive wayfinding such as handrails and floor strip systems should be provided for people with sight disabilities starting at the entry area for some types of buildings (e.g. hospitals) Signage should comply with Section 709.

714.9.3 Route. Route complying with Section 403.5, may be comprised of a primary, secondary and tertiary routes. Provide a hierarchy that distinguishes each (e.g. width, height, shape, ceiling design, color, lighting, decorative elements, etc).

714.9.3.1 Configuration. Interior route configuration should be intuitive and it should not be circuitous regardless if it is based on a standard geometric pattern or organic. Discontinuous routes are not recommended due to the confusion that may arise. It should direct people to the various features within the site. Provide a minimum of one major meeting space to act as a reference point. Other spaces, including intersections should be based on a hierarchy.

714.9.4 Reference Points. Reference points along the route include lobbies, intersections, branching, open spaces, waiting areas, rest areas, terminations, etc. Spaces may convey importance using a particular shape, size, material and texture. Signage should be used to enhance the reference points and provide supplemental graphic information. Floor lobbies, elevator lobbies, restrooms, drinking fountains, telephones, etc. provide reference points. Amenities are typically stacked in multistory buildings for efficiency and provide a consistent reference point from floor to floor.

714.9.5 Floor Lobbies. Floor lobbies include elevator and bathroom lobbies. These act as secondary reference points and should be enhanced with multisensory information. Provide floor directory complying with Section 711.4. Elevator lobbies often double as a floor lobby. Stairs and adjacent amenities within close proximity enhance its importance

714.9.6 Intersections and Turns. Route intersections are reference points. These should be enhanced with multisensory information, art work and other features. Turns may be used for wayfinding, especially if the route configuration contains only a few. A visitor may find their location simply by remembering that there destination is right after the turn.

714.9.7 Ancillary spaces. Spaces such as rest or seating areas, food courts, balconies and break areas, act as reference points.

714.10 Smart Phone/PDA, GPS Wayfinding. Smart phone/PDA, GPS wayfinding systems are recommended for both interior and exterior applications. They should provide navigation information in audio, visual and tactile/vibration formats. Features may include road and recreational route maps, floor plans, user locator, a variety of relevant information (street, floor, compass direction, distance, duration, etc.) Reference points should be identified to help users easily locate themselves within a facility (e.g. directory locations, entries, elevators, restrooms, etc.). Any device should accommodate a wide range of applications, user needs and preferences.

714.11 Cell Phone Audible Wayfinding. Cell phone audible wayfinding consists of reference points assigned a specific phone number. At each location the occupant dials the provided number and a prerecorded message will identify the location, provide directional and other relevant information and assistance if necessary.

714.12 Recorded Tours. Consider audible and visual exterior and interior tours for institutions such as multiple building complexes or museums or other types of exhibitions, temporary facilities such as conventions, etc. Tours may be recorded in a wide range of formats (e.g., downloadable digital tours).

714.13 Information/Navigation/Alert Reference Point System. Consider providing a information/ navigation/alert reference point system complying with Section 708.7.

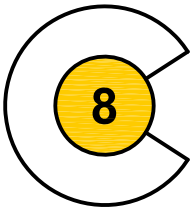
714.14 Information/Emergency Terminals. Consider providing information/ emergency terminals complying with Section 708.8 in public pay phones in close proximity of major features, facilities, landmarks, within parks, etc. The terminals may provide information, directions, history, and additional information that may be used for self-guided tours.

714.15 Multisensory Information/Emergency Kiosks. Consider providing multisensory information/ emergency kiosks complying with Section 710.4

714.16 Multisensory Pedestrain Signals. Pedestrian signals should be provided in visual, auditory and tactile/vibration overlapping formats complying with Section 406.16 and 703.8.

714.17 Variable Message Signs. Variable message signs (VMS) can be used to provide wayfinding with both static and dynamic messages.

714.17 Advisory. VMS's are used to provide static and dynamic information in real time at transportation facilities, vehicle and pedestrian routes, but are useful for a wide range of applications, especially for wayfinding. Refer to Section 105.3 for *Synthesis on the Legibility of Variable Message Signing (VMS) for Readers with Vision Loss.* This Access Board research document can be accessed through their website:http://www.access-board.gov/research/VMS/finalreport.htm. This document published in 2002, contains a great deal of information regarding this type of signage including the influence of visual disabilities on legibility, standards and research, technology, applications, recommendations and future research needs. Detailed information is provide for appropriate letter height for vehicle and facilities, width to height ratios, colors, fonts, luminance, character/word/line spacing, case, contrast, sign width, paging or streaming, static display time.



Selected Spaces

800 Introduction. Chapter 8 examines some particular types of rooms and spaces containing unique technical criteria (e.g. variable height spaces). Of course, they are all subject to compliance with the other chapters. Ultimately, a fully inclusive environment is the goal. The administrative authority determines and defines application through scoping provisions in their code. See Chapter 2 Scoping, for additional information.

Some *IDG* sections commonly apply, such as those identified under this chapter in the general paragraphs for Sections 802 through 812. These include, but are not limited to the following example sections: 302 Floor Surfaces, 303 Changes in Level, 304 Turning Space, 305 Clear Floor Space, 306 Knee and Toe Clearance, 307 Protruding Objects, 308 Reach Ranges, 309 Operable Parts, 310 Eye Levels, 403 Walking Surfaces, 404 Doors and Doorways, 405 Ramps, 505 Handrails, 506 Windows, 602 Drinking Fountains, 609 Grab Bars, 702 Alarms, 703 Signs, 704 Telephones, 706 Assistive Listening Systems, 708 Two-way Communications, 709 Signage System, 710 Public Display Types, 902 Dining and Work Surfaces, 903 Seating and 906 Trash and Recycling Receptacles.

Chapter 8 covers assembly areas, dressing areas, fitting and locker rooms, kitchen and kitchenettes, transportation facilities, holding cells and housing cells, courtrooms, waiting areas, service areas, dining areas, offices and meeting rooms. These few examples should help designers apply similar logic to other types of spaces.

Assembly areas focus on spectator seating accommodations in public assembly and entertainment venues (e.g. stadiums, arenas, theaters, playhouses and auditoriums). Site, routes, entrances, doors, vertical circulation, parking, services and concessions, amenities, signage, wayfinding, and other components are covered under other chapters in the *IDG*. Assembly seating includes: adjustable height spaces, stationary inclusive spaces, standard seating, communication elements and features, lines of sight and dispersion. Seating accommodates a wide range of needs and preferences. Public assembly should be easy to use, containing a simple and intuitive circulation system that reduces confusion, congestion and eliminates choke points. Lines of sight are critical. Seating should be comfortable and adjustable where practical. Concessions and amenities should be logically placed to avoid long travel distances, accommodate peak pedestrian traffic, recognizable and easy to enter and exit. Maintain direct or electronic visual and audible links to the performance or event in all areas of the facility.

Lobbies should be large enough to accommodate peak occupancy and properly integrate and enhance the circulation system. Vertical circulation, seating, restrooms and other amenities should be within close proximity of the primary lobby and floor lobbies.

Kitchens and kitchenettes should provide proper clearance, work surfaces, sinks, and appliances that create an inclusive environment for cooking. Section 804 applies to all kitchens except dwelling units in Chapter 10. Kitchens should work for a wide variety of users, especially where it is not known who will use the facility.

Transportation facilities specifically address boarding, shelters, signage and wayfinding. Subway wayfinding provides directional information at entrances and key locations.

Holding cells and housing cells accommodate mobility devices and address benches, beds, toilet facilities and communication features.

Courtrooms contain rooms, spaces, stations and hierarchy. These cover waiting areas, clerk's office, central holding, interview rooms, jury assembly area, conference rooms, courtroom entry, main aisle, routes, spectator area, rail, jury box, witness stand, judge's bench, clerk's and bailiff's stations, court reporter, judge's chambers, jury deliberation rooms, holding cells, communications and wayfinding. The witness stand utilizes the adjustable height space concept, that should also be considered for judges' benches, clerk's stations, bailiff's station, deputy clerk's stations and court reporters.

Waiting and reception areas are common throughout the various building classifications. They should be provided with a directory, other signage and supportive seating. Locate within close proximity to restrooms and other amenities. Trash receptacles should be grouped with these to increase the overall convenience, usability and should not conflict with the path of travel.

Service areas are examined because they are important in a wide variety of building classifications. They should be designed to make the interaction between providers and visitors comfortable, easy to communicate and provide privacy for exchange of sensitive information.

Dining seating, circulation, surfaces, food service lines and concessions are examined. Awkward and difficult paths of travel within a seating plan should be eliminated for those with diminished mobility and dexterity. All areas should be usable by everyone, with seating and views providing an equitable pleasant dining experience.

Offices should be comfortable, accommodating employee needs and preferences. These are necessities because of the amount of time that one occupies the space. Lighting controls should be adjustable, logically located and relate to the lighting configuration. Light levels should be appropriate for various tasks. Alarm output levels should exceed ambient sound levels. Noise and reverberation levels should be reduced to enhance communications and to accommodate specific activities. Environmental controls should be located within usable reach ranges complying with Section 308 and operable parts complying with Section 309. Controls should allow individual adjustments. Workstations should be linked to routes accessing all spaces in the work environment (e.g. restrooms, waiting areas, storage, lounges and meeting rooms). User preferences are addressed for work surfaces, general and personal storage, lounges, seated and standing work stations, general office and work seating. Temporary workspaces are essentially an updated version of the traditional telephone booth, that provides two-way communications and a work surface that can be used for a variety of purposes. Enclosed spaces are recommended for visual and auditory privacy.

Meeting rooms should accommodate a wide range of uses, group sizes and the needs and preferences of the widest range of occupants as possible. Maximum flexibility should be built into the design for unanticipated uses and changing needs. The architectural elements should not restrict flexibility such as window and door placement that do not allow easy and logical subdivision of a room or space.

801 General

801.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 8 should apply where recommended by the scoping provisions adopted by the administrative authority.

801.1 Advisory. Chapter 8 is different from the rest of the book in that it blurs the boundary between technical criteria and scoping. It addresses particular types of facilities rather than focusing strictly on components. The standard list of rooms and spaces in *A117.1-2003* was supplemented to include several other types but these are just a few examples. Basic logic needs to be exercised to determine which sections in other chapters of the book are applicable. The *IDG* should be used as a parts list in this respect. It is the administrative authority of each municipality that should establish the scoping and application of the technical criteria that the designer uses to produce an inclusive environment.

802 Assembly Areas

802.1 General. Assembly areas focuses on seating that accommodates all spectators so that everyone has an equivalent general experience. All other aspects of the venue regardless of types (e.g., stadium, convention center, auditorium, playhouse, movie theater and lecture hall) should comply with the recommendations of the applicable sections in the other chapters of the book.

1. Building blocks should comply with Chapter 3, including floor surfaces, changes in level, turning space, clear floor space, knee and toe clearance, protruding objects, reach ranges, operable parts and eye levels.
2. Routes should comply with Chapter 4 including walking surfaces, doors and doorways, ramps, elevators, etc.
3. Parking, stairways and handrails, should comply with Chapter 5
4. Drinking fountains and toilet facilities should comply with Chapter 6
5. Communication elements and features should comply with Chapter 7 including signage, assistive listening systems, wayfinding, telephones, etc. Signage recommendations are contained in 805.6.
6. Seating, sales and service counters, dining surfaces and trash receptacles should comply with Chapter 9.

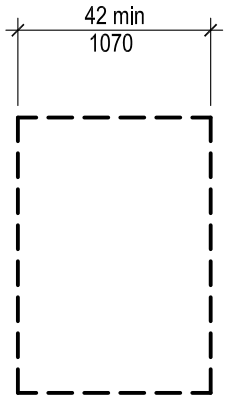
802.1 Advisory. Inclusive locations can be used in multiple ways. The amenities provided at these locations should address the greatest range of spectator needs and preferences.

802.1.1 Seating. Seating in assembly areas should be comprised of adjustable height inclusive spaces, stationary inclusive spaces, companion seating, aisle seating and standard seating. Inclusive space locations should accommodate mobility devices, equipment, transfer seating, other types of seating, and standard seating. Provide directional signage as part of the wayfinding system and comply with Section 714 and public information displays complying with Section 710 and signage system complying with Section 709.

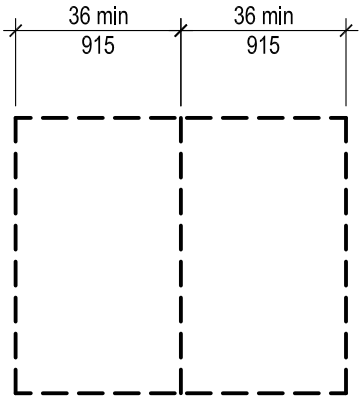
802.2 Floor Surfaces. The floor surface of inclusive space locations should be uninterrupted and have a slope not steeper than 1:48 and should comply with Section 302. It should be level with the adjacent floor surface in the stationary parked position.

802.3 Width. A single inclusive space should be 42 inches (1067 mm) in width. Where two adjacent inclusive spaces are provided, each space should be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width.

802.3 Advisory. Paired stationary spaces allow greater flexibility for both maneuverability, comfort and option of sitting with a friend, who also could benefit by the inclusive nature of the space.

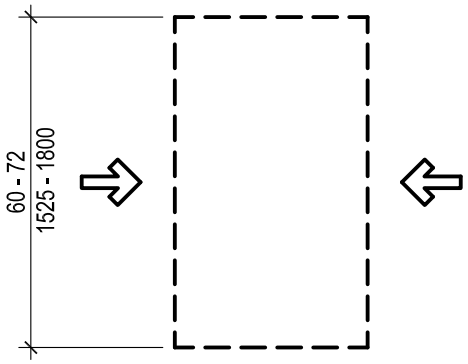


(a)
Single Space



(b)
Multiple Adjacent Spaces

Fig. 802.3
Width of an Inclusive Space in Assembly Areas

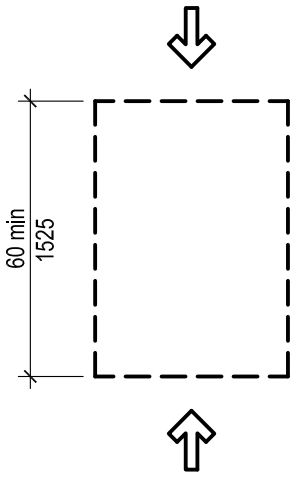


(b)
Side Access

Fig. 802.4
Depth of a Inclusive Space in Assembly Areas

802.4 Depth. Where an inclusive space location can be entered from the front or rear, the space should be 60 inches (1525 mm) in depth. Where the space location can only be entered from the side, the space may be 60 inches minimum (1525 mm) but 72 inches (1800 mm) in depth is recommended.

802.4 Advisory. The maximum allowed car platform size for vertical lifts as per *ASME A18.1-1999* Section 2.6.5, is 18 ft^2 (1.67m2). This limits the various platform configurations for the variable height space. A side entry with a 60 inch length, limits the width to 42 inches, in order not to exceed the square foot limitation. Maneuvering onto this size platform requires a minimum 48 inch side.



(a)
Front or Rear Access

802.5 Approach. The inclusive space location should adjoin a route complying with Section 402. The route should not overlap the space location. The inclusive space may be approached from the rear, front or side. Recommended approach is from the rear. Side approaches are discouraged due to the limited maneuvering clearances. Route should connect the seating areas with the stage, arena, or stadium floor, dressing, locker rooms and all other applicable areas that are available to the general public.

802.5 Advisory. Compliance with Section 402 may appear excessive, especially for a small assembly area. Again the ultimate fall back position is the minimum code requirement as per *ANSI A117.1-2003* Section 802.3 and 802.4. A compromise position may be somewhere in between depending on the size and type of space - a landmark Broadway theatre with restricted space will be treated differently than a new baseball stadium. Some facilities can only accommodate a minimum code 36 inch wide primary route with the associated turning and passing space requirements as per *ANSI A117.1-2003*, Section 403. This should be limited to existing facilities that cannot meet the larger requirements.

802.5.1 Overlap. Inclusive space locations should not overlap the required width of an aisle.

802.6 Inclusive Spaces. Inclusive spaces are comprised of adjustable height inclusive space and stationary inclusive spaces and should comply with

Section 802.6. At least two means of egress should be provided. At least two means of egress should be provided.

802.6.1 Adjustable Height Inclusive Space. Adjustable height inclusive space locations and components should comply with Section 802.6. This inclusive space is comprised of a vertical platform lift that should comply with Section 410. Lines of sight should, at a minimum, comply with Section 802.9. The platform may have only one entrance/exit since the occupant enters and exits at grade.

802.6.1 Advisory. An adjustable height space allows the spectator to raise or lower themself for changing audience positions, from seated to standing, and to address the varying heights of people in front of the inclusive space. It should provide unobstructed sight lines since the adjustable height will permit the occupant to compensate for most obstructions. Where existing physical conditions cannot or are difficult to modify, an adjustable inclusive space may be the only viable solution. Obstruction of the sight lines of spectators behind the unit is a concern. In some scenarios, proper etiquette must be practiced. Adjustable height allows one to rise and lower with the audience positions. One should be polite and not raise the unit simply to have the best seat in the house. Placement of these units should be well thought out to reduce or eliminate these conflicts.

802.6.1.1 Portable Adjustable Height Units. An adjustable height inclusive unit may be portable. Provide an adaptable floor recess with a removable in-fill panel that provides a surface flush with the surrounding floor surfaces. Portable platform unit when inserted into the inclusive space location should comply with Section 802.6

802.6.1.1 Advisory. The advantage of portability units is that a smaller number of units may be necessary since they can be plugged in where and when needed.

802.6.1.2 Integration. Inclusive space locations should be an integral part of any seating areas. Venues should not prevent the person from enjoying the experience with a friend or relationship especially for those people that use mobility devices. These people should not be isolated, located in odd or second rate locations, separated out or placed in positions that call attention to themselves or make them feel slighted, but should be provided with the same level of respect, views, experience and price choices as everyone else.

802.6.1.3 Height. Height should be adjustable via a platform lift with a range from floor level to minimum above the floor, as per table 802.9.2.2. Platform lift bases should be enclosed on all sides.

802.6.1.3 Advisory. The use of an adjustable platform will provide unlimited height adjustments within the range of seated viewing positions. It takes into account variables such as obstruction of a large person or spectators standing at an event. Base enclosure on all side can be accomplished with an accordion type material or other means that prevents foot or other entrapment and prevents objects from entering or damaging the lift mechanism.

802.6.1.3.1 Base Enclosure. Platform lift bases should be enclosed on all sides to prevent body or object entrapment. Enclosure may be panels or bellows type (e.g., telescoping or hinged slats) or enclosed on all side (e.g., witness stand in Section 807.9). Side deflection should be a maximum of 3 inches (75 mm) and should not conflict with mechanism.

802.6.1.4 Controls. Hand and foot controls should be provided, complying with Section 802.6.1.4 for independent operation.

802.6.1.4.1 Hand Controls. Hand controls may be lever type and comply with Section 308 and Section 309.

802.6.1.4.2 Foot controls. Foot controls should comply with Section 306.2. They should be movable with a flexible cable or with a mechanism that will allow the controllers to be holstered, stored or temporarily swung out of the way to avoid potential obstructions entering or leaving the space.

802.6.1.4.3. Companion Seat Controls. Height controls may also be operable from the companion seat.

802.6.1.5 Speed. The rated lift speed should be 30ft/min (0.15 m/s) complying with standard listed in Section 105.2.6

802.6.1.5 Advisory. The maximum operational speed of a platform lift as per *A18.1-1999* is sufficient for the occupant to rise and lower the unit with the audience. A 3 ft. rise at 2 seconds per foot requires 6 seconds. This is fast enough to keep pace with spectators repositioning and slow enough to maintain safety.

802.6.1.6 Platform Enclosure. Platform enclosure may consist of glass, railing or combination. It is recommended to use a glass enclosure to avoid sight obstructions caused by the railing. Height should be 42 inches (1070 mm). Consider lower heights that do not conflict with eye levels complying with Section 310.2 and 310.5.

802.6.1.6 Advisory. The 42-inch enclosure height is dictated by the platform lift code, *ASME/ANSI A18.1*. A lower enclosure such as 30 inches would reduce sight line obstructions for most users except perhaps children, but this will conflict with the code. Other safety devices could be incorporated into the platform/railing design to reduce the rail height requirements during use (e.g., chair locking devices, harness, belts or other restraining system) similar to an amusement park ride. A 36-inch high enclosure may be reasonable compromise similar to courtroom witness stands. Glass enclosures may need to be angled or coated to reduce reflection and glare. Based on the *2008 NYC Building Code*, Section 1024.14.2 Sightline-constrained guard heights, under some circumstances the guard may be a minimum height of 24 inches (610 mm). This is more appropriate because it could reduce the sightline obstruction problem. Since the lift will not rise any significant height and the occupant will not unload at the raised position, there is adequate justification for allowing the lower guard. The least intrusive configuration would eliminate sight line obstruction problems and intrusiveness of the unit by using only edge protection, but this may only be viable for very limited applications (e.g. private box) due to safety. A 4-inch (100 mm) edge height is a consideration for limited applications, but may require redundant safety equipment.

802.6.1.7 Portable Transfer Seat. Provide an easy installation transfer seat to enable the inclusive space locations to be used for transfer seating.

802.6.1.8 Assistive Listening Systems. Assistive listening systems should comply with Section 706 and a receiver jack should be integrated with the seating.

802.6.1.9 Monitor. Provide an adjustable monitor for closed captioning and other uses. It should also be tied into CCTV or audio/visual monitoring of an event. Monitor should contain multiple functions including image enlargement.

802.6.1.10 Electric Outlet. Provide electric outlet for each inclusive seating location to provide power for the various types of equipment that the occupant may require, including battery recharging.

802.6.1.11 Physical and Wireless Computer Connection. Provide wireless and hard-wired jack for computer connection.

802.6.1.12 Alarm. Provide a silent emergency alarm that will trigger an alert at the management/security office, or other designated location that will assure a prompt response.

802.6.1.13 Task Lighting. Provide task lighting with shielded light source.

802.6.1.14 Work Surface. Provide a portable or folding work surface complying with Section 902.4

802.6.2 Stationary Inclusive Space. Stationary Inclusive space locations should be an integral part of any seating areas and should comply with Section 802.8 Lines of sight should comply with Section 802.9.

802.6.2.1 Integration. Inclusive space locations should be an integral part of any seating area.

802.6.2.2 Portable Transfer Seat. Provide a removable transfer seat to unable the inclusive space locations to be used as transfer seating.

802.6.2.3 Assistive Listening Systems. Assistive listening systems should comply with Section 706 and a receiver jack should be integrated into the lift.

802.6.2 Advisory. These stationary spaces are not all designated code spaces. The legal minimum number of wheelchair spaces should be identified with the international symbol to avoid a legal conflict. The recommended number of inclusive spaces exceeds the required wheelchair spaces. These additional spaces are intended to be used by who needs or prefers them. NYC has allowed designated wheelchair spaces to be used by anyone if the space is not sold prior to the event (see *2008 NYC Building Code*, Section 1108.2.2).
Some occupants that require an inclusive space may not want or need the adjustable height feature in Section 802.6, especially if the lines of sight meet Section 802.9. Because an adjustable height inclusive space is comprised of a platform lift, an enclosure is required by code. The stationary inclusive space does not require this enclosure.
Also, providing both adjustable height and stationary spaces presents a choice that accommodates the users needs and preferences while addressing the physical limitations of the facility. The stationary inclusive space can be made adaptable to accept a portable adjustable height unit. This will require an adaptable floor recess with a removable in-fill panel that provides a surface flush with the surrounding floor surfaces. A portable platform unit inserted into the inclusive space location should comply with Section 802.6.

802.6.2.4 Monitor. Provide a monitor for closed captioning and other uses. It should also be tied into CCTV or audio/visual monitoring of an event. Monitor should contain multiple functions including image enlargement.

802.6.2.5 Electric Outlet. Provide electric outlet for each inclusive seating location to provide power for the various types of equipment that the occupant may require.

802.6.2.6 Physical and Wireless Computer Connection. Provide wireless and hard-wired jack for computer connection.

802.6.2.7 Alarm. Provide a silent emergency alarm complying with Section 707.2 that will trigger an alert at the management/security office, or other designated location that will assure a prompt response.

802.6.2.8 Task Lighting. Provide task lighting with shielded light source.

802.6.2.9 Work Surface. Provide a portable or flip up/down work surface complying with Section 902.

802.7 Companion Seat. A companion seat, complying with Section 802.7, should be provided beside each inclusive space.

802.7.1 Companion Seat Type. A companion seat should be comparable in size and quality to assure equivalent comfort to the seats within the seating area adjacent to the inclusive space location. Companion seats should be permitted to be moveable.

802.7.2 Companion Seat Alignment. In row seating, the companion seat should be located to provide shoulder alignment with the inclusive space occupant. The companion seat placement should be adjustable to accommodate the specific needs of the inclusive space occupant. The floor surface of the companion seat should be at the same elevation as the inclusive space floor surface.

802.7.3 Companion Seat Controls. Provide height controls for adjustable height inclusive space companion seats.

802.7.3 Advisory. One set of controls on a flexible line or wireless controls may permit operation from either the inclusive space or from the companion seat. This will eliminate redundant controls.

802.8 Standard Seating. Standard seating should provide proper support to prevent fatigue, should be ergonomically correct and adjustable where practical and should comply with Section 903.12. Adjustments may include height, back angle, lumbar support, firmness with folding or retractable arms. Amenities should be provided that are appropriate for the type of assembly space and the primary users. This may include physical and wireless computer connections, monitors located in the back of the seats immediately in front of the spectator, task lighting, flip up desks, cup holders, etc. If an assembly space an assembly space is to be used for a wide range of uses then it should be provided with the greatest range of amenities.

802.8 Advisory
1. In addition to inclusive locations, other locations may provide limited amenities to supplement the inclusive locations enhancing the entire facility. This may include designated seating with electronic devices or locations closer to exits for the elderly or children to expedite egress.
2. Standard seats should contain features that are common throughout or within designated sections. The seats may be considered similar to airplane seating containing a mini-environment that allows multiple functions including work, entertainment, eating and relaxing. Since assembly areas are often used in many ways, it makes sense to provide seating that accommodates multiple functions.

802.8.1 Designated Aisle Seats. Designated aisle seats should comply with Section 802.8.1.

802.8.1 Advisory. This is a variation of designated aisle seating. An aisle seat is not inclusive but enhances the assembly area by providing another option. A true transfer seat requires the space for a person in a wheelchair to park and transfer with ease. But the aisle seats accommodate many other people, such as the elderly or those that have diminished mobility and require the convenience that a transfer seat provides.

802.8.1.1 Armrests. Where armrests are provided on seating in the immediate area of designated aisle seats, folding or retractable armrests should be provided on the aisle side of the designated aisle seat.

802.8.1.2 Identification. Each designated aisle seat should be identified graphically.

802.8.2 Communication Elements and Features. Assembly areas should provide communication elements and features complying with Chapter 7.

802.8.2.1 Signage. Signage should be provided throughout the assembly area that complies with Section 703 and Section 709. This includes visual tactile and Braille and remote infrared audible sign (RIAS) systems. Provide row and seat numbering that is clearly indicated by using large type in high contrast to the background. Maximize the use of pictograms.

802.8.2.1 Advisory. Signs located throughout the facility (especially at entrances) should identify the most efficient and least circuitous route to inclusive seating.

802.8.2.2 Assistive Listening Systems. Assistive listening systems should be provided throughout the assembly area that complies with Section 706.

802.8.2.3 Wayfinding. Wayfinding should be provided throughout the assembly area that complies with Section 714. Consider the use of an information/navigation reference point system complying with Section 708.7. Use of color and contrast complying with Section 709.12, floor strips, and other types of systems should make it as efficient as possible and with the least amount of confusion to locate one's seat. This may be include the use of visual and tactile signage, Braille, pictograms, audible signage, architectural elements, compass orientation, maps, floor plans, directional arrows, etc. Wayfinding should be initiated from the entrance and continue to the inclusive seating locations. Provide color coded levels.

802.8.3 Other General Assembly Area Amenities. Other general assembly area amenities may include large screen monitors, sound system, computer projectors, projection screens, etc, any equipment that will provide an equitable experience.

802.9 Lines of Sight. Where spectators are expected to remain seated for purposes of viewing events, spectators in inclusive space locations should be provided with lines of sight in accordance with Section 802.9.1. Where spectators in front of the inclusive viewing space locations will be expected to stand at their seats for purposes of viewing events, spectators in inclusive space locations should be provided with a line of sight in accordance with Section 802.9.2.

802.9.1 Line of Sight over Seated Spectators. Where spectators are expected to remain seated during events, spectators seated in inclusive space locations should be provided with lines of sight to the performance area or playing field comparable to that provided to spectators in closest proximity to the inclusive space location. Where seating provides lines of sight over

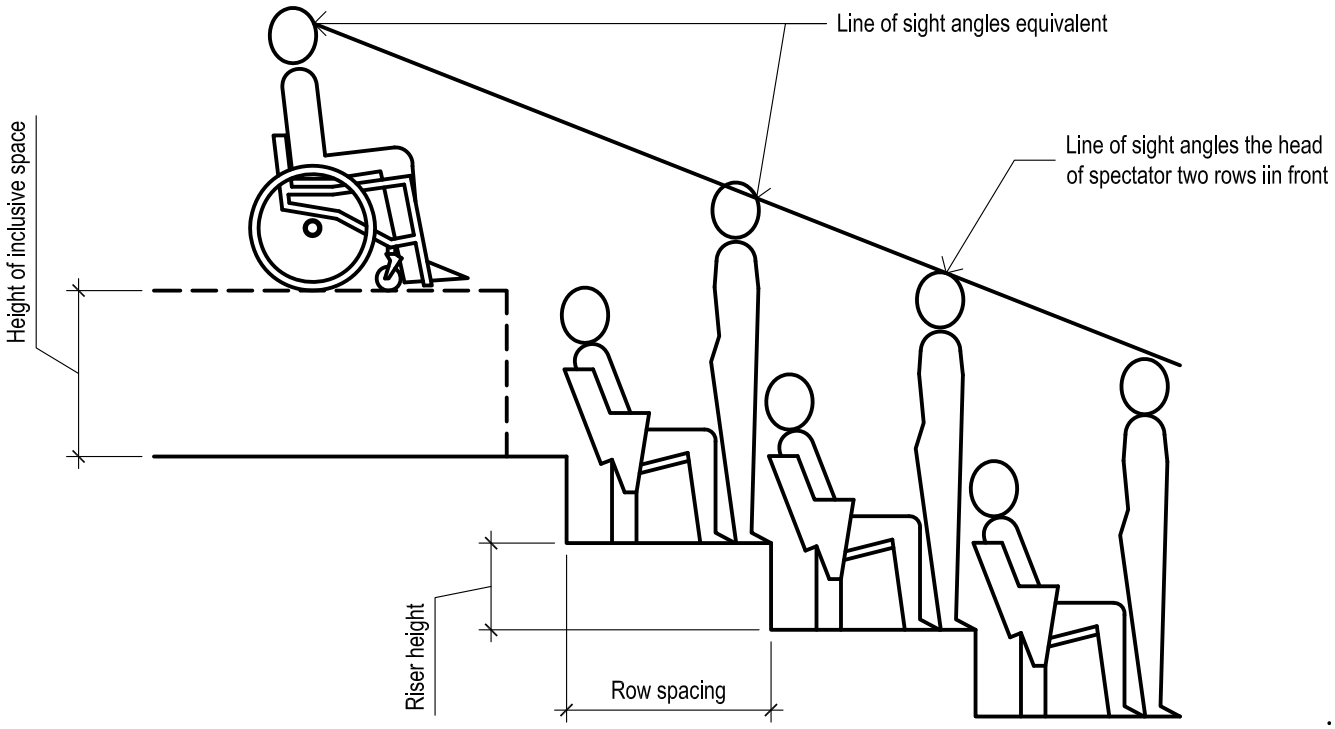


Fig. 802.9.1.1
Inclusive Space Elevation

Riser height	Minimum height of the inclusive space location based on row spacing[A]		
	Rows less than 33 inches (840 mm)[B]	Rows 33 inches (840 mm) to 44 inches (1120 mm)[B]	Rows over 44 inches (1120 mm)[B]
0 inch (0 mm)	16 inch (405 mm)	16 inch (405 mm)	16 inch (405 mm)
4 inch (102 mm)	22 inch (560 mm)	21 inch (535 mm)	21 inch (535 mm)
8 inch (205 mm)	31 inch (785 mm)	30 inch (760 mm)	28 inch (710 mm)
12 inch (305 mm)	40 inch (1015 mm)	37 inch (940 mm)	35 inch (890 mm)
16 inch (406 mm)	49 inch (1245 mm)	45 inch (1145 mm)	42 inch (1065 mm)
20 inch (510 mm)[C]	58 inch (1475 mm)	53 inch (1345 mm)	49 inch (1245 mm)
24 inch (610 mm)	N/A	61 inch (1550 mm)	56 inch (1420 mm)
28 inch (710 mm)[D]	N/A	69 inch (1750 mm)	63 inch (1600 mm)
32 inch (815 mm)	N/A	N/A	70 inch (1780 mm)
36 inch (915 mm) and higher	N/A	N/A	77 inch (1955 mm)

Table 802.9.2.2
Inclusive Space Location Elevation Over Standing Spectators

[A] The height of the inclusive space location is the vertical distance from the tread of the row of seats directly in front of the inclusive space location to the tread of the inclusive space location.
[B] The row spacing is the back-to-back horizontal distance between the rows of seats in front of the inclusive space location.
[C] Seating treads less than 33 inches (840 mm) in depth are not permitted with risers greater than 18 inches (455 mm) in height.
[D] Seating treads less than 44 inches (1120 mm) in depth are not permitted with risers greater than 27 inches (685 mm) in height.

NOTE: Table 802.8.9 is based on providing a spectator in a wheelchair a line of sight over the head of a spectator two rows in front of the inclusive space location using average anthropometrical data. The table is based on the following calculation: [(2X+34)(Y-2-.25)/X]+(20.2-Y) where Y is the riser height of the rows in front of the inclusive space location and X is the tread depth of the rows in front of the inclusive space location. The calculation is based on the front of the inclusive space location being located 12 inches (305 mm) from the back of the seating tread directly in front and the eye of the standing spectator being set back 8 inches (205 mm) from the riser.

heads, spectators in inclusive space locations should be afforded lines of sight complying with Section 802.9.1.1. Where inclusive space locations provide lines of sight over the shoulder and between heads, spectators in inclusive space locations should be afforded lines of sight complying with Section 802.9.1.2.

802.9.1.1 Lines of Sight Over Heads. Spectators seated in inclusive space locations should be afforded lines of sight over the heads of seated individuals in the first row front of the space location.

802.9.1.2 Lines of Sight Between Heads. Spectators seated in inclusive space locations should be afforded lines of sight over the shoulders and between the heads of seated individuals in the first row in front of the inclusive space location.

802.9.2 Lines of Sight over Standing Spectators. Inclusive space locations required to provide a line of sight over standing spectators should comply with Section 802.9.2.

802.9.2.1 Distance from Adjacent Seating. The front of the inclusive space location should be 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the back of the chair or bench in the front.

802.9.2.2 Elevation. The elevation of the tread on which an inclusive space location is located should comply with Table 802.9.2.2 for riser heights other than those provided, interpolations should be permitted.

802.10 Inclusive Space Dispersion. Inclusive spaces should be dispersed in accordance with Table 802.10. Inclusive space locations should be dispersed in accordance with Sections 802.10.1, 802.10.2, 802.10.3 In addition, in spaces utilized primarily for viewing motion picture projection, inclusive space locations should be dispersed in accordance with Section 802.10.4. Dispersion within a section that creates a subdivision does not result in the creation of another section that requires additional inclusive seating locations.

802.10 Advisory. Inclusive seating should be designed as an integral part of the seating plan so that people who require these accommodations are treated equally and are not isolated from family and friends.

Total seating in Assembly Areas	Recommended number of inclusive spaces
75 to 100	4
101 to 150	5
151 to 200	6
201 to 300	7
301 to 400	8
401 to 500	9
501 to 1000	2 percent of total
Over 1000	20 plus 1 for each 100 over 1000

Table 802.10
Inclusive Space Dispersion

802.10.1 Horizontal Dispersion. Inclusive space locations should be dispersed horizontally to provide a full range of viewing options. Two inclusive spaces should be permitted to be located side-by-side.

802.10.2 Dispersion for Variety of Distances from the Event. Inclusive space locations should be dispersed at a variety of distances from the event to provide viewing options. Locations should be separated by a minimum of five intervening rows. Dispersion within a section that creates a subdivision does not result in the creation of another section that requires additional inclusive seating locations.

802.10.3 Dispersion by Type. Where there are seating areas, each having distinct services or amenities, inclusive space locations should be provided within each seating area.

802.10.3.1 Dispersion by Cost. Where there are seating areas, each having a distinct cost inclusive space location should be provided within each seating area.

802.10.3.2 Secondary Protocol. Each venue should provide a secondary protocol that requires the venue to identify other back-up locations or sections or other types of accommodations that can be used if the designated seating is sold out.

802.10.4 Spaces Utilized Primarily for Viewing Motion Picture Projections. In spaces utilized primarily for viewing motion picture projections, inclusive space locations should comply with Section 802.10.4

802.10.4.1 Spaces with Seating on Risers. Where tiered seating is provided, inclusive space locations should be integrated into the tiered seating area.

802.10.4.2 Distance from the Screen. Inclusive space locations should be located within the rear 60 percent of seating.

802.10.4.2 Advisory. It is recommended to locate the inclusive seating within the rear 60% of the theatre to avoid uncomfortable and distorted viewing due to close proximity of the screen. Viewing angle, neck and head positions that compensate for the angle of view, may not be physically possible for some and extremely uncomfortable for others.

803 Dressing, Fitting, and Locker Rooms

803.1 General. Accessible dressing, fitting, and locker rooms should comply with Section 803. In addition, comply with the applicable recommendations in the following sections: 301-310, 403, 404, 405, 505, 506, 602, 609, 702, 703, 704, 706, 708, 709, 710, 902, 903 and 906.

803.2 Turning Space. A turning space complying with Section 304 should be provided within the room.

803.3 Door Swing. Doors should not swing into the room unless a clear floor space complying with Section 305.3 is provided within the room, beyond the arc of the door swing.

803.4 Benches. A bench complying with Section 903 should be provided within the room.

803.4.1 Benches for Children, Ages 6 to 12. Where provided, benches for children ages 6 to 12 should comply with Section 903.8.

803.4.2 Benches for Children, Ages 5 and Younger. Where provided, benches for children ages 5 and younger should comply with Section 903.9.

803.5 Coat Hooks and Shelves. Coat hooks provided within the room should accommodate a forward reach or side reach complying with Section 308. Where provided, a shelf should be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor. Shelves for children should be 20 inches (510 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor.

803.6 Lockers. Where lockers are provided, at least 5 percent, but not less than one should have a clear floor space complying with Section 305 that allows either a forward or parallel approach. Latches and locks for lockers should be operable with one hand and without requiring tight grasping, pinching or twisting complying with Section 309. Provide lockers for children as necessary complying with Section 308.4. Locker rooms should be strategically located to be within a short distance from all recreational facilities.

804 Kitchens and Kitchenettes

804.1 General. Accessible kitchens and kitchenettes should comply with Section 804 and supplemented with Section 1012. In addition, comply with the applicable recommendations in the following sections: 301-310, 403, 404, 405, 505, 506, 602, 609, 702, 703, 704, 706, 708, 709, 710, 902, 903, 906 and 1012.

804.1 Advisory. This kitchen section applies to all kitchens except for dwelling units which are covered under Section 1012. Kitchens should be designed to be usable by anyone since it may not be possible to anticipate who will use the facility at any given time. Kitchens in dwelling units should address the needs of current occupants and thus, should be adaptable, allowing for modifications to accommodate specific needs and preferences.

804.2 Clearance. Where a pass-through kitchen is provided, clearances should comply with Section 804.2.1. Where a U-shaped kitchen is provided, clearances should comply with Section 804.2.2**.**

804.2 Advisory. 72 inches is generally recommended and is based on Section 305 turning space. This provides a usable environment with adequate maneuvering clearances for all. But this may be considered excessive for some facilities, especially for existing buildings. Reasonable alternatives are provided under Sections 804.2.1 and 804.2.2 that provide adequate maneuvering and enough space for most anticipated usage.

804.2.1 Pass-through Kitchens. In pass-through kitchens where counters, appliances, or cabinets are on two opposing sides, or where counters, appliances or cabinets are opposite a parallel wall, clearance between opposing base cabinets, counter tops, appliances or walls within kitchen work area should be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum. Pass-through kitchens should have two entries.

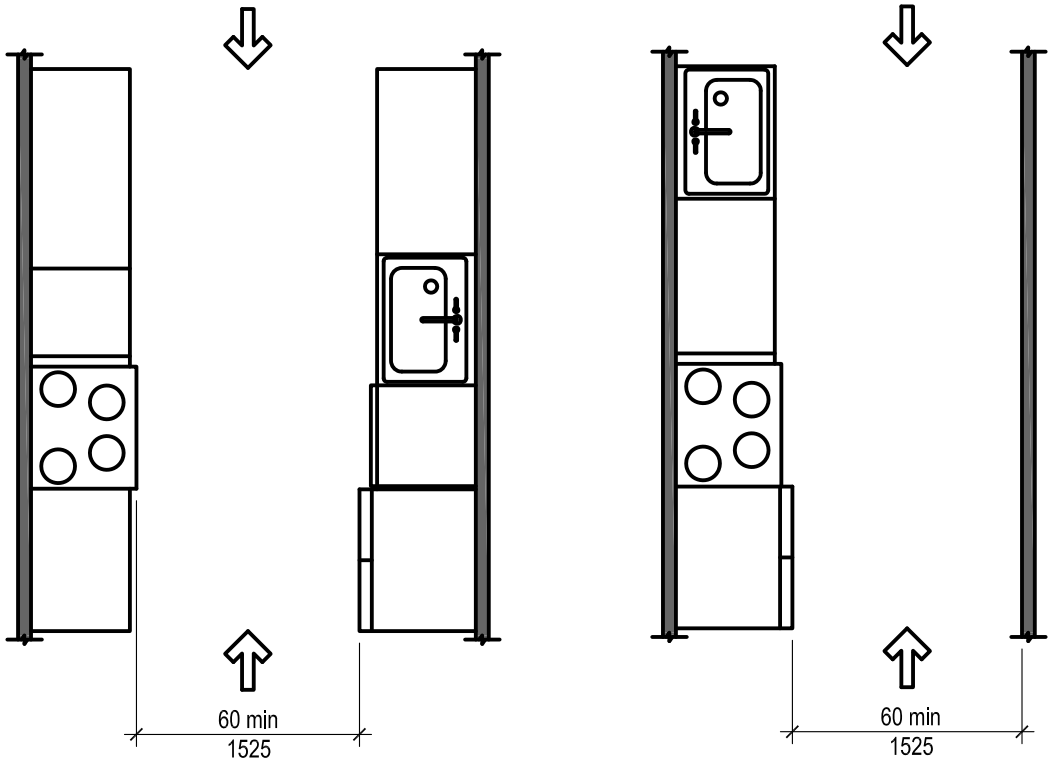


Fig. 804.2.1
Pass-through Kitchen Clearance

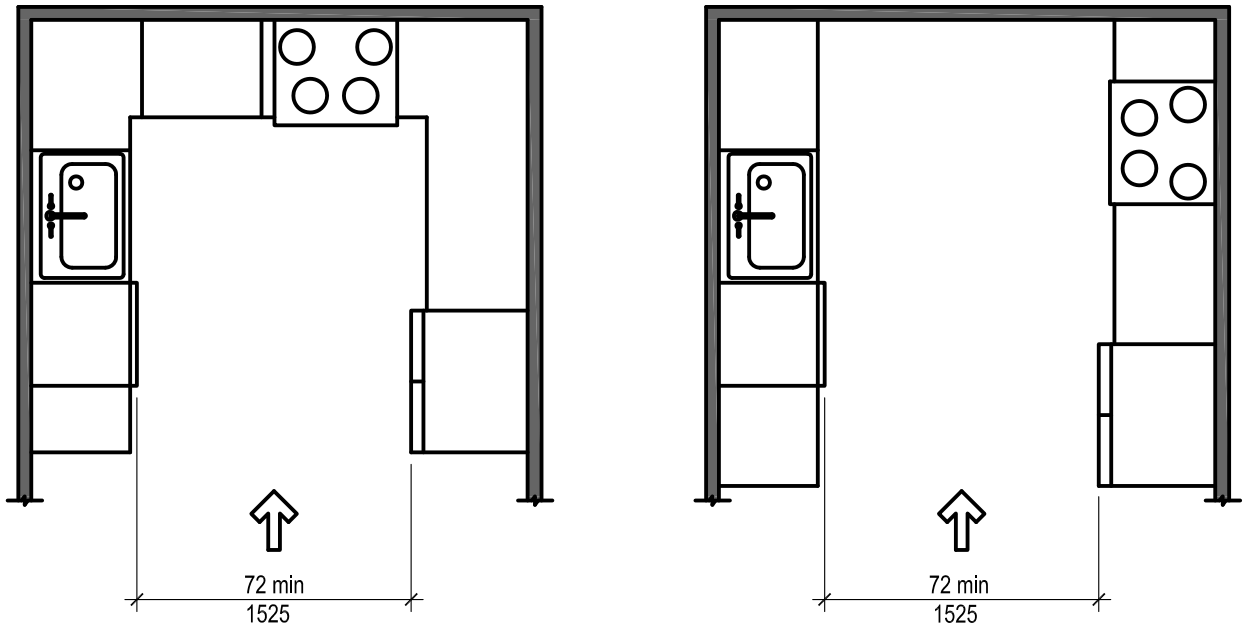


Fig. 804.2.2
U-Shaped Kitchen Clearance

804.2.2 U-Shaped Areas. In kitchens enclosed on three contiguous sides, clearances between all opposing base cabinets, counter tops, appliances, or walls within kitchen work areas should be 72 inches (1830 mm).

804.3 Work Surface. Work surfaces should comply with Section 902 and supplemented with Section 1012.3. Pull-out work surfaces complying with Section 1012.3.4 are recommended to increase usability

804.3.1 Range or Cooktop Work Surface. Provide a work surface adjacent to the range or cook top.

804.3.1 Advisory. The work surface is 36 inches wide, based on Section 902 that cross-references 305. The work surface should be provided with an under counter clear floor space. Pull-out work surfaces can be used where under counter space is not viable. See Section 1012.3.4

804.3.2 Supplemental Work Surfaces. Provide supplemental work surfaces that will increase the usability of the kitchen. Surfaces may be part of the counter, an island, pull-out, or mobile work surfaces. Pull-out work surfaces should be 36 inches (915 mm) wide and comply with Section 1012.3.4. Mobile work surfaces should be 36 inches (915 mm) wide and comply with Section 1012.3.

804.3.2 Advisory. It is strongly recommended to provide more than one work location and multiple heights. The work surface adjacent to the stove is necessary for cooking and placing hot items. Provide other surfaces for food prep, temporary placement of ingredients, dishes, plating, etc.

804.4 Sinks. Sinks should comply with Section 606 and Section 1012.4. Under sink cabinetry should not be provided or if necessary, due to limited storage, it should be mobile.

804.4.1 Adjustable Height Sinks. Automatic adjustable height sinks are recommended and should comply with Section 1012.4.3.

804.4.1 Advisory. Other than dwelling units, it may be impossible to know who will use the sink. Thus, an adjustable height sink makes sense. Cabinetry under sinks is not recommended because this will limit use. If storage is extremely limited, a portable unit is a consideration, but temporary placement may create a circulation problem.

804.5 Storage. At least 50 percent of shelf space in cabinets should comply with Section 905 and Section 1012.5. Storage should be a variable composition of general, compartmentalized and dedicated spaces that accommodates user needs and preferences. Consider push/open, automatic operation and other options to increase usability, such as, lower cabinetry comprising drawers as per 1012.5.1.

804.6 Appliances. Where provided, kitchen appliances should comply with Section 804.6 and Section 1012.6.

804.6.1 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305 should be provided at each kitchen appliance. Clear floor spaces are permitted to overlap.

804.6.2 Operable Parts. All appliance controls should comply with Section 309 and especially 309.4. Provide multisensory alarms complying with Section 309.9. Each appliance operation should not conflict with other appliance operations when used concurrently.

804.6.3 Dishwasher. A clear floor space, positioned adjacent to the dishwasher door, should be provided. The dishwasher door in the open position should not obstruct the clear floor space for the dishwasher or an adjacent sink. Dishwasher height should comply with Section 1012.6.3.1.

804.6.3 Advisory. Placement of the dishwasher adjacent to the sink allows the user to utilize the clear floor space under the sink to allow easy transfer of dishes from the sink and to provide deeper access to the dishwasher.

804.6.4 Range or Cooktop. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the space for a range or cook top, should be provided. Range or cook top should comply with Section 1012.6.4. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 should be provided. The underside of the range or cook top should be insulated or otherwise configured to prevent burns, abrasions, or electrical shock. The location of controls should not require reaching across burners. Controls and alarms should comply with Section 309. Ventilation and light should comply with Section 804.6.5.5.

804.6.4.1 Exhaust Hood. Provide an exhaust hood with light and switches that are within reach ranges complying with 308 & 1012.6.4.1.

804.6.4.1 Advisory. Hood light(s) should be used to indicate that the range is in use, as a safety precaution to remind the user that the appliance is still on. Timers should always be used for cooking to indicate completion and to automatically turn off the appliance or to remind the user to turn the unit off if it is not automatic.

804.6.5 Oven. Ovens should comply with Section 804.6.5. and Section 1012.6.5.

804.6.5.1 Side-Hinged Door Ovens. Side-hinged door ovens should have a work surface complying with Section 804.3 and Section 1012.6.5.1. positioned adjacent to the latch side of the oven door.

804.6.5.2 Bottom-Hinged Door Ovens. Bottom-hinged door ovens should have a work surface complying with Section 804.3 and Section 1012.6.5.2, positioned adjacent to one side of the door.

804.6.5.3 Microwave Oven. Microwave oven should comply with Section 1012.6.6

804.6.5.4 Controls. Ovens should have controls on front panels and alarms complying with Section 309.

804.6.5.5 Mechanical Ventilation. Mechanical ventilation should comply with Section 1012.7.1. If a conflict arises between this section and applicable code requirements, the code requirements must be met. Provide an exhaust hood with a light and switches that are within reach ranges complying with Section 308.

804.6.6 Refrigerator/Freezer. Combination refrigerators and freezers should comply with Section 1012.6.7 have at least 50 percent of the freezer compartment shelves, including the bottom of the freezer, 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor when the shelves are installed at the maximum heights possible in the compartment. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel approach to the space dedicated to a refrigerator/freezer, should be provided. The centerline of the clear floor space should be offset 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the centerline of the dedicated space.

804.6.6.1 Walk-in Refrigerator/Freezer. Walk in refrigerator/freezers should be provided with a clear floor space complying with Section 305. Provide an entrapment alarm. Provide at least 50 percent of the shelves, 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor.

805 Transportation Facilities

805.1 General. Transportation facilities should comply with Section 805. In addition, comply with the applicable recommendations in the following sections: 301-310, 403, 404, 405, 505, 506, 602, 609, 702, 703, 704, 706, 708, 709, 710, 902, 903 and 906.

805.2 Bus Boarding and Alighting Areas. Bus boarding and alighting areas should comply with Section 805.2.

805.2.1 Surface. Bus stop boarding and alighting areas should have a firm, stable surface and should comply with Section 302 and 303.

805.2.2 Dimensions. Bus stop boarding and alighting areas should have a 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum clear length, measured perpendicular to the curb or vehicle roadway edge, and a 72 inches (1830 mm) minimum clear width, measured parallel to the vehicle roadway.

805.2.3 Slope. The slope of the bus stop boarding and alighting area parallel to the vehicle roadway should be the same as the roadway, to the maximum extent practicable. The slope of the bus stop boarding and alighting area perpendicular to the vehicle roadway should be 1:48.

805.2.4 Connection. Bus stop boarding and alighting areas should be connected to streets, sidewalks, or pedestrian paths by an accessible route complying with Section 402.

805.3 Bus Shelters. Bus shelters[7] should comply with Section 402.6 and should provide a minimum clear floor space complying with Section 305 entirely within the shelter. Bus shelters should be connected by an accessible route complying with Section 402.5 to a boarding and alighting area complying with Section 805.2. Consider amenities complying with Section 402.6.6 (e.g.,MetroCard vending machine).

7 The NYC Department of Transportation bus shelter was designed by Grimshaw Architects. Units are manufactured, installed and maintained by Cermusa

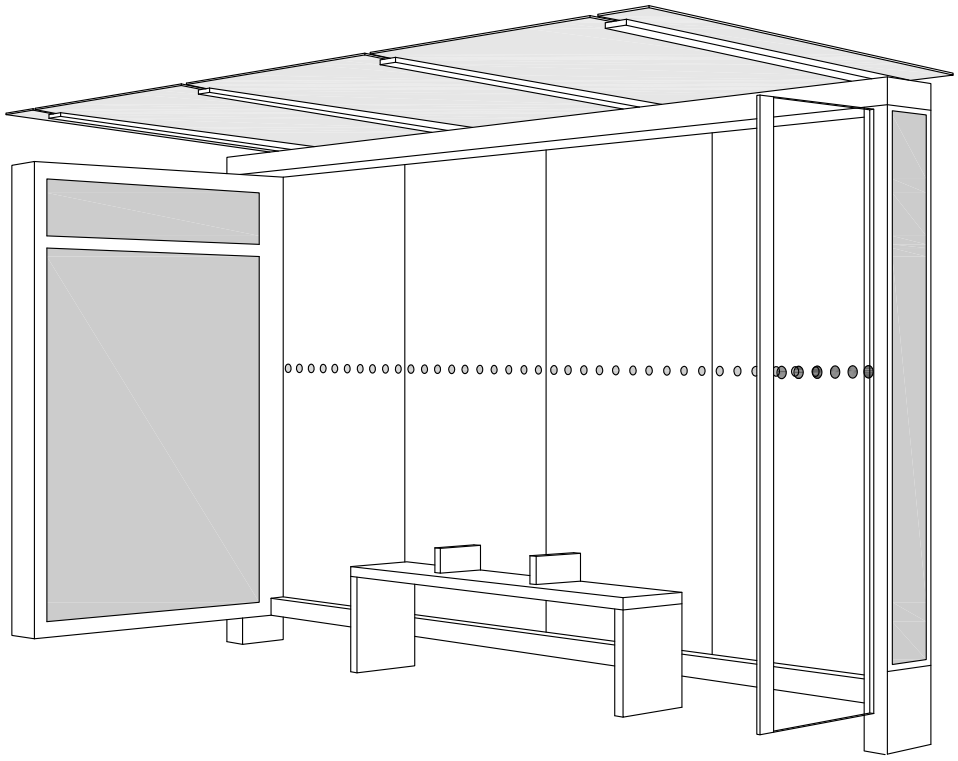


Fig. 805.3
NYC Bus Shelter (DOT)

805.4 Signage. Signage should comply with Chapter 7 as applicable and including Section 702 Emergency Assistance Alarm; 703 Signs; Section 706 Assistive Listening Systems, Section 709 Signage System, Section 710 Public Information Displays; Section 711 Directories; 713 Emergency Signage System, 714 Wayfinding.

805.5 Rail Platforms. Rail platforms should comply with Section 805.5.

805.5.1 Slope. Rail platforms should not exceed a slope of 1:48 in all directions.

EXCEPTION: Where platforms serve vehicles operating on existing track or track lay in existing roadway, the slope of the platform parallel to the track should be permitted to be equal to the slope (grade) of the roadway or existing track.

805.5.2 Detectable Warnings. Platform boarding edges not protected by platform screens or guards should have a detectable warning complying with Section 705, 24 inches (610 mm) in width, along the full length of the public use area of the platform.

805.6 Signage. Signage should comply with Chapter 7 as applicable and including Section 702 Emergency Assistance Alarm; Section 703 Signs; Section 709 Signage System, Section 710 Public Information Displays; Section 711 Directories; Section 713 Emergency Signage System, and Section 714 Wayfinding.

805.6.1 Subway Wayfinding. Identify at station entrances: train lines, directional information to station booth and train access. On the top and bottom landing of the station entry stairways, on the left and right walls, comply with Section 703.2 for visual, Section 703.3 for tactile and Section 703.4 for Braille. Provide pictograms complying with Section 703.5. Provide a floor installed graphic compass or north arrow with street names and other landmark or reference points to help orient travels as they leave the subway. Compass should be a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter and provided at entrances, stair landings and reference points within subway stations.

805.7 Public Address Systems. Where Public address systems convey audible information to the public, the same or equivalent information should be provided in a visual format.

805.8 Clocks. Clocks should be provided for use by the public, the clock face should be uncluttered so that its elements are clearly visible. Hands, numerals and digits should contrast with the background either light-on-dark or dark-on-light. Where clocks are installed overhead, numerals and digits should be visual characters complying with Section 703.2.

805.9 Escalators. Escalators are not recommended since they do not accommodate mobility devices and are difficult or impossible for some people with diminished mobility or dexterity to use. In existing facilities that contain escalators provide an elevator in close proximity, complying with Section 407 or moving walkways complying with Section 403.11.

805.10 Track Crossings. Circulation paths serving boarding platforms should not cross tracks.

806 Holding Cells and Housing Cells

806.1 General. Holding cells and housing cells should comply with Section 806.In addition, applicable recommendations in the following sections apply: 301-310, 403, 404, 405, 505, 506, 602, 609, 702, 703, 704, 706, 708, 709, 710, 902, 903 and 906. See also 807.1 Advisory regarding Courthouse Access Advisory Committee report.

806.2 Features for People Using Mobility Devices. Cells required to have features for people using mobility devices should comply with Section 806.2.

806.2.1 Turning Space. Turning space complying with Section 304 should be provided within the cell. Clear floor spaces and turning space are permitted to overlap.

806.2.2 Benches. Where benches are provided, at least one bench should comply with Section 903.

806.2.3 Beds. Where beds are provided, clear floor space complying with Section 305 should be provided on at least one side of the bed. The clear floor space should be positioned for parallel approach to the side of the bed.

806.2.4 Toilet and Bathing Facilities. Toilet facilities or bathing facilities provided as part of a cell should comply with Section 603.

806.3 Communication Features. Cells required to have communication features should comply with Section 806.3.

806.3.1 Alarms. Where audible emergency alarm systems are provided to serve the occupants of cells, visual alarms complying with Section 702 should be provided.

806.3.2 Telephones. Telephones within cells should have volume controls complying with Section 704.3. Provide TTY's as per NYCBC Section E106.4.8. for secured areas.

807 Courtrooms

807.1 General. Courtrooms should comply with Section 807. In addition, comply with the applicable recommendations in the following sections: 301-310, 403, 404, 405, 505, 506, 602, 609, 702, 703, 704, 706, 708, 709, 710, 902, 903 and 906.

807.1 Advisory. This section enhances recommendations contained in the Courthouse Access Advisory Committee's *Justice for All: Designing Accessible Courthouses*. http://www.access-board.gov/caac/report.htm. In addition to the identified specific function areas, there are typical building elements that should comply with the applicable sections in the *IDG* (e.g. exterior route, entrances and doors, parking, site arrival, interior route, protruding objects, signage and egress). See 800 Introduction.

807.2 Turning Space. Where provided, each area that is raised or depressed and accessed by ramps or platform lifts should be provided with an unobstructed turning space complying with Section 304.

807.3 Clear Floor Space. Within the defined area of each jury box and witness stand, a clear floor space complying with Section 305 should be provided.

807.4 Waiting Areas. Waiting areas should comply with Section 808

807.5 Clerk's Office. Provide for the various functions, a turning space complying with 304, assistive listening systems complying with Section 706, work surface complying with Section 902 and service counters complying with Section 904.

807.6 Central Holding. Holding cells should comply with Section 806.

807.7 Interview Rooms. Provide a turning space complying with 304, assistive listening systems complying with Section 706, work surface complying with Section 902 and service counters complying with Section 904.

807.8 Jury Assembly Area. Provide signage complying with Section 709, operable parts complying with Section 309, assistive listening systems complying with Section 706, assembly area seating complying with Section 802 work surfaces complying with Section 902, counters complying with Section 904.

807.9 Conference Rooms. Provide a turning space complying with Section 304, room circulation complying with Section 403.5.3, infrared or induction loop assistive listening system to maintain privacy complying with Section 706, applicable portions of meeting rooms complying with Section 812, work surfaces complying with Section 902.

807.10 Courtroom Entry. Courtroom entry should comply with Section 404.

807.11 Main Aisle. Main aisle should be 72 inches minimum complying with Section 403.5.1.

807.12 Routes. Routes should comply with Section 402.

807.13 Spectator Area. Provide a 48 inch (1220 mm) access aisle, assembly seating complying with Section 802, turning spaces complying with Section 305, seating complying with Section 903. The number of inclusive locations should comply with 802.10

807.14 Rail. The courtroom rail should provide an opening complying with Section 404.

807.15 Jury Box. Provide a stationary inclusive space integrated into the seating plan complying with Section 802.8 and room circulation complying with Section 403.5.3.

807.15 Advisory. Height of the jury box in NYC is dictated by Part 34.VII of the *Rules of the Chief Judge, State of New York*.

807.16 Witness Stand. Provide an adjustable height inclusive location integrated with the millwork and complying with Section 802.6.1. Witness position should be raised as per regulatory requirements. Floor surface of stand should be capable of being lowered to surrounding floor level for entry, then raised to designated height. Stand should be front or side entry. Provide a work surface complying with Section 902. Provide task lighting. Provide removable seating complying with Section 903.10.

807.16 Advisory. Height of the witness stand in NYC is dictated by Part 34.VII of the *Rules of the Chief Judge, State of New York.* Front and side entry is recommended. Rear entry may not be possible due to courtroom configuration. The lift requires a separate mechanical equipment space that is typically located under the adjacent judge's bench. Provide side enclosure for the space under the lift when in a raised position.

807.17 Judges Bench. Judge's bench should be provided with a ramp complying with Section 405 or platform lift integrated with the millwork complying with Section 410 and stairs complying with Section 504. Height as per the local regulatory requirements. Provide a stationary inclusive space complying with Section 802.8. Provide work surfaces complying with Section 902. Provide task lighting. Provide seating complying with Section 903.10. Consider an adjustable height inclusive space complying with 802.6.1 if other options are not feasible.

807.17 Advisory. Height of the judges bench in NYC is dictated by Part 34.VII of the *Rules of the Chief Judge, State of New York.* Access should not be through another room.

807.18 Clerk's and Bailiff's Station. Provide a clear floor space complying with Section 305, room circulation complying with Section 403.5.3, and work surface complying with Section 902. Consider an adjustable height inclusive space complying with 802.6.1 if other options are not feasible.

807.19 Court Reporter. Provide a clear floor space complying with Section 305, room circulation complying with Section 403.5.3, and work surface complying with Section 902.Consider an adjustable height inclusive space complying with 802.6.1 if other options are not feasible.

807.20 Judges Chambers. Provide a turning space complying with Section 304, room circulation complying with Section 403.5.3 and work surfaces complying with Section 902, kitchen and kitchenettes complying with Section 804, a single occupant toilet room or bathroom complying with Section 603.1.1 or 603.1.2.

807.21 Jury Deliberation Rooms. Provide a turning space complying with Section 304, room circulation complying with Section 403.5.3 and work surfaces complying with Section 902, kitchen and kitchenettes complying with Section 804, a single occupant toilet room complying with Section 603.1.1, an infrared or induction loop assistive listening system to maintain privacy complying with Section 706, and applicable portions of meeting rooms complying with Section 812.

807.22 Holding Cells. Holding Cells should comply with Section 806.

807.23 Communications. Provide assistive listening system complying with Section 706. Signage complying with Section 703. Remote infrared audible sign systems complying with section 703.7.3, telephones complying with Section 704, Two-way communications with Section 708, Signage system complying with Section 709, Public information display types complying with Section 710, directories complying with Section 711, room identification systems complying with Section 712, Emergency signage systems complying with Section 713.

807.24 Wayfinding. Wayfinding should comply with Section 714

808 Waiting Areas

808.1 General. Waiting areas should comply with Section 808. In addition, comply with the applicable recommendations in the following sections: 301-310, 403, 404, 405, 505, 506, 602, 609, 702, 703, 704, 706, 708, 709, 710, 902, 903 and 906. Many different types of buildings contain waiting areas such as institutional and business but they are a common element throughout the various classifications. They may be open or enclosed areas and should be accommodating and comfortable to all.

808.2 Location. The waiting area should be served by an inclusive route. Locate waiting areas immediately adjacent to the space(s) that it is serving or within close proximity (e.g. an office suite). The route should be adjacent and should not intersect the waiting area (e.g. a waiting space in an airport). A waiting area should not conflict with other areas, should be kept away from congested areas an not subject to peak occupancy loads such as adjacent to elevators or entrances.

808.3 Seating. Provide seating areas for adults and children complying with Section 903.

808.3.1 Clear Floor Space. Provide at least one clear floor space complying with Section 305.

808.4 Queuing. Provide a queuing system for tracking the sequence of visitors and to provide approximate waiting period for each visitor to reduce anxiety and to provide time frames if one needs to leave the waiting area for any period of time. Cuing should be provided in a variety of formats depending upon the type of facility and includes: monitors, digital number and letter displays, lights, audio announcing names or a sound for the next visitor, and other forms such as ticket dispensers that should be coordinated with the other systems. An induction loop and use of hearing aid T-coil for queuing is very helpful (see 706 Advisory).

808.5 Lighting. Lighting levels may vary depending upon the type of facility. Institutional facilities typically require paperwork and reading during a waiting period and should contain adequate lighting levels for task work. Other types of facilities such as a restaurant may need a lower lighting level that is appropriate for the setting.

808.6 Amenities. Amenities should be within, immediately adjacent or in close proximity to the waiting area depending upon the type of facility. This includes restrooms, telephones, drinking fountain or water cooler. Monitors with closed captioning and reading materials should always be provided.

808.7 Children's Accommodations. Depending upon the types of facility, seating for children should be provided complying with Section 903. An adjacent and separate play area may be appropriate for children with direct lines of sight. Monitors should be placed at heights for children's viewing complying with Section 310.3 and Section 310.4.

809 Service Areas.

809.1 General. Service areas should comply with Section 809. In addition, comply with the applicable recommendations in the following sections: 301-310, 403, 404, 405, 505, 506, 602, 609, 702, 703, 704, 706, 708, 709, 710, 902, 903 and 906. Many different

types of buildings contain service areas such as institutional and mercantile but they are a common element throughout the various classification. They should provide accommodating equitable interaction between the visitor and those providing the service.

809.2 Location. Locate service areas adjacent to and not intersected by an inclusive route and within close proximity of the entrance(s). A service area should not conflict with other areas, should be kept away from congested areas and not subject to peak occupancy loads such as adjacent to elevators.

809.3 Clear Floor Space. Provide a clear floor space at the service desk complying with Section 305, for forward and parallel approach. Knee and toe clearance should be provided.

809.3.1 Circulation. Provide sufficient circulation space to allow configuration of cuing lines and groupings to allow subdivision and sub-areas that have a dedicated or temporary usage. Service areas should provide space for staff to interact on the visitor side or provide separate seating areas for consultation.

809.4 Work Surfaces. Work surfaces should comply with Section 902. Consider adjustable height surfaces complying with Section 902.3.1

809.5 Acoustics. The visitor should be provided the ability to communicate at normal conversation levels. Provide acoustic barriers, partitions, and other means such as, sound absorbing material, etc., to keep noise levels at a normal level. This may also require the reconfiguration of user patterns to relocate and subdivide groups to reduce noise.

809.6 Privacy. Depending on the nature of the service area, certain types of activities and conversations should be kept confidential (e.g. a conversation with a bank teller serving a blind customer, or a medical facility in which personal medical information needs to be discussed). Consider providing service cubicles or private offices or spaces.

809.7 Customer Assistance. Customer assistance includes some of a personal nature such as toileting, eating, or dressing, but also includes transactions that impede on confidentiality such as banking. Assistance should be available for people with sight, mobility, and hearing disabilities and provided in visual, tactile and audible formats.

809.7.1 Etiquette. Etiquette is critical for common decency and respect for all people. Staff should be trained how to interact with those visitors who may appear to have a disability. This will help providers to understand what is appropriate. First impressions may be completely wrong. Many disabilities are not obvious and cannot be accurately determined by the service provider. It is inappropriate to request information about a person's disability unless it is relevant to the service that the person is seeking (e.g., medical treatment) . Therefore, assumptions should not be made about an individual's abilities, especially for people with hidden disabilities

809.7.1 Advisory. See the United Spinal Association's *Disability Etiquette* at their website: http://www.unitedspinal.org There is a wealth of information here and many free publications.

809.7.2 Communications. Means of communication should comply with Chapter 7 and should be visual, audible and tactile to address a variety of needs and preferences. Some redundancy is helpful. Means of communications includes, but is certainly not limited to the following: visual, tactile, audible signage; Assistive Listening System (ALS); TTY; Internet, audio descriptors; open captioning, cd's; closed captioning; sign language interpretation; two-way visual electronic communication; remote infrared signs, telephone, cellphone, PDA's, etc.. Communications also includes providing specific types of service options (e.g., sign language interpreter, language translation, relay service, and reading assistance, see 708.5)

809.7.3 Programmatic. Sometimes programmatic means must be used to provide a service, such as accommodations needed or preferred by a person who uses a mobility device, but cannot be physically provided (e.g., a service window does not accommodate a person and a private desk or office must be used).

810 Dining Areas.

810.1 General. Dining areas should comply with Section 810. In addition, comply with the applicable recommendations in the following sections: 301-310, 402, 403, 404, 405, 505, 706, 902, 903, and 904. Provide adequate maneuvering clearance at food service lines and at seating areas. The eating environment should be equally accommodating, all areas usable and an equitable dining experience.

810.2 Seating Locations. Inclusive seating locations should be provided throughout. These should be distributed so that all distinct areas within a dining area provide inclusive spaces.

810.2.1 Seating. Seating should comply with Section 903.11, should be comfortable and easy for people to use. Larger chairs should be available for those who need them. Chairs should have supportive backs or arms to assist those with diminished dexterity and upper body strength and other types of diminished abilities (e.g. to help the elderly to stand). Seating may be fixed or portable, but a range of seating options should be provided to accommodate all. Provide seating for children complying with Section 903.

810.3 Circulation. The route to and from inclusive locations should be maintainable so that navigation to and from a table is not obstructed by table relocation or chair movement. Consider defining a route with surface material or with architectural elements that prevents arbitrary relocation of furniture. Consider tactile surface characteristics complying with Section 302.6 and Section 302.10.

810.3 Advisory. Getting to one's table should not turn into a scene by staff clearing a path and asking other diners to move out of the way. Equality also means equally enjoyable by all. It is disrespectful and embarrassing for a diner to create a scene entering or leaving or using a restroom. Often restaurants try to maximize the usable customer floor space and in so doing may trap or limit customers who uses a mobility device, within the table layout.

810.3.1 Multi-level Dining Areas. Ramps, lift or elevator should connect all levels of dining area.

810.4 Dining Surfaces. Dining surfaces should comply with Section 902. Provide, as necessary, dining surfaces for children complying with Section 902.4 and Section 902.5

810.5 Food Service Lines. Food service lines should comply with Section 904.5 and check out aisles should comply with Section 904.4. Line should contain a level of flexibility to reconfigure traffic patterns as necessary. Food service lines should be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum in width.

810.6 Concessions. Concessions should comply with Sections 904 and Section 902. Concessions may be individually located, multiple locations or grouped into court arrangements, depending on the size and type of facility. They should be convenient to all.

811 Offices.

811.1 General. Offices should comply with Section 811. In addition, comply with the applicable recommendations in the following sections: 301-310, 403, 404, 405, 505, 506, 602, 609, 702, 703, 704, 706, 708, 709, 710, 902, 903 and 906. Offices should be flexible and adaptable to suit a variety of needs, tasks, and accommodate peoples needs and preferences.

811.2 Doors. Doors and openings should comply with Section 404.

811.3 Work Surfaces and Seating. Work surfaces and seating should comply with Section 902, 903 and Section 811.9. Adjustable work surfaces increase depth, the space underneath work surfaces and accommodates individual needs and preferences. Modular systems allow for adjustable heights for shelves, lighting, electrical outlets, storage units, and all the accessories that enhance the usability of the work area.

811.4 Lighting. Lighting consists of artificial and natural light, both direct and indirect general lighting and task lighting. The lighting system should provide sufficient amount of light and should be flexible to accommodate changing needs and functions of a space. Glare should be reduced as much as possible, shadows reduced or eliminated, and lighting levels fairly consistent. Task lighting should be balanced with ambient lighting. Ambient lighting should not be used as task lighting. Direct and indirect light sources should be considered. Daylight should be used to the maximum extent possible and supplemented and balanced with artificial light. Lighting should replicate the natural spectrum as close as possible.

811.4.1 Artificial Lighting. All controls should comply with Section 309 and should be simple to understand and easy to use. The layout and location of the controls should relate to the actual ceiling plan, so that occupants can easily identify the relevant switches. The use of dimmers and a variety of different and adequate number of fixtures should increase options, balancing, and fine tuning of the system to accommodate specific and changing needs of the occupants. Timer controls and motion detector switches should be considered.

811.4.2 Natural Light. Use of natural light should be maximized. Provide the maximum allowable window surface permitted. Windows

should comply with Section 506. Control glare to reduce eye fatigue with architectural elements, glazing options and window treatments. Consider automatic control systems with sensors to balance natural and artificial light. Blinds are an effective and efficient means of controlling daylight. Consider smart windows and chromogenic glazing (see 500 Introduction).

811.4.3 Task Lighting. Provide adjustable task lighting to accommodate individual needs and preferences and various types of tasks. Task lighting should be balanced with ambient lighting. Adequate task lighting and choices should be provided to help reduce eye fatigue and provide a more efficient work environment .

811.5 Environment. The environment should be comfortable, healthy and accommodate individual needs and preferences. This includes temperature, humidity, air filtration, and distribution of heating, cooling, and humidity.

811.5.1 Controls. All controls should comply with Section 309 and recommended to comply specifically with section 309.3.1. Consider individual user controls at each work station that may provide localized control within the general office environment.

811.5.2 Zones. The work environment may contain multiple zones and micro-zones for individual control. General environment should be adequate for most, but some groups may require an increase or decrease in cooling or heating (e.g. elderly may require a higher temperature, or workers that are constantly moving may require a cooler environment). Another group may need or prefer a drier or more humid environment (e.g. people with sinus conditions). Work locations within a specific zone may be critical depending upon the type of distribution and quality of the equipment. Heat and cooling sources create micro conditions that may require modification of the system discharge or reconfiguration of the office layout especially for existing conditions.

811.5.2.1 Micro-zones. Micro-zones are designed to accommodate an individual in the general environment or within a zone. This includes individual control over their immediate environment. This may not be viable within the general HVAC system and require supplemental equipment such as individual humidifier and dehumidifiers, individual ac units, individual heat sources, fans.

811.5.3 Air Quality. Office air quality should provide an environment that controls dust, chemicals, organic contaminants (e.g. mold and pollen). The system should provide consistent filtration. If the general environment is inadequate for the needs of some they should be accommodated in a separate enclosed area where additional measures can be taken.

811.6 Acoustics. Provide an environment with a variety of sound characteristics that includes general, zones and individual work spaces. This includes background noise levels, sound transmission and absorption and reverberation levels. Provide sound isolated areas or areas for privacy. Provide spaces or rooms that reduce sound levels from a noisy general environment including meeting rooms, individual offices, lounge areas, waiting areas, etc.

811.6.1 Alarms. Alarms should be clearly distinguishable and decibel levels that are sufficiently above ambient noise levels. Alarms should be multisensory complying with Section 309.9.

811.7 Storage. Storage should be properly sized, located, and distribute throughout office for both general and individual needs and preferences, ease of use, efficiency, and safe.

811.7.1 Locations. Storage should be provided where needed and relate to and complement the task. Depending upon the type of work, it may be best to provide one or more primary storage facilities with smaller storage facilities distributed.

811.7.2 Reach Ranges. Reach ranges should comply with Section 308 and recommend the comfort zone complying with Section 309.3.1 and 309.3.2.

811.7.2.1 Compartments. Bulky and heavy items should be stored within the reach ranges complying with Section 811.7.2. The heaviest items should be stored as low as possible and moved by cart, hand truck or mechanical means. Lighter and smaller items that are not frequently needed should be stored higher and may be obtained manually or with a device. Consider manual and automatic operation of storage compartments that includes mechanical shelving and pull out storage compartments.

811.7.3 Personal Storage. Provide storage for each worker that includes closets, lockers or compartmentalized zoned storage that is adjacent or within close proximity.

811.8 Lounges. Offices should be provided an open or enclosed lounge area usable by all, that may contain a kitchen or kitchenette complying with Section 804, comfortable seating and dining surfaces complying with Section 902 and 903, storage, adequate lighting for a variety of tasks, monitor, adjustable environmental controls and ventilation. The types (e.g. eating, multiple function, etc), size, number, locations, privacy or interaction level etc. depends on the specific work environment.

811.9 Workstations. Work stations may be designed for a seated or standing position with an adjustable height work surface complying with Section 902.3.1.

811.9.1 Standing Workstations. Provide an adjustable height work surface and an adjustable office chair complying with Section 903.10. Provide adjustable height computer monitor and lights. Position objects and materials to reduce bending. Provide a footrest.

811.9.2 Sitting Workstation. Provide an adjustable height work surface between 28 inches (715 mm) and 34 inches (865 mm) complying with Section 902 and an adjustable office chair complying with Section 903.10. Provide adjustable height computer monitor, lights. Objects and materials should be placed within the 24 inch (610 mm) to 48 inch (1220 mm) comfort zone. Knee and toe clearance should comply with Section 306. Provide a footrest.

811.9.3 Office Chairs. Office and work chairs are critical and should contain a wide range of features that allow adjustment for different users, changing individual preferences as and when needed, complying with Section 903.10. Features include: 360 degree rotation, variable height, back height adjustment, seat depth adjustment, removable and adjustable arms, adjustable lumbar support, center tilt, synchronized tilt, and tilt lock. Office chairs should be provided in various sizes, seating material and wheeled and non-wheeled bases and even fixed locations. The industry has a wide and accommodating range of available furniture that contains all or many of these features.

811.10 Temporary Workspaces. Temporary workspaces are intended primarily for public areas (e.g., building lobbies, conference facilities and transportation hubs) but could also be used in a wide variety of facility types. They are intended for short duration usage (e.g., 15-60 minutes). They may be open spaces, cubicles or enclosed spaces (e.g., small rooms and closets). Enclosed spaces may be manual or automatic and may be fee based (similar to pay toilets) or complimentary. Where temporary workspaces are provided, at least one, but not less than 20% of the total spaces should be type “A” at each location. Enclosed spaces are recommended in high traffic areas to provide an isolated quiet work environment. Enclosed spaces should be provided with an automatic door (sliding recommended) with a 50% minimum transparent safety glazing area (see Section 404.2.10 Vision Lites). This increases safety, reduces inappropriate usage and allows other guests to confirm if the space is in use. Temporary workspaces should not be located within close proximity of food vendors to avoid usage conflict. Provide visual, tactile and auditory signage.

811.10 Advisory. Temporary workspaces are essentially an updated version of the traditional telephone booth that provides two-way communications and a work surface that can be used for a variety of purposes (e.g., office work, computer usage and study). The workspace type(s) should be appropriate for the building classification. Enclosed spaces are recommended for visual and auditory privacy, especially in high traffic locations and where the ambient noise level is high.

811.10.1 Type “A” Temporary Workspaces. Type “A” temporary workspaces should provide a circular turning space complying with Section 304, a fold-up fixed or adjustable height work surface complying with Section 902 and knee clearance complying with Section 306.3. Work surface may overlap turning space. Enclosed spaces should contain an automatic sliding or swing out door complying with Section 404 and glazing as per Section 811.10. Consider a fold-up shelf above the work surface within reach ranges complying with Section 308. An enclosed type “A” space may accommodate two users, but it is primarily intended for those who require the turning space (e.g., people who use scooters and other types of mobility devices). The type “A” spaces is larger than the type “B” and provides more work surface and can accommodate a movable chair(s).

811.10.2 Type "B" Temporary Workspaces. Provide a clear floor space complying with Section 305, based on approach, a fold-up fixed or adjustable height work surface complying with Section 902 and knee clearance complying with Section 306.3. Work surface may overlap clear floor space. Enclosed spaces are recommended with automatic sliding or swing-out door complying with Section 404. Consider a fold-up shelf above the work surface complying with Section 308. Enclosed type "B" spaces are for single use. Since the space may not accommodate both a mobility device and chair, consider a fold-up wall mounted seat with back complying with Section 903.

811.10.3 Features. Temporary workspaces should provide a range of features to accommodate guest's needs and preferences. These include: visual/tactile/auditory signage, movable or fold-up seating complying with Section 903, an automatic adjustable height work surface complying with Section 902.3.1, adjustable climate controls and adequate air changes, adjustable general and task lighting, pull down or fixed shelf above work surface within reach ranges complying with Section 308, coat hook(s), telephone and TTY complying with Section 704, a variety of electronic conveniences (e.g., internet wireless and hard connections, fixed speakers, fixed monitor and two-way visual communications), operable parts complying with Section 309, smoke detector, and emergency alarm complying with Section 702. Consider a mirror to see behind in enclosed spaces & grab bars.

811.10.4 Visible and Audible Signals. Visible and audible signals should be provided for each enclosed space. These include: guest greeting, payment (if required), total usage duration, one minute time remaining, and exit message that asks the occupant to vacate.

812 Meeting Rooms.

812.1 General. Meeting rooms should comply with Section 812. In addition, comply with the applicable recommendations in the following sections: 301-310, 403, 404, 405, 505, 506, 602, 609, 702, 703, 704, 706, 708, 709, 710, 902, 903 and 906. Meeting rooms should be flexible, multi-purpose spaces that can accommodate a range of occupants and events.

812.2 Location. Locate along an inclusive route that provides convenient access to amenities (e.g. rest rooms, telephones, drinking fountains), concession or newsstand, waiting area or gathering space, entry lobby, or other adjacent space or within close enough proximity either interior or exterior, to provide a waiting area for the anticipated number of participants without causing congestion or obstructing the functioning of the rest of the facility.

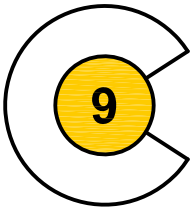
812.3 Flexibility. The meeting room should be as flexible as possible to accommodate a wide range of uses, group sizes and the needs and preferences of the widest range of participants as possible. Certain facilities may limit the uses due to the classification and type of building, but the maximum flexibility should be built into the design to accommodate unanticipated uses and changing needs by the various occupants. The architectural elements should not restrict flexibility such as window or door placement that does not permit, or does not allow easy and logical subdivision of the room. Partitioning should be automatic movable walls that provide acoustic and visual barriers. Material should match or compliment the materials of the room.

812.4 Acoustics. Meeting room should contain an acoustical environment that addresses a wide range of tasks and functions. This includes background noise levels, sound transmission, absorption and reverberation levels. Provide sound isolation for privacy or to reduce the noise levels to increase communication levels and understanding. If space is used for social gatherings, parties, or other events with high noise levels, the structure and materials should reduce transmission.

812.5 Storage. Adequate and flexible storage should be provided. This may include electronic equipment, furniture, seating, presentation boards, etc. Comply with Section 905.

812.6 Electronic Equipment. Electronic equipment is so varied and so rapidly changing that the only valuable guidance regarding meeting rooms is to accommodate the widest range of needs and types of presentations, accommodate the widest range of participants taking into account diminished visual and auditory abilities, and preferences and to provide adequate space and location to physically accommodate the equipment. Consider an induction loop system that works with hearing aid T-coils (see 706 Advisory). Neck loops are also useful.

812.7 Furniture. Furniture should consist of movable seating complying with Section 903.10 and Section 903.11. Tables should comply with 902.



Furnishings and Equipment

900 Introduction. Chapter 9 includes: dining, work surfaces, seating, sales and service counters, product and storage facilities, trash and recycling receptacles. The needs and preferences of adults, as well as usability and comfort for children are covered. Children's components should be properly scaled by age group for their smaller sizes.

Dining surfaces and work surfaces address clear floor space, fixed or adjustable height options, and width. Supplemental recommendations are included for children.

Seating addresses various types, features, and configurations. Ergonomics increases comfort, safety and health while reducing fatigue. Seating types include: office, bench, dining, arena, grand stand, bleacher, auditorium, children's classroom, toilet and bathroom, elevator landing/cab, shelters, route, lobby, building entrances, area of rescue assistance, and telephone. Seating takes into account a variety of user sizes. Armrests provide stability and comfort to help people sit, rise and to lean against for support. Features may include, depending upon the type of seat: 360 degree rotation, variable height, back height adjustment, seat depth adjustment, removable and adjustable arms, adjustable lumbar support, center tilt, synchronized tilt and tilt lock. Seating also includes features that are relevant to the venue (e.g., monitors, task lighting, work surfaces, cup holder and outlet).

Sales and service counters address parallel and forward approach. Provide privacy where and when needed to communicate important and critical personal information. Food service lines address self-service shelves and dispensing devices, tray slides and children's usage. Product and storage facilities address clear floor space, height, operable parts, circulation, turns, signage, lighting and consumer assistance. Eye levels complying with Section 310 are important to examine goods and to read labels.

Trash receptacles address clear floor space, height, operable parts, locations, surface characteristics, signage and trash/recycling rooms. Automatic operation may be helpful. Consider loading options (e.g., top, vertical and sloped front). Trash receptacle should be grouped with other amenities to increase overall convenience and usage.

901 General

901.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 9 should apply where recommended by the scoping provisions adopted by the administrative authority.

902 Dining Surfaces and Work Surfaces

902.1 General. Dining surfaces and work surfaces should comply with Section 902.

EXCEPTION: Dining surfaces and work surfaces primarily for children's use should comply with Section 902.4 and Section 902.5

902.1 Advisory. Dining surfaces and work surfaces are broken down into three distinct groups: adults, children 5-12 and children 5 and younger. The ranges will overlap, especially since the growth rate fluctuates for children. Some larger children will require adult accommodations. It is also not clear exactly what eating and work positions a child will assume (e.g. sitting straight, bent over, standing, kneeling, even squatting). The percentage that is applied to each group relates to the primary users, and building classification.

902.1.1 Table Placement. Provide a designated fixed route to and within dining areas, so that table arrangements will always provide an unobstructed route to the various features and amenities: restrooms, bar, exits and entrances, performance area, etc. (See 810.3 Advisory)

902.2 Clear Floor Space. Clear floor space complying with Section 305, positioned for a forward approach, should be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 should be provided.

902.2 Advisory. Clear floor space for dinning surfaces and work surfaces for adults is based on a rectangle 36 inches wide and 60 inches long. Knee and toe clearances complying with Section 306 takes into account raised feet positions.

902.3 Height and Width. The tops of dining surfaces and work surfaces should be 28 inches (710 mm) minimum and 34 inches (865 mm) maximum in height above the floor and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum width.

902.3 Advisory. The adult height range is 28-34 inches, The minimum knee clearance height is 27 inches as per Section 306. A minimum of 1 inch thickness for a top is possible with the difference between the 27 knee clearance and 28 inch minimum work surface height.

902.3.1 Adjustable Height Surfaces. Adjustable height surfaces are recommended where appropriate. An automatic means is suggested, but if this is not feasible, provide manual operation complying with Section 309. Height range should comply with Section 902.3.

902.4 Supplemental Countertop and Tabletop Surfaces for Children's Use, Ages 5 to 12. Dining surfaces and work surfaces primarily for children's use, ages 5 to 12 should comply with Section 902.4.

902.4.1 Inclusive Space. A clear floor space 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width, positioned for forward approach, should be provided. Knee clearance 24 inches (610 mm) minimum above the floor should be provided. Toe clearance 12 inches (305 mm) above the floor should be provided. Provide an adjustable height surface or a surface 26 inches (660 mm) minimum and 30 inches (760 mm) maximum.

902.4.2 Height of Countertops. The heights of countertops should accommodate the particular age group: Age 5+, 22.5 inches (570 mm); Age 7, 25 inches (635 mm); Age 9, 27.3 (695 mm); Age 12, 31.3 inches (795 mm).

902.4.3 Height of Tabletops. The heights of tabletops should accommodate the particular age group: Age 5+, 17.5 inches (445 mm); Age 7, 18.9 inches (480 mm); Age 9, 20.7 (525 mm); Age 12, 23.3 inches (590 mm).

902.4.4 Adjustable Height Surfaces. Consider adjustable height surfaces, especially for inclusive spaces and to accommodate size variations within each age group. Height ranges should comply with Section 902.4.

902.5 Supplemental Countertop and Tabletop Surfaces for Children's Use, Ages 5 and Younger. Dining surfaces and work surfaces primarily for children's use, ages 5 and younger should comply with Section 902.5.

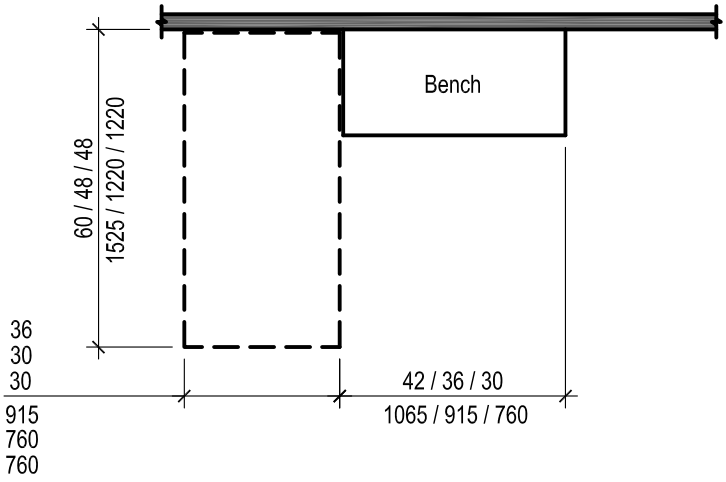
902.5.1 Inclusive Space. A clear floor space 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width, positioned for forward approach, should be provided. Knee clearance 24 inches (610 mm) minimum above the floor should be provided. Toe clearance 12 inches (305 mm) above the floor should be provided. Provide an adjustable height surface or a surface 26 inches (660 mm) minimum and 30 inches (760 mm) maximum.

902.5.2 Height. The height of countertops should be a maximum of 22.5 inches (570 mm). The height tabletops should be a maximum of 17.5 inches (445 mm).

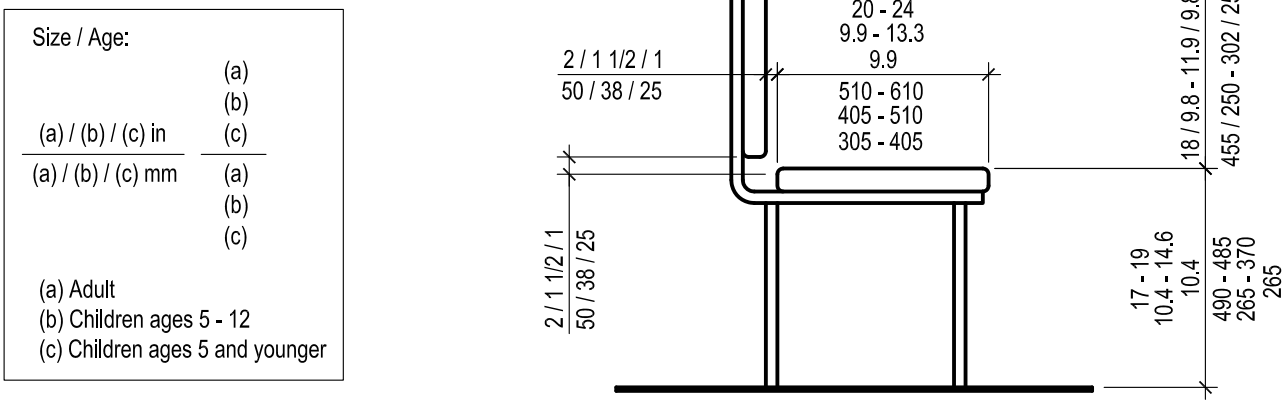
902.5.3 Adjustable Height Surfaces. Consider adjustable height surfaces to accommodate size variations within this group. Height range should comply with Section 902.5.

903 Seating

903.1 General. Seating should comply with Section 903. Seating should be ergonomically correct and adjustable where practical to provide proper support. Ergonomics increases comfort, safety and health while reducing fatigue. Compressible surfaces should be carefully considered to not only maintain recommended heights and ergonomics, but affect on usability, transfer and exiting. Features include: 360 degree rotation, variable height, back height adjustment, seat depth adjustment, removable and adjustable arms, adjustable lumbar support, center tilt, synchronized tilt, and tilt lock.



(a)
Clear Floor Space and Size



(b)
Bench Back Support and Seat Height
(see 903.4 for seat back angles)

Fig. 903
Bench

903.1 Advisory. Seating should be waterproof for some interior applications and also vandal and weather protected for exterior applications. Seating is referenced in various sections such as 802.8 for assembly areas, Section 603 single and multiple occupant rest rooms and bathrooms, Section 405.7.4.2 rest areas for ramps, etc.

903.2 Adult Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305, positioned for parallel approach to an end of the bench seat, should be provided.

903.3 Adult Seats.

903.3.1 Bench Seats. Accessible benches should have seats 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum in length, and from 20 inches (510 mm) minimum to 24 inches (610 mm) maximum in depth. Other benches may provide a recommended depth of 17 inches (430 mm) to 20 inches (510 mm). This relates to the seat back (see 903.4). The user's legs should also be elevated slightly at the front of the bench; an angle of 7-11 degrees from the horizontal helps to push the body weight into the correct position on the seat.[8] (See 903.3.1 Advisory, for alternate seat bottom angle recommendations.)

903.3.1 Advisory. Fig. 903b is a transfer bench – for transferring from a wheelchair to the bench and back. It is typical for a locker room, where such transfers are necessary. Outdoors, for people who use a wheelchair, the key things are to provide an appropriate route(s) and wheelchair spaces integrated with other seating. The bench in Figure 903b is not necessarily desirable for people with limited mobility because it does not have armrests and may be uncomfortable or less usable. Armrests are recommended as per Section 903.6.1, but for transferring should contain a folding or retractable arm. People with limited mobility, but who do not use a wheelchair, will appreciate a bench that is easy in, easy out. Generally this can be accomplished by: a, Providing armrests that extend out to a spot roughly even with the front edge of the seat; b, Having the front edge of the seat bottom 17"-19" above the ground (see 903.5); c, Having a relatively horizontal seat bottom (0-10 degrees of slope); d, Providing a backrest with a midpoint about 17"-20" back from the front edge of the seat bottom, rising 15" or more above the seat bottom, and forming an angle with the bottom of 100-110 degrees; e, Providing open under bench space for foot placement to aid balance when rising.[9]

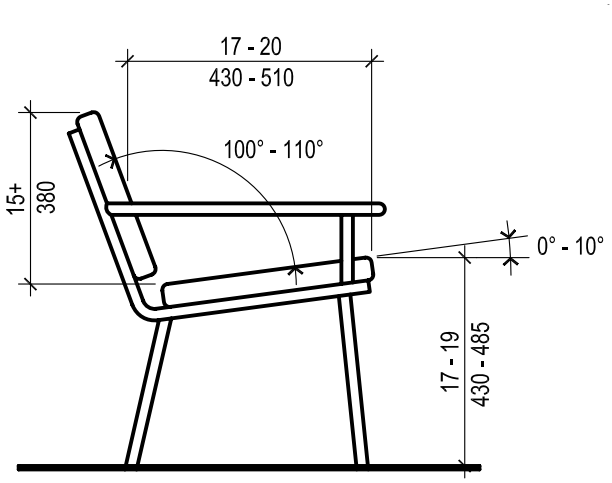


Fig. 903.3
Other Adult Bench[10]

903.3.2 Single Seat Size. Single seat width and depth apply to the seat surface and not the overall dimensions of the chair and vary depending on the type and use (e.g. office and lounge chairs). The ratio of width to depth also is affected by the style of the chair, back angle and the various features. Consider a standard office seat 16 inches (405 mm) to 18 inches (455 mm) in width; and 15 inches (380 mm) to 16 inches (405 mm) in depth.

903.3.2.1 Large Single Seat Size. Large single seat width and depth apply to the seat surface and not the overall dimensions of the chair and vary depending on the type and use (e.g., waiting area seating). Consider a large seat size 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in width and from 17 inches (430 mm) to 20 inches (510 mm) in depth. Depths greater than 20 inches will increase the level of difficulty getting in and out of the seat.

903.4 Bench Back Support for Adults. The bench should provide for back support and should be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum in length and should extend from a point 2 inches (51 mm) maximum above the seat surface to a point 18 inches (455 mm) minimum above the seat surface [benches that are not require to be accessible, consider 15 inches (380 mm) minimum]. Back support should be 2 1/2 inches (64 mm) maximum from the rear edge of the seat measured horizontally. Seat back angles are an important consideration. Back shape

8, Bench back and seat angle ranges recommendations by Kenneth Lynch & Sons.
9,10 Bench recommendations by Landscape Forms, Inc.

and angle are directly related to the seat shape and angle. From the point on the seat where the user's weight, directly below the torso, is supported to the most flat part of the seat back should be 95-100 degrees.[11] (see 903.3.1 Advisory for alternate angle recommendations)

903.4.1 Single Seat Back Support. Single seat back support varies in angle, features and height depending upon the type of seat and use (e.g. office chair). Consider a standard office chair back 15 inches (380 mm) to 16 inches (406 mm) above the seat surface.

903.5 Height of Adult Seats. The top of the seat should be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the top of the seat.

903.6 Structural Strength for Adults. Allowable stresses should not be exceeded for materials used where a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the seat, fastener mounting device, or supporting structure.

903.6.1 Armrests. Armrests are recommended to help people sit, rise and to lean against for support and comfort. If only one bench is provided it should include armrests. Where multiple benches are provided, 50% of the benches should have armrests. Where armrests are provided on seating adjacent to clear floor spaces, folding or retractable armrest should be provided to allow transfer from a mobility device.

903.7 Wet Locations. Where provided in wet locations the surface of the seat should be slip resistant and should not accumulate water.

903.8 Seating for Children, Ages 5 to 12.

903.8.1 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width positioned for parallel approach to an end of the bench seat should be provided.

903.8.2 Bench Size. Benches should have seats 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in length. The bench depth should accommodate the particular age group: Age 5+,9.9 inches (250 mm); Age 7, 10.8 inches (275 mm); Age 9, 11.8 inches (300 mm); Age 12, 13.3 (340 mm). See Section 903.3.1 and Advisory for recommended seat angles.

903.8.2.1 Single Seat Size. Single seat width and depth apply to the seat surface and not the overall dimensions of the chair. Single seat size should accommodate the particular age group: Age 5+, 11 inches (280 mm) width and 9.9 inches (250 mm) depth; Age 7, 12 inches (305 mm) width and 10.8 inches (275 mm) depth; Age 9, 13 inches (330 mm) width and 11.8 inches (300 mm) depth; Age 12, 14.5 inches (370 mm) width and 13.3 inches (340 mm) depth.

903.8.3 Bench Back Support. The bench should provide for back support and should be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in length and should extend from a point 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) maximum above the seat surface to a point above the seat surface that accommodates the particular age group: Age 5+, 9.8 inches (250 mm); Age 7, 10.2 inches (260 mm); Age 9, 11 inches (280 mm); Age 12, 11.9 inches (302 mm). Back support should be 2 inches (50 mm) maximum from the rear edge of the seat measured horizontally. See 903.3.1 Advisory and Section 903.4 for recommended seat back angles.

903.8.3.1 Single Seat Back Support. Single seat back support is measured to a point above the seat surface that accommodates the particular age group: Age 5+, 9.8 inches (250 mm); Age 7, 10.2 inches (260 mm); Age 9, 11 inches (280 mm); Age12, 11.9 inches (302 mm).

903.8.4 Height. The height of the top of the seat above the floor should accommodate the particular age group: Age 5+, 10.4 inches (265 mm); Age 7, 11.4 inches (290 mm); Age 9, 12.8 inches (325 mm); Age 12, 14.6 inches (370 mm).

903.8.5 Structural Strength. Allowable stresses should not be exceeded for materials used where a vertical or horizontal force of 150 pounds (670 N) is applied at any point on the seat, fastener mounting device, or supporting structure.

903.8.6 Wet Locations. Where provided in wet locations, the surface of the seat should be slip resistant and should not accumulate water.

11, Bench back and seat angle ranges recommendations were provided by Kenneth Lynch & Sons.

903.9 Seating for Children, Ages 5 and Younger.

903.9.1 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width positioned for parallel approach to an end of the bench seat should be provided.

903.9.2 Bench Size. Benches should have seats 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in length, and 9.9 inches (250 mm) maximum in depth. See Section 903.3.1 and Advisory for recommended seat angles.

903.9.2.1 Single Seat Size. Single seat size should be 11 inches (280 mm) maximum in width and 9.9 inches (250 mm) maximum in depth.

903.9.3 Bench Back Support. The bench should provide for back support or should be affixed to a wall. Back support should be 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in length and should extend from a point 1 inch (25 mm) maximum above the seat surface to a point 9.8 inches (250 mm) maximum above the seat surface. Back support should be 11/2 inches (38 mm) maximum from the rear edge of the seat measured horizontally. See 903.3.1 Advisory and Section 903.4 for recommended seat back angles.

903.9.3.1 Single Seat Back Support. Single seat back support is measured to a point above the seat surface and should be 9.8 inches (250 mm) maximum.

903.9.4 Height. The top of the seat should be 10.4 inches (265 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the top of the seat.

903.9.5 Structural Strength. Allowable stresses should not be exceeded for materials used where a vertical or horizontal force of 100 pounds (445 N) is applied at any point on the seat, fastener mounting device, or supporting structure.

903.9.6 Wet Locations. Where provided in wet locations the surface of the seat should be slip resistant and should not accumulate water.

903.10 Office Chairs. Office and work chairs should contain a wide range of features that allow adjustment for different users and changing individual preferences when needed. Features include: 360 degree rotation, variable height, back height adjustment, seat depth adjustment, removable and adjustable arms, adjustable lumbar support, center tilt, synchronized tilt, and tilt lock. Office chairs should be provided in various sizes, materials, wheeled and non-wheeled bases. Provide footrests integrated with the chair or a separate adjustable unit.

903.11 Dining Seating. Dining seating may be fixed or movable, benches, or individual chairs. Due to the level and range of creativity regarding the design of dining venues, there are hybrids. Bench seating should comply with Section 903 and should accommodate children where appropriate. Chairs should be provided in at least two sizes (See 903.3 and 903.3.1.1) to accommodate large individuals or provided with armless chairs, but this does not necessarily provide comfort. Lumbar support back, should be provided and high enough to provide support. Weight should not be so extreme as to make repositioning of the chair a strenuous effort (e.g. heavy metal chairs).

903.12. Arena Seating. Arena, grand stand, bleacher and auditorium seating should provide proper support to prevent fatigue and should be ergonomically correct and adjustable where practical. Adjustments may include height, back angle, lumbar support, firmness with folding or retractable arms and seat. Amenities should be provided that are appropriate for the type of assembly space and the primary users. This may include physical and wireless computer connections, monitors located in the back of the seats, task lighting, flip up work surface, cup holder, etc. If an assembly space is to be used for a wide range of uses then it should be provided with the greatest range of amenities.

903.13 Children's Classroom Seating. Children's classroom seating should comply with Section 903.8 and Section 903.9

903.14 Toilet and Bathroom Seating. Seating for single occupant rooms, multiple occupant rooms should comply with Section 603.8.1, 603.8.2, 608.4, and 610.

903.15 Elevator Landing Seating. Elevator landing seating should comply with Section 903.3 through 903.7 and Section 407.2.1.8. Consider benches for children complying with Sections 903.8 and 903.9 in facilities that a primarily intended for children.

903.16 Shelter Seating. Shelter seating should comply with Section 903.1 through 903.7 and Section 402.4.7. Consider benches for children complying with Sections 903.8 and 903.9 for facilities that are primarily intended for children.

903.17 Route Seating. Route seating should comply with Sections 402.4.6 and 903.1 through 903.7. consider benches complying with Sections 903.8 and 903.9 for facilities that are primarily intended for children.

903.18 Lobby and Waiting Area Seating. Lobby and waiting area seating should comply with Sections 404.1.1 and 903.1 through 903.7. consider benches complying with Sections 903.8 and 903.9 for facilities that are primarily intended for children.

903.19 Area of Rescue Assistance. Area of rescue assistance seating should comply with Section 903.3 through 903.6 and Section 504.11.

903.20 Telephone Seating. Telephone seating should comply with Sections 903.3 through 903.7 and Sections 704.13.

904 Sales and Service Counters

904.1 General. Sales and service counters should comply with Section 904 as applicable.

904.2 Approach. Counters should be located adjacent to a walking surface complying with Section 403.

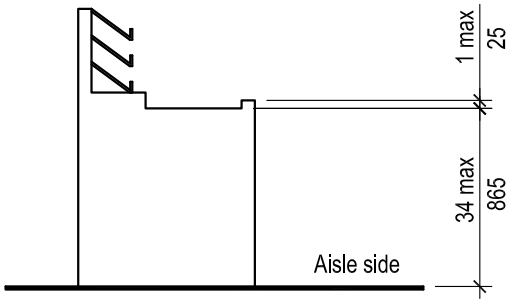


Fig. 904.2
Height of Checkout Counters

904.3 Sales and Service Counters. Sales and service counters should comply with Section 904.3.1 or 904.3.2.

904.3.1 Parallel Approach. The counter surface should be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum in height above the floor complying with Section 308 and specifically with Section 308.3.2. A clear floor space complying with Section 305, positioned for a parallel approach adjacent to the counter, should be provided.

904.3.2 Forward Approach. The counter surface should be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum in height above the floor complying with Section 308. A clear floor space complying with Section 305, positioned for a forward approach should be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 should be provided under the counter.

904.4 Checkout Aisles. Checkout aisles should comply with Section 904.4.

904.4.1 Aisle. Aisles should comply with Section 403.

EXCEPTION: Aisle should be 42 inches (1070 mm) minimum in width.

904.4.2 Counters. The checkout counter surface should be 34 inches (865 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum in height above the floor. The top of the counter edge protection should be 1 inch (25 mm) maximum above the top of the counter surface on the aisle side of the checkout counter.

904.4.3 Check, bill and Credit Card Receipts Writing Surfaces. Where appropriate, writing surfaces should comply with Section 902.3.

904.5 Food Service Lines. Counters in food service lines should comply with Section 904.5.

904.5.1 Self-Service Shelves and Dispensing Devices. Self-service shelves and dispensing devices for tableware, dishware, condiments, food and beverages should comply with Section 308.

904.5.2 Tray Slides. The tops of tray slides should be 28 inches (710 mm) minimum and 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the floor.

904.5.3 Tray Slides for Children's Use. The tops of tray slides should be 26 inches (660 mm) minimum and 30 inches (760 mm) maximum above the floor.

904.6 Security Glazing. Where counters or teller windows have security glazing to separate personnel from the public, voice and visual communication should be provided complying with Section 708. Telephone handset devices, if provided, should comply with Section 704.3.

905 Product and Storage Facilities

905.1 General. Product and storage facilities should comply with Section 905, and should provide access to all products offered.

905.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305 should be provided.

905.3 Height. Storage elements should comply with reach ranges specified in Section 308. Eye levels are important to examine products and read labels and should comply with Section 310.

905.3 Advisory. The entire range of products should comply with Section 308, but it is also recommended that they should be available at the comfort reach range between 24 inches (610 mm) and 48 inches (1220 mm) above the floor so that they are reachable from either a standing or sitting position. Heavier items should be located at the lower height for easier retrieval. Featured products or those on sale should be located so they can be easily obtained near entry (e.g. at the front of aisle, near checkout areas).

905.4 Operable Parts. Operable parts of storage facilities should comply with Section 309.

905.5 Circulation. All circulation paths should be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum width for one way traffic and 72 inches (1830 mm) minimum width for two-way traffic complying with 403.5 and dead ends complying with Section 403.5.3.

905.5 Advisory. Care should be taken when considering display location or product stacking, especially in supermarkets. These may create obstructions and an instability hazard.

905.5.1 Turns. Provide at least a 42 inch (1065 mm) wide aisle and 48 inch (1220 mm) turning aisle for a turn around an obstruction (e.g., display case) and aisle terminating less than 48 inches (1220 mm) wide. Provide at least a 42 inch (1065 mm) wide aisle for a 90 degree turn no less than 48 inches (1220 mm) wide for a 180 degree turn around an obstruction.

905.6 Signage. Provide signage to aid wayfinding above each aisle listing contents, 80 inches minimum above the floor complying with Section 307.2, so that products can be easily found. Consider providing signage at ends of aisles at eye level complying with Section 310.5.

905.7 Lighting. Provide adequate lighting levels with a natural light spectrum to be able to generally examine products, read ingredients, examine color and texture of material, read pricing and other relevant label information, and to have enough illumination to help make a purchase determination.

905.8 Consumer Assistance. Provide bar code readers with adequately sized readout, scales to verify weight, large size labels for easier reading, small carry baskets, electric scooter/shopping carts, and customer assistance hands free operation two way communications complying with Section 708.4.

906 Trash and Recycling Receptacles.

906.1 General. Receptacles should comply with Section 906.

906.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305 should be provided.

906.3 Height. Reach ranges should comply with Section 308. Protruding objects should comply with Section 307. Receptacle openings should be reachable by adults and children. Children's reach ranges should comply with Section 308.4.

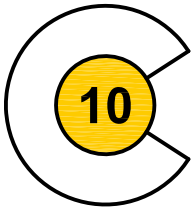
906.4 Operable Parts. Operable parts should comply with Section 309, with one hand operation without requiring tight grasping pinching or twisting of the wrist. Receptacle should have easy to use lids. Consider top, vertical or sloped front loading operation. Consider automatic operation.

906.5 Locations. Locate on smooth level surfaces to prevent tipping. Locate throughout a facility so that receptacles are within short distances. Provide in lobbies, intersections, restrooms and other amenities, adjacent to any concession that will generate waste, rest areas or places that people may eat, etc. Proper placement and adequate receptacles will avoid carrying heavy or bulky items long distances.

906.6 Surface Characteristics. Consider surface characteristics complying with Section 705 and Section 307.6 to help people with low vision identify the location of the receptacles.

906.7 Signage. Provide pictograms complying with Section 703.5, tactile signage complying with Section 703.3 and emergency assistance alarm complying with Section 702. Signage should identify room, each receptacle, operation and information regarding recycling.

906.8 Trash/Recycling Rooms. Provide a turning space complying with Section 304. Door should comply with Section 404 and swing out to avoid any potential obstructions or accidental entrapment within the room. Provide a clear floor space for forward or parallel approach complying with Section 305 adjacent to trash chute and receptacles. Provide receptacle complying with Section 906. Provide ventilation, general and task lighting.



Dwelling and Sleeping Units

1000 Introduction. Chapter 10 is a book within the book, containing 30 sections and over 100 subsections. It includes: entry, routes, level changes, surfaces, doors, storage, vertical circulation, laundry areas, toilet and bathing facilities, windows, kitchens, bedrooms, living rooms, garages and other types of spaces, landscape elements, communication features, safety systems and visitability. Dwelling and sleeping units primarily affect Institutional Group I and Residential Group R (see *2008 NYCBC*, Chapter 3, Sections 308 and 310) that includes the use of a building or structure or a portion thereof, for dwelling or sleeping purposes.

An inclusive unit should accommodate the various changing needs and preferences of the greatest range of occupants. It should be safe, intuitive, multisensory, secure, flexible and non-destructively modifiable. Adaptability includes: pre-finished surfaces that may be exposed later; components that can be easily added, deleted or expanded; adjustable fixtures; adjustable storage; and multipurpose elements (e.g. bathing compartment). Children's changing needs and preferences should be accommodated. Provide childproofing for young children. Elements may need to be modified as children grow, then converted back when they are older. Kitchen counter tops may need to be higher or lower. Multiple height surfaces may be preferred for working at various positions. Space beneath elements may be required for sitting. Toilet and bathroom facilities should provide a variety of choices for bathing and toileting, seating, grooming, dressing and recreation (e.g saunas and steam rooms). Landscape elements should be treated with the same flexibility as interior elements.

Entrances should comfortably accommodate adult and child occupants and visitors. One should be able to use the entry unassisted and securely. Recommendations address entry landings, door clearances, stairs, ramps and lifts. Safety and security elements are included (e.g. dual height peepholes), communication features (e.g. intercom, annunciators, CCTV) and mailboxes. Weather protection is important. An ice melt system should be considered in critical locations subject to snow and ice accumulation.

Adequate clearance and maneuverability is provided for routes, based on a single user width. Door swing conflicts, turning spaces and reinforcement are addressed. Raised and sunken areas are examined because design options should not be restricted to one level. Elevation changes are not the problem; it is how they are navigated.

Vertical circulation choices are examined: elevators, LULA's, residential elevators, enclosed and unenclosed vertical platform lifts, inclined platform lifts, stairlifts, as well as, maximum size, speed and height limitations. Practicality is critical for mechanical solutions. There are reasonable and cost effective solutions but there are trade-offs regarding the choices. It is not reasonable or suggested to consider a standard elevator, unless one owns a large luxury multiple level unit. But, an adaptable enclosed platform lift is something that a lot of people can afford and use.

Ramps are effective for navigating small elevation differences, but they become problematic with length. It may be impractical to have a significant run length within a unit. A viable solution may be a hall-ramp which is an inclined hallway. Provide intermediate landings for long ramp runs, turns, and door maneuvering clearances. Pocket doors may be advantageous. Lifts should be considered when there are no other viable solutions or preferred by occupant.

Within the bathroom(s), an inclusive bathing compartment is recommended. A personal assistance alarm system for safety and security should be hard-wired into the unit for current or future use. Bidets are encouraged to enhance hygiene. Seating, work surfaces and other features make a bathroom more usable and comfortable. Children's changing needs and preferences should be accommodated.

Kitchen configuration, work surfaces, sinks, storage, trash and recycling, appliances, windows, ventilation, furniture, office area, seating, lighting and some electronic features are covered. Cabinetry is modular with a wide range of options. Multiple kitchen functions are addressed, such as, food preparation, serving, eating, family activities, work, study, storage, and entertainment.

Bedrooms, alternate sleeping accommodations, living rooms, dining rooms, dens, home offices, multipurpose rooms and spaces, basements, attics, utility rooms, balconies, decks, lofts, garages, and general storage are covered.

Landscape elements are treated similar to interior elements. Elements include: route, seating, containers, water supply, storage, operable parts, drainage, tree grates, pools, fencing, garden areas with raised and below grade planting beds, cooking, and emergency assistance alarms. Consider hydroponic gardening. Flexibility of these water systems accommodates individual needs and preferences. Height, reach ranges and clearances can be adjusted to provide direct access to plant material, lighting and controls from seated and standing positions. Decks consist of route, circulation, seating, water supply, cooking, storage, operable parts, and drainage.

Communication features include a variety of components: alarm systems comprised of unit detectors, building system tie-in and visible notification appliances. Primary entrances may include: notification, visual identification, vision lites, CCTV, voice communications, peepholes, public or common use interface and closed-circuit communication systems. Additional features include: detectable surfaces and warnings, intercom, phone, emergency assistance alarm, fire, electrical, water safety, lighting, HVAC, and soundproofing.

Visitability is met and inclusive by complying with the recommendations of Section 1030. Some background and a brief description of the covered dwelling units are provided. The following are addressed: primary functions, multi-level units, entrance, route, interior stairs, interior doors, operable parts, habitable space, bathroom, clear floor space, sink and toilet, reinforcement, kitchen area, storage and windows.

1001 General

1001.1 Scoping. The provisions of Chapter 10 should apply where recommended by the scoping provisions adopted by the administrative authority.

1001.1 Advisory. The key to a truly inclusive unit is that it can adapt to the occupants. It should providing a comfortable, safe, secure environment. For many their dwelling unit is their sanctuary. It should be a place that is intuitive, without obstacles and accommodates the greatest range of users. Adaptable features should be fluently integrated. Accommodating the occupant(s) should be simply to accomplish, without causing damage to the surfaces and materials. Each occupant has their own requirements and preferences that change over time.

1002 Entrance(s). The entrance(s) should be on a route complying with Section 402, from public and common areas. Entrances and routes should not contain steps, but may be supplemental. Consider common spaces that may feed multiple entrances to address elevation changes and to reduce complexity of numerous routes. Doors should comply with Section 404. Consider automatic operation or provide pre-wired electrical supply at the door frame for future installation of automatic door opener. Provide automatic lighting with motion detector actuation for hands free operation. Higher lighting level emphasizes location and helps those with reduced visual abilities. Use shielded light sources to avoid direct visual exposure to light source. Provide seating (and hooks) for waiting, resting and placing items. Entrances should comply with Section 1025.5 and should not be to a bedroom. Communication features should be provided at the unit primary entrance complying with Section 1025.5.

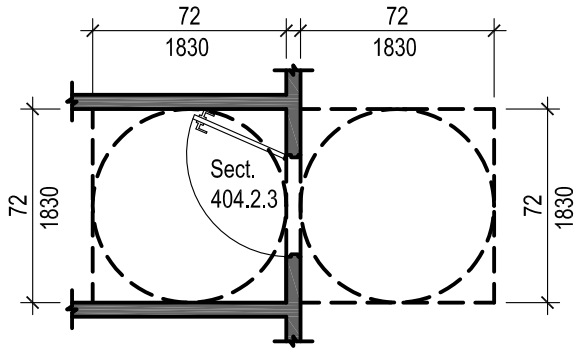


Fig. 1002
Entrance

1002.1 Exterior Entrances. Doors and doorways should comply with Section 404. Exterior entrances should include annunciator, intercom, CCTV or other two-way communication system complying with Section 1025.5, shade and weather protection, ice melt system in entry landing and adequate lighting. Landing should provide a turning space complying with Section 304. Doors should not swing into the exterior turning space. Doorways adjacent to ramp landing should comply with Section 405.7. In addition, the entry door should contain dual height peepholes with a 200 degree direct view optical lens with a minimum 1 inch viewing area or glazing complying with Section 404.2.10. The upper peephole should be placed at 62 - 65 inches (1575 -1650 mm) and the lower peephole should be placed 46 - 48 inches (1170 - 1220 mm) above the floor. Thresholds should comply with Section 404.2.4.2.

1002.2 Interior Entrances. Interior entrances include public hall entry to a unit. Doors and doorways should comply with Section 404. Interior entrances should include annunciator, intercom, CCTV, or other two-way communication systems and comply with Section 1025.5. Provide a turning space complying with Section 304. Doors should not swing into this turning space. Doorways adjacent to a ramp landing should comply with Section 405.7. In addition, the entry door should contain dual height peepholes or glazing complying with Section 404.2.10. The upper peephole should be placed at 62 - 65 inches (1575 -1650 mm) and the lower peephole should be placed 46 - 48 inches (1170 - 1220 mm) above the floor. Doors should comply with Section 404. Thresholds should comply with Section 404.2.4.1.

1002.3 Entrance Vestibules and Foyers. If provided, entrance vestibules and foyers should provide door maneuvering clearance complying with Section 404.2.3. Door may be centered and may swing into the maneuvering clearance. Provide greater than 90 degree swing to avoid or limit conflict with the turning circle within the maneuvering clearance. Doors should comply with Section 404. Vestibule or foyer containing two doors in series should comply with Section 404.2.5. Provide a closet within entry vestibule or foyer, if space permits or within close proximity. Door swings should not overlap or conflict with each other.

1002.3 Advisory. Locate a closet so that it becomes part of the intuitive sequence of entering a unit. Closets are not just for clothes and may provide storage for mobility devices, baby strollers or used for a variety of other purposes.

1002.4 Mail Boxes. Mail boxes or slots provided at the entrance should comply with Section 309. Mail box installation should not conflict with US Postal Service requirements.

1002.4.1 Ganged Mailboxes. Ganged Mailboxes should provide a clear floor space positioned for a parallel approach and comply with Section 307, Section 308 and Section 309.

1002.4.2 Mail Rooms. Mail rooms should comply with Section 307, Section 308 and Section 309. The distance between opposing mail boxes should be 72 inch (1830 mm) minimum.

1003 Route. Routes within units should comply with Section 1003, Section 302 and Section 303.

1003.1 Location. At least one route should connect all spaces and elements that are part of the unit, including (if provided) finished attic, basement, and garage. Where only one route is provided, it should not pass through kitchens, bathrooms and toilet rooms, closets and similar spaces. Routes should be accomplished through hallways, but due to some types of units with open floor plans (e.g. lofts), the route may have to pass through rooms or spaces.

1003.1 Advisory. If the route must pass through a room, the design should intuitively direct the circulation toward one side of the space. This may be accomplished by functions, door locations, amenities, and furniture placement. Open floor plans (e.g. converted lofts), may be easier to navigate and more usable for some, than a hallway.

1003.2 Turning Space. All rooms, spaces and dead-ends should be provided with a turning space complying with Section 304.

1003.2 Advisory. The turning space is typically required at the interior side of room doors as per Section 1005 (door swinging into room). This does not eliminate all circulation problems. If the circulation pattern within the room creates a dead-end, a turning space should be provided at that location. This could be simply resolved in many situations by repositioning furniture.

1003.3 Components. Routes should consist of one or more of the following elements: walking surfaces with a slope not steeper than 1:20, ramps, elevators, limited use limited application (LULA) elevators, platform lifts and stair lifts. Stairs should not be part of the primary route and are considered supplemental to the route. Stairs should comply with Section 504.

1003.4 Clear Width. Route width should be 48 inches (1220 mm) clear minimum.

1003.4 Advisory.
1. The 48 inches should be sufficient to make a turn into a room. This is considerably less than the 72 inch width specified in Section 403.5 for practical reasons. The wider route is appropriate for institutional and commercial applications. The 48 inches should provide enough maneuvering clearance for mobility devices, as well as addressing the range of user scenarios.
2. The 72 inch maneuvering clearance, only on the swing side of doors as per Section 404.2.3 should be used. Doors should swing into rooms to avoid triggering the increased maneuvering clearance in the hallways . Maneuvering clearance must not fall below *ANSI A117.1-2003* Section 404.2.3.
3. Maneuvering clearance at doors affects the width of the hallway. It is generally more practical to make the hallway a continuous width rather than recessing for the extra maneuvering clearance at each door. 48 inches should accommodate minimum code maneuvering clearances for doors swinging into rooms. Front approach/pull side; and hinge approach/pull side should comply with *ANSI A117.1-2003*, Fig.404.2.3.

1003.4.1 Circulation Width. Provide a 48 inch (1220 mm) wide route width within a room if the unit route is required to run through the room. Provide a 48 inch (1220 mm) wide route around or through furniture arrangement as needed.

1003.4.2 Stairs. Stairs are supplemental to the inclusive primary route and should comply with Section 504.

EXCEPTION: Stairs within a unit should be 36 inches (915 mm) to 42 inches (1070 mm) minimum in width.

1003.4.2 Advisory. The stair width is not clear width. Providing a 42-inch wide stair will allow modification of the handrail projection into the width to accommodate the needs and preferences of the occupant(s). For instance, if a short elderly person may require the use of two handrails spaced close together, this can be accommodated. If the occupants require the installation of a stair lift, the 42 inches is more accommodating. The larger stair also provides more clearance for manual mobility devices and for handling bulky items.

1003.5 Reinforcement. Reinforcement should be provided for adaptable installation of handrails complying with Section 505, along entire route as well as the requirements for specific locations within the unit, including bathrooms.

1003.5 Advisory. Some may wish to limit reinforcement to just typical areas required by code such as bathrooms, but if one considers the very elderly for example, with diminished mobility, grab bars may be necessary throughout the unit or where critical for support and safety.

1003.6 Level Changes within a Floor. Level changes within a floor should be accessed by ramp complying with Section 405. Stairs are supplemental to a ramp installation. A lift and stair are only suggested if the room or space cannot be configured to accommodate a ramp assembly. Level changes for new construction in NYC Type B units should at least comply with the *2008 NYCBC*, Section 1107.2.6 regarding raised or sunken floor area in R-2 occupancy.

EXCEPTION: Dwelling unit ramps may comply with *ANSI A117.1-2003*, Section 405 since the *IDG* in this respect addresses larger scale buildings and is excessive for dwelling units. Ramp slope may be 1:12 minimum and a landing may be the width of the ramp and 60 inches in length. A change in direction should be accomplished with a 72-inch turning circle complying with Section 304 and Section 405.7.

1003.6 Advisory. Elevation changes within the dwelling unit are discouraged, but are not restricted since they may be necessary to address existing conditions (e.g. in a warehouse, commercial or industrial space, converted to dwellings). Renovation of the unit may include relocation or addition of a bathroom requiring above floor plate waste lines. This may require raised areas within the unit. Elevation changes in themselves are not a problem - it is how they are navigated. Inclusive design should not narrowly limit design options. A properly designed route should provide the means to make the elevation change easily and safely by the widest range of occupants.

1003.6.1 Sunken Areas. Route within the room containing the sunken area should comply with recommendations in Section 1003.6. Provide a route within the room that connects the means of accessing the sunken area. Provide adequate circulation adjacent to one or more sides above the sunken area at the floor plate elevation. Dead ends should be provided with a turning circle complying with Section 304. Elevation drop-offs must be protected with a wall, low partition, a curb, railing or other means to prevent a fall and comply with Section 302.9. Sunken areas should be adaptable so that they may be in-filled, if so desired. All components such as a fireplace in a living room, receptacles, etc. should be raised so they are usable with an in-filled floor. Adaptability should be included in the construction documents with all necessary details and clearly labeled for an occupant in the future to in-fill the sunken space.

1003.6.2 Raised Areas Route. Raised area route within a room should comply with recommendations in Section 1003.6. Circulation within the room containing the raised area should comply with route requirements in Section 1003. Provide a route within the room that connects to the means to access the raised area.

1003.6.3 Elevation Changes Along Route. Elevation changes along the route may be accommodated with a ramped hallway. Hallways with ramped floor should contain grab bar reinforcement. Ramp segments should not exceed a vertical rise of 30 inches. Provide landings.

1003.7 Lighting. Provide adjustable general lighting and task lighting where necessary. Provide higher levels of lighting where there are potential hazards, such as level changes, entry and landing areas.

1004 Walking Surfaces. Walking surfaces should comply with Section 403.

1005 Doors and Doorways. Doors should comply with Section 404. Doors should swing into rooms. Maneuvering clearance is only required on the swing side of the door (both sides for 2-way swinging doors) provided that the hallway width is 48 inches minimum complying with Section 1003.4 and *A117.1-2003* Section 404. Consider automatic operation or pre-wired electrical supply at the door frames for future installation of automatic door openers.

EXCEPTIONS:

1. Passage doors swinging into a hallway should be provided with maneuvering clearance on both sides of the door complying with Section 404.
2. Maneuvering clearances complying with Section 404 are not required at closet doors.
3. Bathroom doors should comply with Section 1011.2.

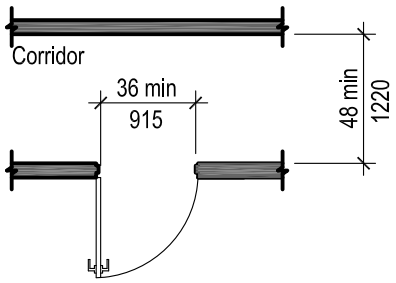


Fig.1005
Doors and Doorways

1005.1 Closets. Closet doors may swing into the route but maneuvering clearances should comply with *ANSI A117.1-2003*, Section 404.2.3. Pocket doors are suggested especially for hinge approach, pull side, to avoid widening hall to meet legal requirement [*A117.1-2003* Fig. 404.2.3.1 (c) & (d)].

1005.1.1 Adaptable Walk-in Closet. Walk-in closets should be adaptable and provided with a clear floor space complying with Section 305.3. The lower portion of the closet should contain removable storage, to provide if needed, a turning space complying with Section 304 with knee and toe clearances complying with Section 306. Storage may overlap the turning circle but not the clear floor space.

1006 Ramps. Ramps should comply with Section 1003.6. Ramps less than 6 inches in vertical rise do not require handrails but should be provided if needed by occupant. Hallways may be used as ramps and should comply with Section 1003.6.3 Doors that swing into a ramped hallway, should be provided with a landing that complies with Section 404.2.3.

1007 Elevators. Elevators within the dwelling unit should comply with Section 1007.

1007.1 Standard Elevators. Standard elevators within the dwelling unit should comply with A117.1-2003, Section 407.4.

1007.1 Advisory. The inclusive elevator with an 80”x 72” platform, controls, and other components will accommodate the greatest range of occupants, especially people who use a motorized scooter, but this type of installation is excessive for a typical dwelling unit. Use of the *A117.1-2003* minimum requirements is a reasonable compromise for a large luxury dwelling unit that warrants this type of installation.

1007.2 Limted-Use-Limited-Application-Elevators (LULA). LULA within the dwelling unit should comply with Section 408.

EXCEPTION: LULA cabs should provide a clear floor area 42 inches (1067 mm) minimum in width and 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum in depth. Car doors should provide a clear opening width of 36 inches (915 mm). Car door should be positioned at a narrow end of car. Provide reach ranges complying with Section 308 and operable parts complying with Section 309. Provide handrails complying with Section 505.

1007.2 Advisory. A LULA is recommended for installation within a dwelling unit. LULA’s have a 25’ height limitation, typically good for up to three stories. Controls, slow speed and components are less inclusive than a standard elevator. The maximum platform size is 18 square feet. allowing a 60”x 42” platform. Mechanical equipment generally requires less space than a standard elevator installation.

1007.3 Private Residence Elevators. Private residence elevators should comply with Section 409 and *ASME A17.1* listed in Section 105.2.5. Elevator operation should be automatic.

1007.3 Advisory. Private residence elevators should only be considered if a standard elevator, LULA or platform lift are not viable choices. Platform lifts may be used for only two contiguous floors and may be enclosed. A private residence elevator is not limited to two floors, but it has a smaller maximum 15ft^2 platform. This is an increase from the previous maximum 12ft^2 in the old code. The *2008 NYC Building Code* references *Addenda A18.1a-2001*. The 15ft^2 platform allows a 36" x 60" inclusive clear floor space complying with Section 305. This is larger than the legal minimum and addresses various concerns such as maneuvering, accommodates most mobility devices and user with assistant.

1008 Platform Lifts. Platform lifts within the unit should comply with Section 410. Platform lifts may be enclosed in construction having the required 2-hour fire-resistance rating and connecting not more than two contiguous floors complying with the *NYC Building Code* and *ASME A18.1.*

1008 Advisory. Platform lifts can also be used, but not encouraged to navigate level changes within one story only if a ramp is not feasible (see 1003.6). The maximum platform allowed by *ASME/ANSI A18.1*, Section 5.6.5, is 18 sq. ft. This can accommodate up to a 42 x 60 platform. Controls, speed, mechanical requirements (especially for inclined platform lifts) and ease of use are drawbacks. An adaptable enclosed platform lift is an affordable option. Refer to Section 410.1.1.1. This requires two vertically contiguous closets with a removable ceiling/floor assembly. Maximum vertical travel is limited to 10 feet for residences.

1008.1 Vertical Platform Lifts. Vertical platform lifts should comply with Section 410.1.

1008.2 Inclined Platform Lifts. Inclined platform lifts should comply with Section 410 and stairs complying with Section 1003.4.2.

1008.2 Advisory. The width of inclined platform lifts are limited due to the cantilever action of platform and cannot match the width possible in a vertical platform lift. Space required for making turns is also excessive, requiring large landings to accommodate the swing arc of the unit. Refer to the *2008 NYCBC* Section 1009.1, Exception 4 for installations regarding Group R-2 and Group R-3 occupancies.

1008.3 Stairlifts. Stairlifts are not recommended but may supplement the inclusive means. Stairlifts should only be installed on stairs 42 inches (1070 mm) in width minimum complying with Section 504.

1008.3 Advisory. Stairlifts are an economical, relatively simple solution for some people with diminished mobility. It is illegal as a means of accessibility for someone who uses a wheelchair. People who use a wheelchair would have to transfer at the lower and upper landings which may be impossible or extremely difficult and dangerous for some. Refer to the *2008 NYCBC* Section 1009.1, Exception 4 for Group R-2 & R-3 occupancies.

1009 Operable Parts. All operable parts should comply with Section 309. Consider the use of visual, tactile and auditory characteristics complying with Sections 309.6, 309.7 and 309.8.

1009 Advisory. Some components such as manual ceiling or upper wall HVAC diffusers, may not comply because they are mounted beyond the reach ranges of Section 308. Consider automatic and remote controls.

1009.1 Childproofing. Childproofing is critical to prevent injury and death and should comply with Section 309.5. See also 309.5 Advisory for U.S Consumer Product Safety Commission and Section 105.3, for additional information.

1010 Laundry Areas. Washing machines and clothes dryers should comply with Section 611. Consider a sloped face washer and dryer. Provide storage, folding work surface, ironing board, movable bins and a bench complying with Sections 902, 903, and 905. Provide multisensory alarms complying with Section 309.9 (e.g., water leakage, gas, open appliance). Provide adjustable general and task lighting. Operable parts should comply with Section 309. Provide local water, gas, electrical shutoffs locations of main shutoffs.

1010 Advisory. Provide components and equipment to perform all laundry tasks. The height of the openings is based on standard reach range requirements. Raised bases for both the washer and dryer are recommended to provide the proper height complying with Section 611. Storage is necessary for dirty laundry, detergents, iron, ancillary equipment. A working surface, if provided may be stationary, rollout or pull out depending on the design and space restrictions. A movable bin is good for transfer of clothing and may act as a hamper. Provide a built-in ironing board or a space for ironing board storage.

1011 Toilet and Bathing Facilities.

1011.1 General. All toilet and bathing facilities should comply with Section 1011, Toilet and bathing fixtures should be in a single toilet/bathing area, such that travel between fixtures does not require travel through other parts of the unit. If only one bathroom is provided, it should not be accessed directly through a living, sleeping area or kitchen. Bathrooms should be intuitive, provide adequate space to maneuver, bath, dry, dress, contain storage, and be easy to maintain with sufficient cleaning clearance around components and avoidance of tight and difficult to reach spaces. Provide cove bases and slip resistant surfaces complying with Section 302. Provide water detection and other alarms complying with Section 309.9. Provide separate HVAC controls within bathroom and a supplemental heat source.

EXCEPTION: Water closets may be in a separate compartment complying with Section 1011.7.

1011.1 Advisory. The space requirements for an inclusive bathroom are larger than a minimum code compliant bathroom. The inclusive bathroom is more usable and should accommodate current and future occupants and their changing needs and addresses visitability as per Section 1030.

1011.2 Doors. Doors should not swing into the clear floor space or clearance of any fixture, comply with Section 1005. Door maneuvering clearances are not required to comply with Section 404.2.3, (72" x 72" inch clear floor space at door) within the bathroom.

1011.2.1 Clear Floor Space. Provide a clear floor space complying with Section 305.3 within the room beyond the arc of the door swing. This space allows a person to position themselves out of the way of the door swing. Show the location of this space on the floor plan.

1011.3 Turning Space. It is recommended to provide a turning space complying with Section 304 within the bathroom.

EXCEPTION: Doors may swing into the turning space provided that a clear floor space complying with Section 1011.2.1 is provided.

1011.3 Advisory. The turning space may appear excessive, but it is an important component of the inclusive bathroom. The 36"x 60" clear floor space beyond the door swing allows the door to swing into the turning space unobstructed. Once the door is closed the full turning space is usable.

1011.3.1 Overlap. Clear floor spaces, clearances at fixtures and turning spaces are permitted to overlap. Mobile storage cabinets complying with Section 1011.12 may be temporarily placed in the clear floor spaces.

1011.3.1 Advisory. Overlaps should not reduce the clearance for any fixture. Mobile storage cabinetry such as under lavatory cabinets allow under cabinet seating space. This flexibility provides increased storage.

1011.4 Wall Reinforcement. Reinforcement should be provided for grab bars for water closets, bathtubs and shower compartment and shower seat complying with Sections 604.5 (toilets grab bars), 1011.10 (bathtubs), 608.3 (shower) and 608.4 (seats). It is recommended to provide a continuous reinforcement strip throughout the bathroom to provide maximum adaptability. This will make it very easy to install grab bars and other equipment wherever they are needed.

1011.4 Advisory. Reinforcement may be configured many ways including framing and 3/4 inch plywood, ganged studs, 1/8-inch steel plate, etc. Steel plate allows direct installation without notching studs, but attachment may include drilling, tapping and use of sheet metal screws or drilling and use of gimlet point or thread cutting sheet-metal screws. See also Section 1003.5 Advisory.

1011.4.1 Standard Grab Bars. Standard grab bars should be continuous and should comply with Section 609.

EXCEPTION: A space between the horizontal and vertical grab bar is legally required to avoid gripping surface obstruction.

1104.4.1 Advisory. The A117.1-2003 Grab bar requirements are provided to define the legal minimums. These sections are included to help confirm that they are met, regardless of the bathroom configuration.

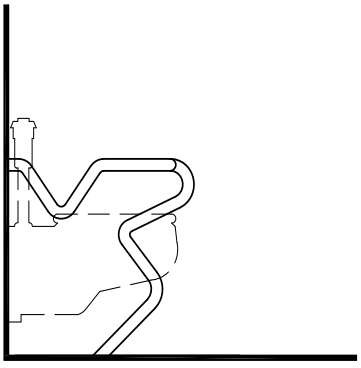
1011.4.2 Minimum Grab Bar Requirements. Minimum requirements must be met to comply with law.

1011.4.2.1 Fixed Side Wall Grab Bars. Fixed sidewall grab bars shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum in length, located 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the rear wall and extending 54 inches (1370 mm) minimum from the rear wall. In addition, a vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be mounted with the bottom of the bar located between 39 inches (990 mm) and 41 inches (1040 mm) above the floor, and with the center line of the bar located between 39 (990 mm) and 41 inches (1040 mm) from the rear wall.

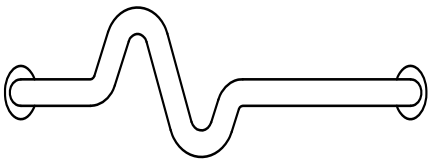
1011.4.2.2 Rear Wall Grab Bars. The rear wall grab bar shall be 36 inches minimum in length, and extend from the centerline of the w.c. 12 inches (305 mm) minimum on the side nearest to the wall, and 24 inches (610 mm) minimum on the transfer side.

1011.4.2.3 Swing-up Grab Bars. Swing-up grab bars should comply with Section 604.5.3.

1011.4.3 Alternate Grab Bar Configurations. Consider alternate grab bar configurations that are anthropometrically based and not just intended to enhance aesthetics. The configuration should allow for more efficient and beneficial movement of its user in regards to their general movement patterns and large muscle groups.[12] Grab bar cross section, spacing, average heights, surface hazards, fittings, installation and structural strength should comply with Section 609.



(a)
Toilet Grab Bar Example



(b)
Bathing Compartment Grab Bar Example

Fig. 1011.4.3
Alternate Grab Bar Example Configurations

1011.4.3 Advisory. The alternate configurations cannot be used in public facilities since they will be in conflict with federal requirements. Dwelling units should accommodate the current occupants. If a unit is adaptable, reinforcement is provided for installation of grab bars as needed. Strictly speaking, grab bars in NYC should be in accordance with *ANSI A117.1-2003,* but some people may find that standard configurations do not address their needs and preferences. Alternate configurations may be a viable option, especially for unit owners. Renters who replace the standard bars with an alternate configuration may have to agree to put the original code compliant set back when they vacate the unit. The codes are meant to help people, not to force them to conform to environments that are unusable or unaccommodating.

1011.5 Lavatories. Lavatories should comply with Section 606. Consider an adjustable height lavatory for those that find conventional fixed units are accommodating. Consider placing dual height lavatories at different heights, or one fixed and the other adjustable. Dual lavatories should comply with Section 1011.7.3.

EXCEPTION: Cabinetry should be permitted under the lavatory, provided that:

a. cabinetry can be removed without removal or replacement of the lavatory; and
b. the floor finish extends under such cabinetry; and
c. the walls behind and surrounding cabinetry are finished: and
d. wheels can be installed to make the unit mobile without alteration to the cabinetry
e. provide handles as needed on the cabinet complying with Section 309.4.
f. exposed pipes and under counter surfaces should comply with Section 606.6.
g. provide local shutoffs and location of the main shutoffs.

12 The description and alternate grab bar configuration examples, Move +Grab = Bar(s), were provided by Pedestrian Studio and INFORMdesign

h. supply and waste lines should be easily replaced with flexible lines for an adjustable height lavatory, if needed.
i. lavatory assembly is easy to replace.
j. wall behind lavatory is reinforced to support wall mounted lavatory assembly if cabinetry is removed.
k. consider push/open spring loaded and automatic open doors, drawers and work surfaces.
l. provide drawers with full-extension locking glides rather than a cabinet, to increase access.

1011.5 Advisory.
1. Finished surfaces are required throughout since the cost and difficulty of matching the materials later will be very difficult. A small quantity of the finish material should be retained for repairs and other modifications.
2. Wheels provided at the time of initial cabinet installation provides any user with the option of placing the cabinet where it suites their needs. The cabinetry must accommodate supply and waste lines.
3. Consider doors in lower cabinetry that open to provide the 36 inch wide clear floor space.

1011.5.1 Faucets. Lavatories faucets should comply with Section 606.4 and where enhanced reach range is desired, should comply with Section 606.5. Provide an emergency temperature sensor that automatically cuts off the hot water supply if temperature exceeds 120 degrees maximum (see Section 608.9). Consider a separate or retractable spray head for washing hair.

1011.5.1 Advisory. Faucets should be easily repositioned to accommodate the needs of the current occupant. This may include relocation to the side of the sink top or side faces or placed on the vertical front face. Control locations traditionally used for range top front controls could be applied to faucet locations. Indicate in the design documents alternative placements. Automatic (hands free) controls are a consideration, but water flow and temperature adjustment may be a problem.

1011.5.2 Lighting. Provide task lighting that exceeds ambient lighting within the lavatory area. See Section 1027 and Section 311.

1011.5.3 Work Surface. Consider a work surface that is part of the lavatory or adjacent to a lavatory that is 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width. Consider a pull-out or push open or automatic work surface similar to Section 1012.3.4. Provide a clear floor space, positioned for a forward approach to the work surface. Knee and toe clearance should comply with Section 306. The clear floor space should be centered on the work surface. The surface should comply with Section 902 and should be 28-34 inches (710-865 mm) above the floor. Provide at least one work surface, preferably automatic.

1011.6 Mirrors. Mirrors should comply with Section 1011.6

1011.6.1 Upper Torso Mirrors. Mirrors with a tilt mechanism located above the lavatories, sinks or counters, should be mounted with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 40 inches (1015 mm) maximum above the floor.

EXCEPTION: if mirror is mounted on a medicine cabinet, it may not be required to tilt, but is suggested.

1011.6.2 Full Length Mirror. Provide a full length mirror in or near the bathroom preferably adjacent to the turning circle. Consider a center mounted tilt mechanism to tile up or down to accommodate the various user heights. Provide a reflecting surface 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in width and 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in height, unobstructed and mounted with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 18 inches (458 mm) above the floor.

1011.7 Water Closet. Water closets should comply with Section 1011.7.

1011.7.1 Location. The water closet should be positioned with the wall to the rear and to one side. The centerline of the water closet should be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the sidewall.

1011.7.2 Clearance. A clearance around the water closet should be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum, measured perpendicular from the side wall, and 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum, measured perpendicular from the rear wall. A mobile storage unit may be temporarily placed in the clearance during use but should be provided with a permanent parking location. The unit is not considered a permitted obstruction.

1011.7.2 Advisory.
1. The clearance is based on the clear floor space in Section 305. This should accommodate a range of mobility device and allows enough space for an assistant and for parking of the device.
2. A side wall may include any type of wall as long as it is structurally sound and is sized and reinforced for the installation of grab bars.
3. A mobile storage unit is recommended since it can be easily relocated to provide the full clearance if required.
4. If placement does not properly address left or right hand preferences equally, it is suggested to provide a swing up grab bar complying with Section 604.5.3. It also provides an ambulatory configuration if needed.

1011.7.3 Overlap. The required clearance around the water closet should be permitted to overlap grab bars, paper dispensers, coat hooks, shelves, accessible routes, clear floor space required at other fixtures, and the wheelchair turning space. No other fixtures or obstructions should be located within the required water closet clearance.

EXCEPTION: A adaptable lavatory complying with Section 1011.5 may be provided on the rear wall 18 inches (455 mm) minimum from the centerline of the water closet. Temporary storage may also be provided. It is recommended to provide a dual lavatory configuration, with the unit adjacent to the w.c., adaptable. If occupant requires the full clear floor space for the water closet, the adaptable lavatory, cabinetry, supply and waste lines should be removable and connections capped. Finish all surfaces.

1011.7.3 Advisory. Allowing a single adaptable lavatory within the w.c. maneuvering clearance, keeps the size and the configuration of the bathroom viable. A double sink arrangement, that is fairly common feature, provides increased flexibility. Elimination of one of the sinks should not be a significant inconvenience, to allow an occupant to utilize the space adjacent to the water closet if not needed.

1011.7.4 Height. The top of the water closet seat should be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the top of the seat.

1011.7.4 Advisory. An automatic adjustable height toilet with manual override would accommodate adults and children. This concept is developing and should be considered. A portable step, if needed, should be provided for young children. Section 604.4 provides a solution if the occupant requires greater height ranges. This may be simple accomplished with a raised seat insert.

1011.7.5 Flush Controls. Consider automatic flush controls complying with Section 604.6 if required by occupant. It is suggested to provide concealed conduit/wiring and junction boxes for future installation if needed or preferred. Provide continuous flow alarm complying with Section 309.9.

1011.7.5 Advisory. The suggested location is more convenient then the conventional tank handle location since the occupant does not need to twist behind to flush the toilet.

1011.7.6 Toilet Tissue Dispenser. Toilet paper dispensers should comply with Section 308 and Section 309.4. Locate the dispenser 7 inches (180 mm) minimum and 9 inches (230 mm) maximum in front of the water closet measured to the centerline of the dispenser. The outlet of the dispenser should be located 19 1/2—30 inches (495 - 760 mm) above the floor and should not be located behind grab bars. A suggested outlet height is 24 inches (610 mm) above the floor.

1011.7.7 Lighting. Consider automatic adjustable ceiling fixture above the water closet and task lighting.

1011.8 Bidet. A bidet is recommend to enhance hygiene and should comply with Section 1011.8. Provide towel rack, soap dish and storage for other toiletries adjacent to the bidet or on the rear wall for rear facing operation units. Consider a continuous flow alarm complying with Section 309.9. Storage area may be a wall recess. Location of rack should comply with Section 1011.17 and storage should comply with Section 308.

EXCEPTION. Controls should comply with Section 309. Controls should be placed in a location similar to the flush controls complying with Section 1011.7.5.

1011.8 Advisory. Bidets or personal hygiene systems (phs) that are integrated with the toilet or the seat are highly recommended for easier improved personal hygiene. This is a much more efficient use of space, instead of a separate bidet fixture with proper maneuvering clearances. Bidet requirements are similar to a water closet.

1011.8.1 Lighting. Provide a ceiling fixture above the bidet.

1011.9 Inclusive Bathing Compartment. Inclusive bathing compartments should comply with Section 608. The compartment is a multiple configuration space that accommodates a variety of user needs and preferences. The space may be an alcove or a designated open area in one corner of the bathroom. Floor surface should be slip resistant and comply with Section 302. A shower may be an integral part of a wet room with a waterproof floor, and drainage.

EXCEPTIONS:

1. Adaptable counter tops and cabinetry should be permitted at the control end of the clearance, provided such counter tops and cabinetry can be removed and the floor finish extends under such cabinetry.
2. Showers may be provided with an adaptable enclosure that may be completely removed if the occupant requires the entire length of opening.

1011.9 Advisory. The bathing compartment exceeds Section 305.7 Alcoves, to provide the maneuvering room to position within a shower. The exceptions are included to allow smaller bathroom configurations. It is important that the bathroom can be easily reconfigured to accommodate the current occupants. The adaptable inclusive bathing compartment allows a bathtub; or a transfer shower, or storage; or various combinations. The control area for each option is different. Lines could be run to locations containing a knock out panel for the various control areas. The alcove may also be used as a changing area. Adaptability is most appropriate for dwelling units since the modifications are necessary to address the needs of the current occupant. All surfaces of the bathing compartment should be fully finished.

1011.9.1 Faucet. Provide controls complying with Section 608.5 and provide a detachable hand shower complying with Section 608.6.

1011.9.2 Grab Bars. Grab bars should comply with Section 608.3 and Section 609. Grab bars are adaptable and are not required to be installed unless needed by the occupant. Provide reinforcement for future installation of grab bars.

1011.9.3 Floor Drainage. Raised thresholds are not recommended. Proper construction including sloping of the floor should accommodate ease of passage through the space.

1011.9.3 Advisory. The surface outside of the shower area should be comprised of waterproof material in case of accidental overspray. An additional bathroom floor drain complying with 1011.19 should be considered for any wet area as a back-up, incase of overflows.

1011.9.4 Enclosure. If the shower compartment is enclosed, the enclosure should be adaptable for easy removal without any damage to any material. Fasteners should be non-corrosive and can be easily extracted. All glass should be tempered shatter resistant glass with the shower door opening out to avoid entrapment.

1011.9.5 Storage. Provide a recessed storage space within the shower for storage of bathing products and toiletries including medical equipment a hook for hanging brushes and/or wash clothes, soap, etc.

1011.9.5.1 Location. Recessed storage space should be located on the back wall below the control area 20 inches (508 mm) minimum above the floor to a maximum of 1 1/2 inches below grab bar.

1011.9.6 Lighting. Provide a water resistant ceiling light fixture within the shower.

1011.10 Supplemental Bathtubs.

1011.10.1 General. Bathtubs are not usable by many people due to safety concerns, entry and exit difficulties and slippage. Refer to *ICC/ANSI A117.1 -2003*, Section 607 for applicable requirements. If a bathtub is used it can supplement the inclusive bathing compartment, or the compartment may be used temporarily for a bathtub. See *IDG*, 607.1 Advisory

1011.10.2 Supplemental Bathtub Door/Wall Openings. Bathtub door/wall openings may allow walk-in or transfer entry for a standard bathtub or a sit-tub vertical unit. Roll-in capability is not typically feasible due to

bathtub maneuvering clearance requirements. Some units may fit within transfer-type shower compartment dimensions and provide another optional use of the bathing compartment space (see *IDG,* 608.1 Advisory). Provide door opening, threshold, built-in seat and maneuvering clearance complying with *ICC/ ANSI A117.1-2003*, Section 608.2.1 Transfer-Type Shower Compartment.

1011.11 Storage. Bathroom storage should comply with Section 1011.11. Storage should be a variable composition of general, compartmentalized and dedicated spaces that accommodates user needs and preferences.

1011.11.1 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space 36 inches (915 mm) wide and 60 inches (1525 mm) long complying with Section 305, positioned for parallel or forward approach, should be provided at each storage facility. Clear floor space may overlap.

1011.11.2 Height. A portion of the storage area of each facility should comply with the reach ranges specified in Section 308.

1011.11.3 Operable Parts. Operable parts on storage areas should comply with Section 309. Hardware should comply with Section 309.4. Provide full-extension locking glides on all drawers. Usability may be increased with either spring loaded or electric motor drive automatic operation for self-opening doors, drawers, movable shelves, pull-out cabinets with adjustable shelves and work surfaces. Manual or automatic 360 degree rotating shelves or offset hinged pull-out shelves for corner and other units can increase access and efficiency. Consider top-hinged doors for upper cabinetry, roll-down shutters, sliding doors and other types of enclosures that reduce the door swing arc obstruction.

1011.11.4 Closets. Permanent closets should be provided as required that include: shelving, clothes rack, compartments, drawers, etc. Comply with 1024. At least 50% of the hanging storage should be no higher than 48 inches (1220 mm). A shelf and pole should comply with Section 308. Consider an adjustable pole height for occupant or multiple poles at different heights. Provide lighting within the closet placed so that contents are illuminated with a switch located immediately outside of closet on latch side complying with Section 404.3.5.1.

1011.11.5 Cabinets. Cabinets should comply with Section 1011.12.2 Hardware should comply with Section 309.4. All edges and outside corners should be eased to prevent hazard. Clear or translucent faces can help locate items.

1011.11.5.1 Medicine Cabinet. Medicine cabinets may be located above the lavatories, sinks or counters with the bottom edge 40 inches (1015 mm) maximum above the floor. Alternate location may be a side wall or return wall. Provide task lighting.

1011.11.5.1 Advisory. The maximum reach range height is 48 inches as per Section 308. Interior shelving above this height will not be usable by some people. Consider a more usable alternate location for the medicine cabinet other than over the sink.

1011.11.5.2 Freestanding Cabinets. Freestanding cabinets should contain shelving complying with Section 308 and a latch if provided complying with Section 309. Fixed freestanding cabinets should not be placed in the clear floor space area. Stable mobile cabinets may be allowed to be placed in the clear floor spaces temporarily.

1011.11.5.2 Advisory. A narrow tall freestanding cabinet is not stable and can easily fall creating an obstruction and a potential entrapment in the room. Therefore, it is suggested that this type of cabinet is not used. The under lavatory mobile cabinet is lower and wider providing better stability.

1011.11.5.3 Recessed Cabinets. Recessed cabinets should contain a clear floor space complying with Section 1011.11.1. It is recommended to recess cabinets into a wall to reduce obstructions.

1011.11.5.3 Advisory. A parallel clear floor space may be provided without having a serious impact on the floor area of the bathroom. A pocket door, sliders or bi-fold doors rather than a single swing door, will reduce the swing arc conflicts.

1011.11.5.4 Pop-Up Cabinets. Consider adaptable pop-up countertop cabinets. Suggested location is adjacent to sink to provide storage for toiletries or as required by occupant.

1011.11.5.5 Work surface. Consider a work surface complying with Section 1011.5.3 I relating to the lavatory or placed in another location within the bathroom.

1011.11.6 Shelves. Shelves for adults and children should comply with Section 308.

1011.11.7 Hamper. Comply with Section 308 Reach ranges and Section 309 Operable Parts. It is recommended to recess the hamper into a wall to reduce obstruction. Pull-out rolling bin is suggested to transport contents to laundry area.

1011.11.8 Trash & Recycling Receptacles. Consider integrated and divided trash & recycling receptacles with pull-out lower cabinetry, removable bins & liner storage.

1011.12 Changing Area. Changing area is recommended if space permits. The roll-in shower may be used as a changing area, but may present a wet/dry conflict. Provide hooks and towel rack complying with Section 1011.17 outside of the shower compartment. Provide seating complying with Section 1011.13. Provide grab bars as necessary.

1011.12 Advisory. In addition to the changing area components listed, some people may need a table, an adjustable height seat or other devices.

1011.12.1 Permanent Seating. Built-in benches and other seating should be provided with unobstructed direct access and complying with Section 903.

1011.12.2 Non-permanent Seating. Provide storage location when not in use.

1011.12.3 Lighting. Provide a light fixture within the changing area and perhaps task lighting.

1011.13 Sauna and Steam Rooms. Provide swing out 36 inch door with view panel and comply with Section 404.2.10, a 36 x 60 inch clear space, transferable seating. Heat Unit should not be located in the clear floor space. Provide adjustable lighting levels, emergency alarm button within the sauna. Controls located on the exterior of sauna and emergency shut off inside the sauna complying with Section 308 and Section 309. Provide smoke alarm in sauna. Provide adjustable lighting controls on the exterior and interior of the sauna. Provide wood grab bars as required.

1011.14 Advisory. A bathroom window is very important since it is typically used to vent the space. If it cannot be placed in a location for manual operation it should be automatic or a supplemental vent should be provided. The controls should be placed in a location for easy access. Use of vents rather then opening the window is especially important during extreme cold or heat to avoid fluctuating room air temperature. Mechanical ventilation for this reason should always be provided. An automatic skylight is recommended where feasible, for increased air circulation and to provide natural light.

1011.14 Windows. Windows should comply with Section 506 and Section 1023. Bathroom should contain a window. If they do not, as per applicable codes, ventilation is required. It is recommended to provide a supplemental ventilation fan with a window to use as an alternative to opening a window during weather extremes of heat or cold.

1011.14.1 Skylights. If provided skylights should be automatic with a manual back-up mechanism and should comply with Section 506.

1011.15 Lighting. Provide general lighting with task lighting around sink, water closet, bidet shower, dressing area and closets. Provide water resistant lighting fixtures within shower and if provided, above the bathtub. Lighting should be non-glare and adjustable.

1011.16 Receptacles, Switches, and Controls, Comply with Section 1009. Provide adequate receptacles around sink, and other locations where hair dryers, electric razors and other electronic appliances will be used. Consider timers and automatic shut-off for electronic appliances, but provide standard receptacles for recharging small appliances. Provide multiple switch locations including: adjacent to door on latch side both inside and outside bathroom, adjacent to sink, water closet, shower and closets.

1011.16.1 Controls. Provide controls for heating and ventilation and for a sauna, whirlpool, steam unit, fan, and should comply with Section 309.

1011.16.2 Supplemental Heating. A separate heat source is suggested within the bathroom to supplement the unit's heating system. Controls should be located within the bathroom and include timer, thermostat and emergency shut-off complying with Section 309. Refer to

applicable electrical and plumbing codes for requirements. Units may include heat lamp, heat/fan/light unit, radiant floor system, wall heaters, toe kick heaters, etc.

1011.16.2 Advisory. Consider providing the bathroom with a dedicated zone within the unit's HVAC system.

1011.16.3 Blow Dryer. Consider providing a fixed wall mounted blow drier for body drying in lieu of a towel. Provide timers and automatic shutoffs for all equipment.

1011.16.3 Advisory. In commercial and institutional rest rooms, fixed hand dryers are often used for sanitary and maintenance reasons. This type of unit when used in a dwelling unit provides full body drying and hands free hair drying, for those with diminished dexterity and other reasons.

1011.17 Towel Racks and Hooks. Towel racks and hooks should comply with Section 308 Reach Ranges. Locate in various locations in the bathroom including lavatory, shower/bathtub, bidet, back of entry door or wherever it is most convenient for the current occupant. Hardware should comply with Section 309.4.

1011.18 Communication Elements and Features. Provide wiring for emergency assistance alarm complying with Section 702.2, and other mutlisensory alarms complying with Section 309.9. Provide alarm locations on floor plans and install wiring and boxes at these locations for current or future installation. Alarms should be tied into a central system where possible. Consider installation of a hard-wired telephone or other two-way communication device.

1011.19 Flooring. Flooring should be slip resistant comply with Section 302.

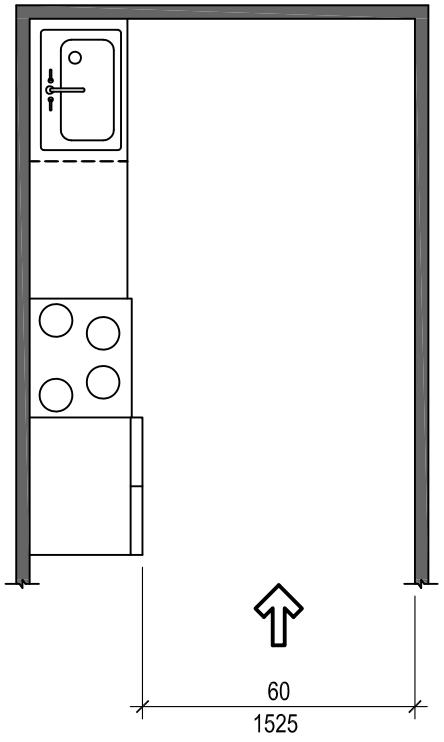
1011.19.1 Floor Drainage. Consider sloping entire floor of the bathroom to a central floor drain with automatic trap primer. This will prevent an accumulation of water reducing slip hazard.

1011.19.1 Advisory. It is recommended to provide a central floor drain in addition to the curbless shower drain as an overflow back-up.

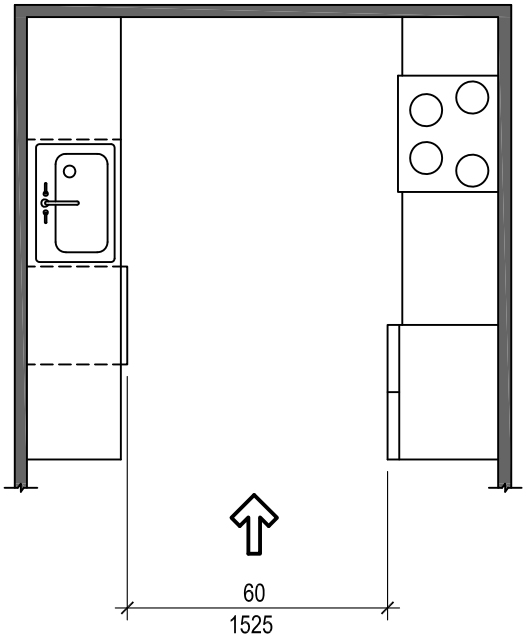
1012 Kitchens. Kitchens should comply with Section 1012.

1012.1 Clearance. Clearance complying with Section 1012.1.1 should be provided.

1012.1.1 Galley Kitchen. Clearance between all opposing base cabinets, counter tops, appliances, or walls within the kitchen work areas should be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum. A turning space complying with Section 304 should be considered. The turning space may be part of the under counter space.



(a)



(b)

Fig. 1012.1.1
Galley Kitchen Clearance

1012.1.2 U-Shaped Kitchens. In kitchens with counters, appliances, or cabinets on three contiguous sides, clearance between all opposing base cabinets, countertops, appliances, or walls within kitchen work areas should be 72 inches (1830 mm) minimum.

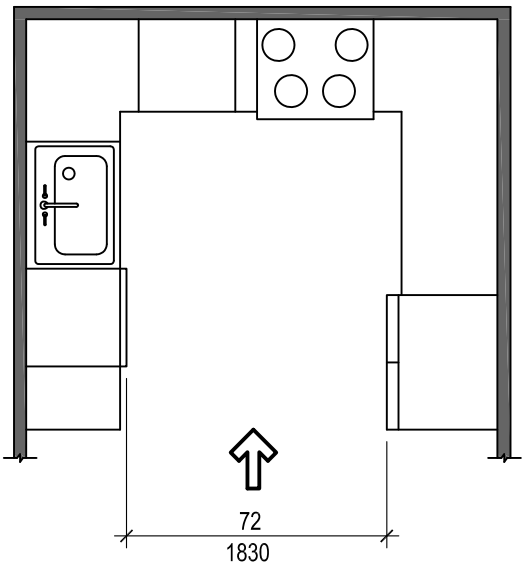


Fig. 1012.1.2
U-Shaped Kitchen Clearance

1012.1.3 Route. Routes should not be located through the kitchen.

1012.1.3 Advisory. Locating a route through a kitchen is allowed by the NYC code but is not recommended because of potential conflicts with the intuitive flow of the kitchen and obstructions such as an open oven or dishwasher door. Avoid any conflicts with a typical work triangle between the refrigerator, cooking area and sink. Routes should comply with Section 1003.

1012.2 Clear Floor Space. Clear floor space required by Sections 1012.3 through 1012.6 should comply with Section 305.

1012.2.1 Floor Surface. Floor surfaces should be non-gloss and comply with Section 302.

1012.3 Work Surfaces. Provide work surfaces 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width complying with Section 1012.3. Consider providing heat resistant surfaces as needed. Provide task lighting.

1012.3 Advisory. Work surfaces provide a range of uses including: temporary material rest areas, transfer areas or a logical work station that is used as part of the food preparation process. Strategically placed work surfaces will increase safety, especially for handling hot items, and usability of the appliance. Provide a pull-out work surface under or adjacent to appliances. Hardware should comply with Section 309.4 Provide heat resistant transfer surfaces in locations that will accommodate hot food, pans, etc.

1012.3.1 Clear Floor Space. An adaptable clear floor space, positioned for a forward and parallel approach to the work surface, should be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 should be adaptable. The clear floor space should be centered on the work surface.

EXCEPTION: Cabinetry may be provided under the work surface, provided that:

a. the cabinet can be removed without removal or replacement of the work surface
b. the floor finish extends under such cabinetry, and
c. the walls behind the surrounding cabinetry are finished.
d. cabinets should be faced on all sides for use as mobile storage/work surface.

1012.3.2 Height. The work surface should comply with Section 902 and be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the floor. Provide at least one work surface no higher than the maximum.

EXCEPTION: A counter that is adjustable to provide a work surface at variable heights 28 inches (712 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor, or that can be relocated within that range without cutting the counter or damaging adjacent cabinets, walls, doors, and structural elements is recommended.

1012.3.3 Countertops. Provide countertops that are 25-inches (635 mm) maximum in depth. Provide a raised edge to contain spills and a backsplash that is either integral with the wall or attached to countertop. Consider heat resistant material for holding and transfer of hot items. There should be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under the exposed portions of counters.

1012.3.4 Pull-out Work Surfaces. Pullout work surfaces should comply with Section 902 and should be drawer type units with hardware complying with Section 309. Exposed work surface should be 36 inches (915 mm) in width and 18 inches minimum in depth. Heavy duty drawer slides should be used to permit loading of the full depth of the work surface. Provide pullout work surfaces for appliance, and logically distributed throughout kitchen at various heights complying with Section 1012.3.2. Usability may be increased with either push/open spring loaded or electronic motor drive automatic operation. Provide task lighting.

1012.3.4 Advisory. Pull-out work surfaces provide a temporary shelf that can be used in many ways: a work station for food preparation and cooking process; a resting surface for a hot item coming out of the oven; and as a transfer station to the countertop. Avoid use conflicts and locate close to appliances and based on intuitive use patterns.

1012.3.5 Mobile Work Surfaces. Mobile work surfaces are recommended. This may include the top surface of a mobile cabinet, a rolling table, other type of mobile unit. Provide a variety of heights complying with Section 1012.3.2. Mobile units must be stable and tilt resistant.

1012.4 Sink. Sinks should comply with Section 1012.4. Provide at least a 36-inch (915 mm) clear countertop space on one side of the sink. Sinks heights may be fixed and adaptable to accommodate an automatically adjustable sink if needed. One section of the counter should move with the sink to provide a work surface. Avoid conflict with dishwasher located adjacent to sink. Consider a supplemental sink in another location. Provide hot water limiter (see Section 608.9). Consider water leak detection complying with Section 309.9. Provide local water supply shutoffs and signage providing location of the main water supply shutoffs. Provide task lighting.

1012.4 Advisory. Consider an automatic adjustable height sink to accommodate children and others that may require this feature. A manual override should be included as back-up in case of automatic mechanism failure. Water supply and waste connections need to be flexible.

1012.4.1 Clear Floor Space. An adaptable clear floor space, positioned for a forward approach to the sink should be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 should be provided. The clear floor space should be centered on the sink bowl. Doors may enclose the space provided they do not obstruct the space when open.

EXCEPTIONS: Cabinetry should be permitted to be added under the sink, provided:

a. the cabinetry can be removed without removal or replacement of the sink and sink is supported independently of the cabinetry
b. the floor finish extends under such cabinetry, and
c. the walls behind and surrounding cabinetry are finished.
d. wheels can be installed to make the unit mobile without alteration to the cabinetry
e. handrails or handles for maneuvering are provided as required by the occupant on the cabinet complying with Section 505.

1012.4.2 Height. The front of one sink should be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the higher of the rim or counter surface. The adjustable height range should be 28 inches (710 mm) minimum and 34 inches (865 mm) maximum with knee clearance complying with Section 306.

1012.4.2 Advisory. For tall people that have difficulty bending or those people that prefer raised arm positions, an adjustable height sink that exceeds the 34 inches would be advantageous.

1012.4.2.1 Adaptable Surfaces. One section of the counter should move with the sink to provide a work surface. Provide a countertop seam with inside finished faces on each side of the sink. Exposed sides of adjacent base cabinets if provided should be finished. The height range should be provided without cutting the counter or damaging adjacent cabinets, walls, doors and structural elements. Provide task lighting.

1012.4.2.1 Advisory. Finished surfaces are required since the cost and difficulty of matching the materials later may not be feasible. A small quantity of the finish material should be retained for repairs and other modifications.

1012.4.3 Exposed Pipes and Under Counter Surfaces. Exposed pipes and under counter surfaces should comply with Section 606.6. Flexible supply and waste lines will be required if an adjustable sink is used. Locate exposed pipes as close to the wall as possible to increase knee clearance and allow additional space for insulation. Water supply and drain pipes under sinks should be insulated or otherwise configured to protect against contact. Provide local shutoffs and location of main shutoffs. Eliminate sharp or abrasive surfaces under the sinks. Protection from exposed pipes may be provided by the use of finished panel enclosures.

1012.4.3 Advisory. Faucets should be easily repositioned to accommodate the needs of the current occupant. This may include placement to the side of the sink, top or side faces or even on the vertical front face. Consider providing hole plugs matching the surrounding material. Indicate in the design documents alternative placements. Also, consider automatic (hands free) controls.

1012.4.4 Accessories. Accessories in the sink area may include instant hot water dispensers, filter equipment, soap dispenser, retractable spray, and drain control. Provide locations for these items. Provide a soap dispenser that is easy to use and refill. It is recommended to provide filler plugs matching the countertop material for item relocation. Locate accessories for short reach for easy access for a seated occupant, preferably to the side of the sink; maintain knee clearance requirements.

1012.4.4 Advisory. Caution should be exercised when considering the location of the instant hot water dispenser, since a side location may be easily reached by children creating a hazard.

1012.4.5 Faucets. Faucets should comply with Section 606.5 and easily replaceable. Single lever controls are simply and easy to us. Provide a retractable spray for both washing and to be used as a means to fill pots with water. Consider a pot filler faucet for improved ease. Consider faucets with retractable heads. Provide high temperature cut-off complying with 608.9. Provide local shutoffs and main location.

1012.5 Kitchen Storage. Kitchen storage should comply with Section 1012.5. Storage should comprise general, compartmentalized and dedicated spaces that accommodate user needs and preferences.

1012.5.1 General Storage. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the kitchen cabinets should be provided. 50% of the storage area in the cabinets should comply with Section 905. Provide the greatest variety of storage facilities within the required reach ranges that includes upper and lower cabinets, drawers and roll out spaces, bins, racks, adjustable/removable shelves, swing out/roll-out work surfaces, carousels, bins, racks, dividers; and additional item specific storage (e.g. eating utensils, glasses, pots and pans). Non-glare finishes are recommended. Operable parts for storage should comply with Section 309. Hardware should comply with Section 309.4. Provide full extension locking glides on drawers. Usability may be increased with push/open or electronic motor automatic operation for self opening doors, drawers, movable shelves and work surfaces. Manual & automatic 360 degree rotating shelves & offset hinged pullout shelves for corner and other units can increase access and efficiency. Consider topped hinged doors for upper cabinetry, rolldown shutters, sliding doors and other types of enclosures that reduce the door swing arc obstruction. Clear or translucent faces can help to locate items.

1012.5.1 Advisory. To supplement traditional wall cabinet storage, operable manual or automatic storage units can allow access to storage below and above reach ranges while allowing the occupant to retrieve an item at their most convenient height. Tall cabinets are still viable when fitted with a mechanical system.

1012.5.1.1 Upper Cabinets. Upper cabinets should be provided with at least one shelf with that can be accessed by the maximum reach range of 48 inches in height complying with Section 308. Upper cabinets should be removable. Any potentially exposed face should be finished. Hardware should comply with Section 309.4 Consider manual pull down or automatic storage. Cabinet doors should be easy to remove. Provide under cabinet lighting.

1012.5.1.1 Advisory. For some occupants, the upper cabinetry is useless since they will not be able to access the shelves above the 48-inch reach range. This may lead the occupant to install more lower cabinets or tall units with mechanized shelves. It is not recommended to install a full height vertical storage unit that divides countertop or creates an obstruction to the work triangle or intuitive functioning of the kitchen.

1012.5.1.2 Lower Cabinets. Lower cabinets should be removable and should be easily converted into a mobile unit and provided with work surfaces complying with Section 1012.3.4. and Section 1012.3.5. A kick plate 9-inches (230 mm) minimum in height is recommended. Any potentially exposed face should be finished. Mobile units should have all faces finished. Hardware should comply with Section 309.4. Drawer units are recommended to increase access. Drawer slides should be full extension type. Consider push/open or automatic drawers, doors and work surfaces. Provide hinges that allow doors to swing a full 180 degrees so that the doors when open can be flush with the face of the cabinet and will not obstruct route. Adaptability of the cabinetry includes the following:

a. each cabinet can be removed without removal or replacement of the counter and adjacent cabinets.
b. the floor finish extends under cabinetry.
c. the walls behind and surrounding cabinetry are finished.
d. wheels can be installed to make the unit mobile with minimal alteration to the cabinetry. Mobile units should be stable and tip resistant.
e. provide grips, handles or handrails if needed on the cabinetry complying with Section 505.
f. provide at least one adaptable section of countertop capable of being lowered to a minimum of 28” aff. Provide seam in the countertop with both inside faces finished to match front face material.
g. corner cabinets may be more functional by providing a rotating or offset hinged adjustable storage shelves or beveled corner with feature to accept drawers.
h. provide /storage area with adjustable height components.
i. provide a support for the end of counter that is finished and wide enough to support the countertop and is aesthetically appropriate if the base cabinet is removed.
j. under counter clear space may be enclosed with doors for aesthetic reasons, but must be easily operable and comply with Section 309.4.
k. cabinet doors should be easy to remove providing open storage if needed.
l. consider drawers rather than doors for easy access.

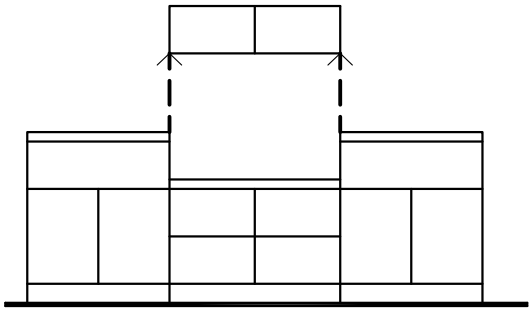


Fig. 1012.5.1.2
Example of Adaptable Lower Cabinets

1012.5.1.2 Advisory. The lower cabinets should be adaptable where viable to provide a variety of lower fixed work surfaces at various locations to accommodate the occupant. The alternate solution is to provide fixed location pull out work surface complying with Section 1012.3.4.

1012.5.1.2.1 Islands. Kitchen islands should comply with Section 1012.5.1.2. Clearance around island should not conflict with Section 1012.1.1. and Section 1012.1.2 Route around island should be 48 inches (1220 mm) clear minimum. Island should be adaptable and the floor finished under the island if an occupant requires removal. Island should be located to avoid conflicts with traffic flow. Consider multiple counter heights or adjustable height work surface to accommodate children complying with Section 308.4. Provide work surfaces complying with Section 1012.3.

1012.5.1.2.1 Advisory. Consider installation of a small sink and range top. An island may be configured to also act as a work desk and office area. Consider an under counter small refrigerator and other components that may allow the island to supplement and provide alternate height and user scenarios. Lower surfaces will address children’s needs.

1012.5.2 Pantry. Pantry, if provided, should comply with Section 1024. Provide shallow shelves with a maximum depth of 12 inches (305 mm) to avoid hard to reach items and roll-out shelves when possible. Component storage should also comply with Section 1012.5. Pantry may be closet with adjustable shelves, pull out storage, rollout storage, manual and automatic operation of storage compartments. Pantry may be divided into a multipurpose use and contain combinations of drawers, bins, shelves and other specific type of storage. Hardware should comply with Section 309.4 Provide a lower location within pantry for bulk and heavy item storage. Provide task lighting.

1012.5.2.1 Walk-in Pantry. A walk-in pantry should comply with Section 1012.5.2 and provide a clear floor space complying with Section 305. Provide automatic ceiling light and task lighting.

1012.5.3 Sink Cabinet Storage. Sink cabinet storage should be adaptable should comply with Section 1012.4.

1012.5.3 Advisory. Typical under sink cabinetry should be easily removable to provide a clear floor space under the sink. Section 1012.4.1 provides the details. Doors that swing flush to adjacent cabinets are a consideration for aesthetic reasons.

1012.5.4 Cooking Equipment and Dish Storage. Provide equipment storage as required by occupant. Access to equipment in addition to reach range requirements should be easy. Upper cabinets should be adaptable and removable and replaced with open shelves, hooks, or other means for storage of cooking equipment, complying with Section 309 and 309. Consider other storage facilities complying with Section 1024. Provide dedicated storage for plates, cups and glasses for easy access.

1012.5.4 Advisory. Hard to reach objects and heavy objects present a creative challenge for the kitchen designer. Heavy items should be stored at lower levels. Placement may need to be very user specific for both usability and safety.

1012.5.4.1 Book Shelves. Bookshelves or bookcase are recommended even if only one dedicated shelf is provided, should comply with Section 308.

1012.5.5 Trash/Recycling Storage. Provide separate storage for trash and recycling. Recycling should be provided with two separate storage units, one for metal and plastics, the other for paper waste or as required by Department of Sanitation recycling rules and regulations. Storage should be drawer or roll-out units complying with Section 308 and Section 309. Consider additional storage for bulky waste items. Receptacles should be integrated drawer or tilt type and should not require extensive lifting to remove them from their storage locations or should accommodate liner bags that can be easily removed from the waste receptacle. Provide liner bag storage within the garbage/recycling storage area or within close proximity. Provide automatic ceiling light and task lighting.

1012.5.5 Advisory. Consider waste receptacle units on wheels as part of the movable storage to locate as needed.

1012.6 Appliances. Where provided, kitchen appliances should comply with Section 1012.6. Do not overlap appliances and do not allow appliance or cabinet doors or other components to obstruct the operation of another. Cabinetry adjacent to an appliance should be removable to provide adequate work area as required by the occupant complying with Section 1012.5. Provide timers, automatic shutoffs and alarms for cooking and cleaning appliances.

1012.6.1 Operable Parts. All appliance controls should comply with Section 1009. Operation should be simple and intuitive. Appliance doors and door latching devices should comply with Section 309.4 through 309.8 and contain open door alarms. Handles should extend the full width and/or height of appliance. Bottom-hinged appliance door should comply with Section 309.3 when in the open position. Consider large type for both printed and digital readouts. Hardware should comply with Section 309.4 through 309.8 for visual, tactile and auditory characteristics. Alarms should comply with Section 309.9

1012.6.1.1 Child Safety. Provide childproofing, if unit will be used by young children. Provide child safety lockout devices and anti-tipping for appliances, among other recommendations complying with Section 309.5 Childproofing. Alarms are also critical to alert adults to an emergency. Provide Multiple step actuation and lockout devices. Provide location and label all shutoffs.

1012.6.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space, positioned for parallel or forward approach, should be provided at each kitchen appliance. Clear floor spaces may overlap.

1012.6.3 Dishwasher. A clear floor space, positioned adjacent to the dishwasher door, should be provided. It is recommended to locate the dishwasher adjacent to the sink or within one clear floor space of the sink. Provide control lock-out for child safety. Provide full width or height handles. Dishwasher should be usable from the left or right side of the appliance. Provide timers, automatic shutoffs and alarms complying with Section 309.

1012.6.3 Advisory. Placing a dishwasher adjacent to the sink works well if the occupant requires a clear under sink floor space. Place a maximum of 36 inches (915 mm) from the sink space.

1012.6.3.1 Height. Bottom edge of door opening is recommended at 19 ½ inches (495 mm) minimum above the floor and should comply with Section 308.3.1. Provide a base, if necessary, to raise opening.

1012.6.4 Range or Cooktop. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the space for a range or cooktop, should be provided. Provide 36 inches (915 mm) minimum of counter space on each side of the appliance. Where the clear floor space is positioned for a forward approach, knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 should be provided. Where knee and toe space is provided, the underside of the cooktop should be insulated or otherwise configured to protect from burns, abrasions, or electrical shock. Height of the cooktop surface should comply with Section 902.3. Consider adjustable height or placement at the lower end of the height range to enhance sight lines for short people and those that use a wheelchair and to increase safety. The location of controls should not require reaching across burners. Provide child protection devices (e.g., anti-tipping clips) complying with Section 309.5. Provide timers, automatic shutoffs and alarms complying with Section 309.

1012.6.4 Advisory. Range or cooktop should not be placed below a window due to air drafts and window operation conflicts over the heating elements. Consider magnetic induction. Provide range in close proximity to the sink area for food preparation and for hot items.

1012.6.4.1 Exhaust Hood. Provide an exhaust hood with a light. Also, provide a switch that is within reach ranges complying with Section 308. Hood light(s) should be used to indicate that the range is in use, as a safety precaution and reminder that the appliance is still on even after the food has been removed. Timers should always be used for cooking to indicate completion and to automatically turn off the appliance or to remind the user to turn the unit off if it is not automatic.

1012.6.4.1 Advisory. It is good design practice to provide task lighting above the cooking surface and always good cooking safety practice to turn on the light above the stove or range top to remind the user that the unit is “on.” Timers should always be used for cooking to indicate completion and to turn the unit off.

1012.6.5 Oven. Oven should comply with Section 1012.6.5. Ovens should have controls on front panels, on either side of the door and should comply with Section 308. Comply with Section 1012.6.4.1 as applicable. Provide full width or height handles. Provide anti-tipping clips. Provide timers, automatic shutoffs and open door alarms complying with Section 309.

1012.6.5.1 Side-Hinged Oven Doors. Side-hinged oven doors should have a countertop positioned adjacent to the latch side of the oven door. It is recommended to provide a pull out work counter complying with Section 1012.3.4 immediately under a wall oven with a side-hinged door. Door should comply with Section 308; controls should comply with Section 309.

1012.6.5.1 Advisory. Side-hinged doors allow the occupant to access oven contents easier than bottom hinged door, increasing safety. The pull-out work surface allows easy and safe placement of hot items.

1012.6.5.2 Bottom-Hinged Door Ovens. Bottom hinged door ovens should have a countertop positioned adjacent to one side of the door. Door should comply with Section 308. Controls should comply with Section 309. Open inside face of door may be usable as a transition rest area for hot food provided anti-tipping clips are securely fastened to floor or wall for free standing units.

1012.6.6 Microwave. A microwave oven is inherently an inclusive appliance. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach should be provided. Location should comply with Section 308. Do not locate microwave over a cooking surface for safety reasons. Provide alternate locations to accommodate occupant's needs. Provide a work surface that also acts as resting and transfer surface complying with Section 1012.3. Provide full width or height handles. Auto open or use large push buttons provided within reach ranges complying with Section 308. Timers, automatic shutoffs and alarms should comply with Section 309.

1012.6.6 Advisory. Placing the unit at the eye level of a seated person seems to make sense since it is also usable for a standing person. Eye level of a seated person using a mobility device may be between 43-51 inches. Refer to Section 310.5. Top of the operable door should be a maximum of 48 inches above the finish floor. Some occupants may prefer a unit located at the bottom of the forward reach range placing the bottom of the unit at 18 1/2 (474 mm) inches.

1012.6.7 Refrigerator/Freezer. Combination refrigerators and freezers should have at least 50 percent of the freezer compartment 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the finished floor. A side by side refrigerator is recommended. A clear floor space, positioned for parallel approach to the space dedicated to a refrigerator/freezer, should be provided. The centerline of the clear floor space should be offset 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the centerline of the dedicated space. Do not locate refrigerator in an inside corner. Provide open door, temperature, power failure and water flow alarms complying with Section 309.9 Provide water and ice dispenser on the door for easy access. Provide full width and/or height handles &180 degree door swing.

1012.6.8 Trash Compactor. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the trash compactor should be provided.

1012.6.9 Washer/Dryer. Washing machines and clothes dryers should be front loading and comply with Section 611. Consider sloped door faces. Provide full width and/or height handles. Provide timers, automatic shutoffs, water leak, high temperature and other alarms complying with Section 309. Provide local water, gas and electrical shutoffs and main shut-off locations.

1012.7 Windows. Windows should comply with Section 506. Kitchens should contain an operable window. It is recommended to provide a ventilation fan as an alternative to opening window(s) during weather extremes of heat or cold. It is not recommended to place a cooking surface directly below an operable window due to smoke and fire hazards, if existing conditions require it, place bottom of operable sash no lower than 24 inches above the cooking surface.

1012.7 Advisory. A kitchen window is very important specially when it is used to vent the space. If it cannot be placed in a location for manual operation it should be automatic. The controls should be placed in a location for easy access. This is especially important during extreme cold or heat to avoid fluctuating room air temperature. A back-up ventilation fan is always recommended.

1012.7.1 Mechanical Ventilation. Provide mechanical ventilation for all cooking appliances including the range, cooktop, oven, and microwave that exhausts directly to the exterior where possible. Controls should comply with Section 308 and Section 309. Provide minimum clearance of 24 inches (610 mm) between cooking surface and protected surface above or provide a minimum clearance of 30 inches (762 mm) of clearance between the cooking surface and unprotected surface above. Provide a fire activated extinguisher for cook top. Filters should be located within reach ranges complying with Section 308.

1012.8 Smoke Detectors and Fire Extinguishers. Provide smoke detectors and fire extinguishers complying with Section 1025.5. Consider multiple fire extinguishers such as one by the cooktop, oven and doorway.

1012.8 Advisory. Fire extinguishers need not have to hang on every wall, rather they may be placed within cabinets, recessed into the wall, or integrated with the finished cabinetry as long as the reach ranges and access to them complies with Section 307 Protruding Objects, Section 308 Reach Ranges and Section 309 Operable Parts. It should provide peace of mind for the occupants, knowing that they have some means of extinguishing a fire before it has a chance to spread.

1012.9 Furniture. If eating area is provided within the kitchen it should comply with Section 1012.9. Hardware should comply with Section 309.4.

1012.9.1 Table. Table should comply with Section 902. Table may be mobile, but requires a parking location within the room that complies with Section 1012 and locking rollers or brake for safety and to avoid damage to cabinets. Tables may be parked under counter tops and provide a partially exposed top surface. Tables have multipurpose uses that include: eating, food preparation, home office and school work desk, entertaining, etc.

1012.9.2 Chairs. Chairs should comply with Section 903.5 for seat height. Provide space for each chair.

1012.9.2 Advisory. A parking space is a designated stationary space where the chair may be stored when not in use. This prevents potential obstruction caused by random placement of furniture.

1012.9.3 Other Furniture and Accessories. Provide a parking space for other furniture and accessories to avoid obstructions (e.g. a mobile computer stand). Provide a step stool or short free standing ladder for access to upper cabinets. Even consider a pole extension with a grabbing mechanism.

1012.10 Kitchen Office Area. If provided, an office area within the kitchen should comply with Section 902, 903, 905 and 1012.9**.** Provide an adjustable office chair complying with Section 903.10. Book shelves or book case if provided, should comply with Section 308. Office area may be integrated with the kitchen as a closet. Provide parking space for chair under desk. Provide communication features as applicable, especially for computer, audio and video connections, etc complying with Section 1025.

1012.11 Seating. If provided, built-in seating should comply with Section 903. Consider adjustable seating to accommodate children.

1012.12 Lighting. Provide adjustable general and task lighting. Consider task lighting for each work area, work surfaces, at each appliance, above the sink, counter task lighting. Lighting should be non-glare with shielded light sources. Consider voice activated and motion detection switches as required by occupant. See Section 311.

1012.13 Monitor. If provided, locate monitor complying with Section 308 and Section 309. Provide locations complying with Section 308. Consider wall mounted panel monitors with both horizontal and vertical pivoting capabilities. Monitor should be placed to accommodate eating area and other key viewing locations within kitchen. Consider eye levels complying with Section 310.

1012.14 Electronic Equipment. If provided, locate electronic equipment complying with Section 308 and Section 309. Provide remote controls with storage space complying with Section 308.

1013 Bedrooms. Provide a turning circle within the room. If the only feasible circulation route must pass through the space, the design should intuitively direct the circulation toward one side of the room. This may be accomplished by functions, door locations (corners recommended), amenities, and furniture placement. Raised or sunken areas should comply with Section 1003.6 Built-In furniture should comply with Chapter 9. Provide a clear floor space on both sides of the bed complying with Section 305. Provide a minimum of one closet in all bedrooms. Provide a space on at least one wall that will accommodate a range of bed sizes and space on another wall that will accommodate furniture or other free-stranding storage. Storage should comply with Section 1024. Bedrooms should be separated visually and acoustically from other areas of the house. Closets may act as acoustic barriers between rooms.

1013 Advisory. Consider fully automatic beds. Adjustable height will greatly aid both entry and exit.

1013.1 Sleeping Lofts. Sleeping lofts are supplemental to a standard bedroom unless the loft can be accessed by elevator or platform lift, then it should comply with bedroom recommendations.

1013.2 Alternate Sleeping Areas. Other rooms or areas in the unit that are also used as sleeping areas consider complying with Section 1013.

1013.3 Controls. Provide controls including lighting, fan, video and audio, etc., adjacent to the bed such as typical night stand location and complies with Section 308 and Section 309.4 or consider all wireless controls.

1014 Living Rooms. Provide a turning circle within the room. If the only feasible circulation route must pass through the space, the design should intuitively direct the circulation toward one side of the room. This may be accomplished by functions, door locations (corners recommended) amenities, and furniture placement. Raised or sunken areas should comply with Section 1003.6 Built-In furniture should comply with Chapter 9. Storage should comply with Section 1024.

1015 Dining Rooms. Dining rooms that are separate or combined with other living areas should comply with Section 1014. Provide a route complying with Section 1003.4 if the area behind seating will be used as a walkway.

1016 Dens/Multi-Purpose Rooms. Dens/multi-purpose rooms or spaces may be used as a home office, media room, exercise room, guest bedroom, complying with sections relating to their usage.

1017 Home Offices. Home offices that are separate or combined with other living areas or sleeping areas should comply with Section 1012.10. An office area with built-in furniture should comply with Section 902, 903 and 905.

1017 Advisory. Home offices are common. They are not just used as a work environment and are essentially, multipurpose spaces. It may be used as a guest bedroom, den or other function. It may function as a separate room or a space within another room including living, kitchen, sleeping spaces and other less conventional spaces such as in a hallway, under a stair or even within a bathroom.

1018 Basements, Attics, and Utility Rooms. Provide a route to basement, attic, and utility room complying with Section 1003. Provide an emergency assistance alarm, smoke, carbon monoxide, gas, power outage, water leak, low water cut-off, temperature, equipment failure and other alarms complying with Section 309.9. If stairs are the only viable means of accessing these spaces, stairs should comply with Section 1003.4.2.

1018 Advisory. Basements and attics may not be large enough or it may not be feasible to provide inclusive access to these areas due to structure, ceiling height, mechanical equipment and configuration of the space. If the only access is a stair it should be provided with handrails on both sides and wide enough to accommodate a stairlift.

1019 Interior Balconies and Lofts. Provide a route complying with Section 1003.

1020 Garages. Provide a route complying with Section 1003. Route should be internal. If an exterior route is the only means to access garage it should be weather protected and provided with an automatic ice melt system if subject to snow and ice accumulation. Provide an emergency assistance alarm as required by occupant. Provide detectors complying with Section 1025.5.2.

1021 Exterior Balconies and Terraces. Exterior balconies or terraces should provide an entry area at same grade. If exterior elevation is below the exterior door threshold, provide a ramp or raise surface to match threshold and provide drainage. Provide a turning space complying with Section 304. Handrails should comply with Section 505. Level change should comply with section 303. Provide drainage. Provide general, perimeter and perhaps task lighting. Consider automatic lighting.

1021 Advisory. Refer to the 2008 NYC Building Code, Chapter 11, Section 1107.4 exceptions regarding access to these areas.

1022 Landscape Elements. Provide landscape elements complying with Section 1022.

1022.1 Route. Routes should be 48 inches (1220 mm) clear width complying with Section 1003.4.

1022.1.1 Circulation Width. Provide 48 inch circulation route width within a yard area if the route is required to run through the area rather providing a route adjacent to the area. Provide 48 inch circulation around furniture where applicable or locate pieces to provide an unobstructed non-circuitous route.

1022.1.2 Surfaces. Surfaces should comply with Section 302.

1022.2 Seating. If built-in seating is provided it should comply with Section 903.

1022.3 Planting Containers. If provided, free standing containers, railing boxes and other types of containers should comply with Section 308.

1022.4 Water Supply. If provided, hose bibs should comply with Section 308 and Section 309. Properly slope supply lines and provide valve to drain back system

1022.4.1 Irrigation System. Consider an automatic irrigation system with a programmable controller at reach ranges complying with Section 308, for lawn areas, and an automatic drip system for planting beds, and containers.

1022.5 Storage. If provided, storage should comply with Section 1012.5.

1022.5 Advisory. Provide air tight storage containers for fertilizers, pesticides, or any substance that may affect people with chemical sensitivity. Provide a lock on all storage compartments to keep young children out.

1022.6 Operable Parts. Operable parts should comply with Section 1009.

1022.6 Advisory. Operable parts not only include hardware but such items as light switches, receptacles, plumbing fixture controls.

1022.7 Drainage. Provide proper slope and drainage to prevent the accumulation of water and ice formation.

1022.8 Tree Grates. Tree grates should comply with Section 302.3 and Section 303

1022.9 Pools. Pools should be adaptable as per the occupants needs. Identify on the construction documents, a location that will accommodate a future lifting device if required by occupants. Consider grab railing as needed by the occupant. In addition to code required safety alarms (e.g. motion detectors), provide alarm complying with Section 702 and childproofing complying with Section 309.5 and the US Consumer Products Safety Commission's recommendations in addition to the relevant legal requirements. Provide motion detector, water, security and other alarms complying with 309.9.

1022.9 Advisory. Consider avoiding the use of chlorine for people with chemical sensitivity and consider other alternatives such as the use of a salt water system.

1022.9.1 Fence. Always enclose pools with fencing with a lock complying with the building code and provide a motion alarm in case the fencing is breached.

1022.10 Play Areas. Play areas should comply with Section 1022.10.

1022.10.1 Equipment. Comply with Section 308 and Section 309.

1022.10.2 Seating. Comply with Sect. 1022.2

1022.10.3 Surfaces. Comply w/Sect. 1022.1.2

1022.10.4 Storage. Comply with Sect. 1022.5

1022.11 Garden Areas. Garden areas should comply with Section 1022.11.

1022.11 Advisory. Consider hydroponic gardening. Flexibility of these water systems, accommodates individual needs and preferences. Height, reach ranges and clearances can be adjusted to provide direct access to plant materials, lighting and controls from seated and standing positions.

1022.11.1 Route. Comply with Section 1022.1.

1022.11.2 Raised Planting Beds. Comply with Section 1022.1 and Section 1022.3. Raised planting beds may be terraces, outcroppings, etc. The reach ranges specified will make the beds inclusive. Consider beds with clear space below with knee and toe clearances complying with Section 308 for perpendicular approach.

1022.11.2.1 Below Grade Planting Bed Access. Comply with Section 405.

1022.11.3 Vertical Planting. Vertical planting includes trellises, hooks, eyes, grids, poles, and other types of support and framework for small gardens, terraces and along walkways. Consider espaliering trees and shrubs that are trained to grow in a flat vertical plane.

1022.11.4 Water Supply. Provide hose bibs complying with Section 308 and Section 309 with level controls, in various locations. If viable, provide automatic irrigation system that provides general and specific water requirements including horizontal and vertical spray heads, and soaking/drip lines with rain sensor. Control panel should comply with Section 309.4. Consider an outdoor sink. Properly slope supply lines and provide valve to drain back system.

1022.11.5 Cooking. Cooking area should comply with Section 1012 and Section 1024.

1022.11.6 Storage. Provide storage complying with Section 1012.5

1022.11.7 Emergency Assistance Alarm. If required by the occupant these alarms should comply with Section 702.

1022.11.8 Lighting. Lighting increases usability, safety and security. Provide automatic general and task lighting.

1022.12 Decks. Deck should comply with Section 1022.12.

1022.12.1 Route. Routes should be 48 inches (1220 mm) clear width complying with Section 1003.4.

1022.12.2 Circulation Width. Provide 48 inch circulation route width within a deck area if the route is required to run through the area rather providing a route adjacent to the area. Provide 48 inch circulation around furniture where applicable or locate pieces to provide an unobstructed non-circuitous route.

1022.12.3 Seating. If built in seating is provided it should comply with Section 903.

1022.12.4 Planting Areas. If provided, a portion of the planting areas should be built-in or should easily be provided without any modifications to the deck. This includes free standing containers, railing boxes and other types of containers and should comply with Section 308. See also Section 1022.11.2 and Section 1022.11.3.

1022.12.5 Water Supply. Provided, hose bibs complying with Section 308 and 309. Provide lever control. Properly slope supply lines and provide drain valve.

1022.12.6 Cooking. Cooking area should comply with Section 1012.

1022.12.7 Storage. Provide storage complying with Section 1012.5 and 1024.

1022.12.8 Operable Parts. Operable parts should comply with Section 1009.

1022.12.9 Drainage. Provide proper slope and drainage to prevent the accumulation of water, snow and ice.

1022.12.10 Lighting. Lighting increases usability, safety and security. Provide automatic general and task lighting.

1023 Windows. Where operable windows are provided they should comply with Section 506 and have operable parts complying with Section 309. Operable windows that cannot comply with reach ranges complying with Section 308 should be automatic.

EXCEPTION: Fixed windows such as a transom sash above an operable window are not required to be operable.

1024 General Storage and Closets. Where general storage is provided it should comply with Section 1024 and Section 1005.1. This includes bedroom and hall closets. Kitchen storage should comply with Section 1012.5; Bathroom storage should comply with Section 1011.12. Laundry storage should comply with Section 1010. Garden storage should comply with Section 1022. Storage should be a variable composition of general, compartmentalized and dedicated spaces that accommodate user needs and preferences. Clear or translucent cabinet faces can help to locate items.

1024.1 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305, positioned for parallel or forward approach, should be provided at each storage location.

1024.1.1 Walk-in Closets Clear Floor Space. Walk-in closets should be provided with a clear floor space complying with Section 305 and Section 1005.1.1

1024.2 Height. A portion of the storage area of each facility should comply with the reach ranges specified in Section 308.

1024.3 Operable Parts. Operable parts for storage facilities should comply with Section 309. Hardware should comply with Section 309.4. Consider motorized garment racks and bins to increase access and ease of use, especially in large and deep closets. Provide full extension locking glides on drawers. Usability may be increased with spring loaded or electronic motor driven automatic operation for self-opening doors, drawers, movable shelves, pull-out cabinets with adjustable height shelves, and work surfaces. Manual and automatic 360 degree rotating shelves or offset hinged pull-out shelves to increase access and efficiency. Consider top-hinged doors for upper cabinetry, roll-down shutters, sliding doors and other types of enclosures to eliminate door swing arc obstruction

1025 Communication Features.

1025.1 General. Communication features should comply with Section 1025.5.

1025.1 Advisory. Pre-wiring a dwelling unit during the construction phase is recommended. This will reduce or eliminate potential damage to the unit later and make it much easier to install a wide range of devices (e.g., controls, two-way communications, detectors, security and remote home monitoring). Identify access ports on the construction documents and provide some other physical indicator. Provide two or more controls locations (e.g., hall and living room). Wires should be bundled and distribution patterns simplified. Standardized placement should make runs easy to locate. Empty rigid conduit could be used instead of pre-wiring. Adequate and easily accessed pull locations should be provided for all areas of the dwelling unit including the exterior. In some ways, empty conduit may be preferred since this allows installation of new wire products as they become available. Wire degradation may require replacement that conduit allows. Of course, wireless devices could make some percentage of the pre-wiring obsolete.

1025.2 Unit Detection. Unit should be provided with fire, smoke, carbon monoxide, gas, power outage, appliance overheating, water leakage, water temperature, personal emergency, entrapment, security, appliance timers, open appliance, continuous water flow, low water cutoff, HVAC equipment failure, and other types of alarms that are visual and audible and if possible, tactile. Consider a house monitoring system with a wide range of detectors, control capabilities and two-way communications for both on and off site, occupied and unoccupied applications. Monitoring may be a variety of communication means including phone, computer, PDA, etc. Audible notification should comply with NFPA 72 listed in Section 105.2.2. Unit should be hard-wired with a back-up power source.

1025.3 Building Fire Alarm System. A building fire alarm system should be provided. The system wiring should be extended to a point within the unit in the vicinity of the detection system.

1025.4 Multisensory Alarms. Multisensory alarms should be provided within the unit as part of the unit detection system or the building fire alarm system and comply with Sections 309.9, 1025.4 and 1026.

1025.4.1 Appliance. Notification appliances, should be visual, audible and if possible, tactile.

1025.4.2 Activation. All notification appliances provided within the unit for smoke, carbon monoxide and gas detection should be activate upon detection. All visible notification appliances provided within the unit for building fire alarm notification should be activated upon activation of the building fire alarm in the portion of the building containing the unit.

1025.4.3 Interconnection. The same notification appliances should be permitted to provide notification of unit smoke and carbon monoxide detection and building fire alarm activation

1025.4.4 Prohibited Use. Notification appliances used to indicate unit smoke, carbon monoxide or gas detection or building fire alarm activation should not be used for any other purpose within the unit.

1025.5 Unit Primary Entrance. Communication features should be provided at the unit primary entrance complying with Section 1025.5.

1025.5.1 Notification. A hard-wired electric doorbell should be provided. A button or switch should be provided on the public side of the unit primary entrance. Activation of the button or switch should initiate a audible tone within the unit. Unit should be provided with an optional visible notification device if required by the occupant. Consider a remote notification unit similar to the activator in Section 708.7.1.2 that utilizes tactile/vibration indicator.

1025.5.2 Visual Identification. A means for visually identifying a visitor without opening the unit entry door should be provided.

1025.5.2.1 Vision Lites. Vision lites, if provided should comply with Section 404.2.10.

1025.5.2.2 CCTV. Provide wiring and identify location of a CCTV system for future use if required by occupant. CCTV should comply with Section 1025.7.

1025.5.2.3 Voice Communication. Provide two-way voice communication complying with Section 1025.6.

1025.5.2.4 Peepholes. Peepholes should be placed at dual heights with a 200 degree direct view optical lens with a minimum 1 inch viewing area with privacy plate. The upper peephole for a standing position should be placed between 62 inches (1575 mm) and 64 inches (1650 mm), the lower peephole for use by seated people or children should be placed between 46 inches (1170 mm) and 48 inches (1220 mm). The recommended upper is height 62 inches and the lower height is 48 inches.

1025.6 Voice and Visual Communications. A system permitting voice and visual communication between a visitor and the occupant of the unit should be provided at locations throughout the unit and at the entry door and should comply with Section 1025.6.

1025.6.1 Public or Common-Use Interface. The public or common-use system interface should include the capability of supporting voice and TTY communication with the unit interface.

1025.6.2 Unit Interface. The unit interface should include a telephone jack capable of supporting voice and TTY communication with the public or common-use system interface.

1025.7 Closed-Circuit Communication System. A closed-circuit communication system is recommended. The public or common-use system interface should comply with Section 1025.6.1, and the unit system interface in units that have communication features complying with Section 1025.6.2

1025.8 Additional Communication Features. Provide wiring for adaptable emergency assistance alarm complying with Section 702.2, emergency signage if desired complying with Section 703.9, 703.10, 703.11, 703.12. Provide telephone, computer, television cable connections to all rooms. Consider a two-way communication system throughout dwelling complying with Section 708.

1025.8.1 Detectable Warnings and Surfaces. Provide detectable warning and surfaces as required by occupant complying with Section 705.

1025.8.1 Advisory. The occupant may desire warnings if they have limited sight or are blind, (e.g. glass slider leading to an exterior deck).

1025.8.2 Intercom. Provide voice communication with CCTV for identification of visitors at entry door complying with Section 708.4

1025.8.3 Phone Lines. Volume control receivers, TTY's, hearing aid compatible phones, computers, and other equipment that uses a phone line should be capable of being connected in any room as required by occupant. Unit should be pre-wired throughout all rooms and spaces.

1025.8.4 Emergency Alarms. Provide emergency assistance alarms as required by occupant complying with Section 702.2. Unit should be pre-wired throughout including bathrooms, kitchens, garages, attics, basements and yards. Mutlisensory alarms should be provided, complying with Section 309.9, Section 1026.1, Section 1026.2, Section 1026.3 for fire, electrical and water emergencies. Other alarms are identified throughout the dwelling unit (e.g. laundry, bathroom, kitchen and utility rooms).

1026 Safety Systems. Safety systems should multisensory, exceed code minimums and should comply with Section 1026.

1026.1 Fire Safety. In addition to complying with all fire safety requirements, comply with Section 713. Childproofing should comply with Section 309.5. Provide an evacuation plan complying with Section 713.5 Provide in addition to code requirements, fire extinguishers in at least the kitchen, outside of bedroom area, garage, basement, attic and any other location where fire is a potential serious threat. Extinguishers should comply with Section 307, 308 and Section 309. Where knee and toe space is provided, the underside of a range or cooktop should be insulated or otherwise configured to protect from burns, abrasions, or electrical shock. Provide access to gas shutoffs complying with Section 308 and Section 309. Provide local shutoff and location of the main gas shutoff at critical locations throughout unit to increase safety (e.g. kitchen, laundry and utility rooms). Provide mutlisensory alarms complying with Section 309.9.

1026.2 Electrical Safety. Provide childproofing as necessary at all receptacles and GFI's anywhere near water or the potential of flooding or path of water overflow. Childproofing should comply with Section 309.5 (e.g. outlet covers and plates). Where knee and toe space is provided, wires or other electrical equipment should be insulated or otherwise configured to protect from electrical

shock. Provide access to electrical panel boards and complying with Section 308 and Section 309. Provide local breakers and location of main breaker at critical locations throughout unit to increase safety (e.g. kitchen, bathroom, laundry and utility rooms). Provide mutlisensory alarms complying with 309.9.

1026.3 Water Safety. Provide GFI for all outlets in a kitchen and bathroom and any area in the house that may have a potential water hazard including basements, laundry areas, as well as any landscaping applications. Childproofing should comply with Section 309.5 (e.g. anti-scald devices). Provide water overflow, water temperature, continuous flow, alarms in bathrooms, laundry rooms, utility (e.g., low water cut-off alarm for hydronic heating and hot water heater) and other relevant areas. Provide access to local plumbing shutoffs and main shutoffs with location signage of the shutoff locations complying with Section 308 and Section 309.

1026.4 Personal Safety. Personal safety includes a variety of physical and mental concerns and the most effective means to identify, actuate alert and summon help. Devices and systems should be multisensory and comply with Section 309, accommodating user needs and preferences. Personal safety includes fire electrical and water safety as well as slipping, tripping, falling, bodily injury, disorientation, dexterity balance, sight, hearing, touch, entrapment, known and unknown medical conditions, and a wide variety of other types of emergencies. There are many devices available that are worn, carried, temporary and permanent unit installations.

1027 Lighting. Lighting is beyond the technical scope of the book, but rudimentary recommendations are included. It is a science and an art, accommodating individual changing needs and preferences, safety, health, functionality, aesthetics, physics, engineering, efficiency, building and landscape design, etc. Lighting is much more than luminance, it includes: intensity; color; pattern; focus; contrast; balance; ambient/spot/task lighting; direct/indirect lighting; direction; interior/exterior applications; maximizing natural light; full spectrum bulbs; quality; source type; fixtures/equipment; shade; glare reduction; surface reflectivity; wayfinding; security; warning/alarms; obstruction and edge detection; boundary/space/shape definition; shadow reduction; source shielding; manual operation (e.g., actuation switches and dimmers); automatic operation (e.g., hands free actuation, timers, motion and ambient light sensors, and adjustments for time of day, weather conditions and seasons) and much more. See Section 311 for additional information .

1028 HVAC. Provide controls complying with Section 309. Consider controls with visual, tactile and auditory characteristics. Provide the highest quality filters to reduce allergens and other pollution. Provide filter change indicators. Consider placing controls in at least two locations (e.g., hall and master bedroom or living room and master bedroom).

1029 Soundproofing. Consider soundproofing as a means to address noise pollution and for occupants that for various reasons may require low noise levels. Consider the use of sound cancelling technology.

1030 Visitability. Visitability should comply with Section 1030.

1030 Advisory. Visitability requirements have been contained in previous bills of the House of Representatives, but most recently in HR 1408, cited as the *Inclusive Home Design Act 2009.* It is required that all newly constructed, federally assisted, single family houses and town houses meet minimum standards of visitability for persons with disabilities. Visitability is met and inclusive by the recommendations in this book. Refer to the actual bill for detailed definitions and minimum requirements, enforcement, affect on State laws, disclaimer of preemptive affect on other acts and severability of the provisions. A covered dwelling unit means a dwelling unit that:
a. is a detached single family house, a townhouse or multi-level dwelling unit (whether detached or attached to other units or structures), or a
ground floor unit in a building of three or fewer dwelling units;
b. is designed as, or intended for occupancy as, a residence;
c. was designed, constructed, or commissioned, contracted or otherwise arranged for design or construction, by any person or entity who, at any time during the design or construction, received Federal financial assistance for any program or activity; and
d. is made available for first occupancy after the expiration of the one-year period beginning on the date of the enactment of this Act.

1030.1 Primary Functions. Primary functions should be located on the entrance level of the unit. These include entry, habitable space, bathroom, kitchen area (optional) and storage (optional).

1030.1.1 Multi-Level Unit. Multilevel units should contain an interior stair complying with Section 1030.3.1. Type “B” multistory units in R-2 occupancy are required to comply with the *2008 NYCBC* Section 1107.2.5.

1030.2 Entrance. Entrance requirements should be met and inclusive by complying with Section 1002 and Section 1005. This includes a notification device that is both visual, audible and tactile (e.g., activator with vibration complying with Section 708.7.1.2). All rooms on this level should be connected by a route complying with Section 1030.3. Entry should not contain steps and should be located on an inclusive route.

1030.3 Route. Route requirements should be met and inclusive by complying with Section 1003, 1004, 1005, 1006, 1007 and 1008. Consider visual, auditory and tactile characteristics complying with Section 302.6, 302.10 and 302.11. Routes include curb cuts, parking access aisles, walks and ramps.

1030.3.1 Interior Stair. Interior stair, if provided should comply with Section 1003.4.2

1030.4 Interior Doors. Interior door requirement should be met and inclusive by complying with Section 1005. Consider visual and tactile contrasting doors, with the surrounding wall surfaces.

1030.5 Operable Parts. Operable parts including environmental controls, lighting controls, and outlets should be met and inclusive by complying with Section 309. Consider visual, tactile and auditory characteristics. Environmental controls should not be located directly above a counter, sink or appliance. Provide childproofing complying with Sect. 309.5. Provide mutlisensory alarms complying with Section 309.9. Consider automatic adjustable lighting.

1030.6 Habitable Space. Provide at least one indoor room that has an area of not less than 80 square feet (7.2 m^2) and contains no side or dimension narrower than 8 feet (2438 mm) and a minimum height of 8 feet (2438 mm). This may be a multi-purpose space where the ordinary functions of domestic life are carried on and which includes sleeping, living, study, recreation, food preparation, eating and other similar functions. Provide both adjustable general and task lighting.

1030.6 Advisory. The recommended habitable space is influenced by Section BC 1208 of the *2008 NYC Building Code*. The code contains exceptions for both the size and height. Minimum visitability requires an area not less than 70 square feet and contains no side or dimension narrower than 7 feet, with a minimum height of 8 feet.

1030.7 Bathroom. Provide at least one bathroom that is inclusive that includes a clear floor space, lavatory, water closet and reinforcement that complies with Section 1030.7. Provide alarms complying with Section 309.9 (e.g., water leakage). Provide both adjustable general and task lighting.

1030.7.1 Clear Floor Space. Clear floor space requirements should be met and inclusive by complying with Section 1011.2.1 and 1011.3.

1030.7.2 Lavatory and Water Closet. Lavatory and water closet requirements should be met and inclusive by complying with Section 1011.5 and Section 1011.7

1030.7.3 Reinforcement. Reinforcement should be met and inclusive by complying with Section 1011.4. If a bathtub is provided, comply with ANSI A117.1-2003 Section 607.

1030.8 Kitchen Area. A kitchen area, if provided, should include a sink complying with Section 1012.4, a work surface complying with Section 1012.3, a range, cooktop, or microwave complying with Section 1012.6.4 or 1012.6.6, a refrigerator complying with Section 1012.6.7.Provide alarms complying with Section 309.9 (e.g., smoke, water and appliance). Provide both adjustable general and task lighting.

1030.9 Storage. Storage should be provided and should comply with 1024. Storage may be multipurpose. Provide automatic lighting.

1030.10 Windows. Operable windows should comply with Section 1023. Consider visual, tactile and auditory characteristics of the operable parts.

Index

B

C

F

G

H

I

N

O

P

T

U

V

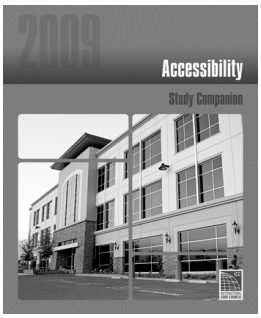
W

Z

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

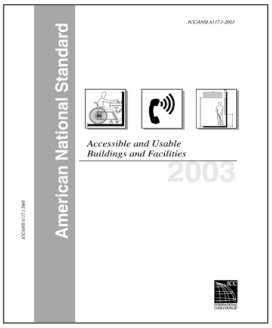
People Helping People Build a Safer World™

Design Tools for Today's Accessibility Needs

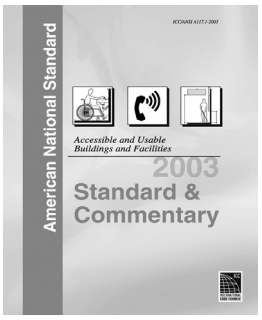


A

B



C



D

A: 2009 ACCESSIBILITY STUDY COMPANION

Provides a comprehensive review of the accessibility provisions in the 2009 IBC® and ICC/ANSI A117.1-2003. The Study Companion is organized into study sessions and includes learning objectives, key points for review, code text and commentary applicable to the specific topic. Each study session includes a helpful quiz that allows the learner to measure their level of knowledge. The answer key lists the code section referenced in each question for further information.

- 18 study sessions.
- 430 total study questions with answer key.
- Great resource for the ICC Accessibility Inspector/ Plans Examiner Certification exam. (470 pages)

SOFT COVER #4123S09
PDF DOWNLOAD #8950P027

B: ACCESSIBILITY POCKETBOOK

Compiles vital accessibility information you need into one handy source. Accessibility PocketBook contains selected provisions from the 2009 IBC® and the entire text of ICC/ANSI A117.1-2003: *Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities*. It assists in the design, plan review, construction, and inspection of accessible facilities and features by combining the accessibility provisions of the IBC® with the technical requirements of the A117.1 standard into a single easy-to-reference resource. It is an ideal tool for the job site or the office. (310 pages)

SOFT COVER #4028S09
PDF DOWNLOAD #8950P036

C: ICC/ANSI A117.1–2003: GUIDELINES FOR ACCESSIBLE AND USABLE BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES

The specifications in this standard make sites, facilities, buildings and elements accessible to and usable by people with such physical disabilities as the inability to walk, difficulty walking, reliance on walking aids, blindness and visual impairment, deafness and hearing impairment, reaching and manipulation disabilities, lack of stamina, and extremes of physical size. The intent is to allow a person with a physical disability to independently get to, enter and use a site, facility, building or element. (103 pages)

SOFT COVER #9033S03
CD-ROM #8010CD03
PDF DOWNLOAD #8722P03

ICC A117.1-2009 COMING LATE 2010!

SOFT COVER #9033S09
CD-ROM #8010CD09
PDF DOWNLOAD #8722P09

D: ICC/ANSI A117.1-2003 STANDARD & COMMENTARY

Read expert commentary to assist in effective application. The book includes the full text of the standard, including tables and figures, followed by corresponding commentary at the end of each section in one document. (290 pages)

SOFT COVER #9033C03
PDF DOWNLOAD #8723P03

Order Yours Today! 1-800-786-4452 | www.iccsafe.org/store

10-03285